Educational Text-Books.

ENGLISH.

OLD'S History of Rome. 8vo. 3 00
——— Lectures on Modern History. 12mo. 1 25
SEN and Arnold's Manual of Grecian and Roman Antiquities. 12mo. .. 1 00
SE'S Treatise on Algebra. 12mo 1 00
CROSBY'S First Lessons in Geometry. 18mo. 38
CHAMPLIN, J. T. A Practical Grammar of the English Language. 34
COMING'S Class-Book of Physiology: for the use of Schools and Private Families. 12mo. 270 pages, 24 plates and 200 woodcuts ..... Muslin, 1 00
——— Companion to Class-Book. 12mo ..... Muslin, 50
CORNELL'S Primary Geography. Forming part 1st of a systematic series of School Geographies. Small quarto, beautifully illustrated 50
——— Intermediate Geography. .....
——— High School Geography and Atlas .....
COUSIN'S Lectures on the History of Philosophy. 2 vols. 8vo 3 00
——— " on the True, the Beautiful, and the Good. 1 50
COVELL'S Digest of English Grammar. 12mo 50
COE'S Drawing Cards, in 10 parts each 25
GILLISPIE'S Land Surveying. 1 vol. 8vo 2 00
GRAHAM'S English Synonymes. Edited by Professor Reed. 12mo 1 00
GREENE'S History of the Middle Ages. 12mo 1 00
GREEN'S Elementary Botany. A beautifully illustrated quarto 75
——— Class-Book of Botany. 1 vol. 4to. 1 50
GUIZOT'S History of Civilization. Notes by Professor Henry, 12mo 1 00
HAMILTON'S (Sir William) Philosophy. Arranged and edited by O. W. Wight, 1 50
HAND-BOOK of Anglo-Saxon Root-Words. 12mo 50
" of Anglo-Saxon Derivatives. 12mo 75
" of the Ingrafted Words of the English Language. 12mo 1 00
JAEGER'S Class-Book in Zoology. 18mo. 42
JOHNSTON'S Chemistry of Common Life. 2 vols. 12mo 2 00
KEIGHTLEY'S Mythology of Greece and Rome. 18mo 42
KŒPPEN'S Historical Geography. "The World in the Middle Ages." 2 vols. 12mo. 850 pp. 2 00
——— The Same Work. 1 vol. folio, letter press, 6 maps 4 50
LATHAM'S Hand-Book of the English Language. 12mo 1 25
MANGNALL'S Historical Questions. With American additions. 12mo 1 00
MARKHAM'S School History of England. Edited by Eliza Robbins, 12mo .. 75
MANDEVILLE'S Reading Books, viz.:
1. Primary Reader. 18mo. 10
2. Second Reader. 16mo. 17
3. Third Reader. 16mo. 25
4. Fourth Reader. 12mo. 38
——— Course of Reading. 12mo 75
——— Elements of Reading and Oratory. 12mo. New edit. 1 00
——— New Primary Reader. 12
——— New Second Reader .....
MARSHALL'S Book of Oratory. 12mo. 500 pp. 1 00
——— First Book do. 62
MULLIGAN'S Ex[illegible]ructure of the English Language. 12[illegible] 1 50
OTIS'S Easy Lesso[illegible]s 1 87
Cloth, 2 25

OTIS'S Studies of Animals. 5 Parts..... 1 87
Cloth, 2 25
——— **First Lessons in Pencil Drawing**..... 25
——— **Elementary Drawing Cards.** Landscape, 12 Lessons; Animals, 12 Lessons. Each set, 25
PALMER'S First Lessons in Book-keeping. 12mo.....Boards, 19
——— **Ruled Blanks for do.**..... 1
PERKINS' Primary Arithmetic. Combining mental and written exercises. Introductory to Elementary and Practical..... 19
——— **Elementary do.** Introductory to the Higher Arithmetic. 12mo. 347 pp. 38
——— **Practical do.** Containing over 3900 examples for practice. 12mo. 356 pages.....Muslin, 63
——— **Key to do.** Containing complete and full solutions. 12mo. 324 pages.....Muslin,
——— **Higher do.** New edition with appendix. 12mo. 342 pages.... 75
——— **Elementary Geometry.** With practical applications. 12mo. 320 pages Sheep, 1 00
——— **Plane and Solid Geometry.** (College edition.) Large 8vo..... 1 50
——— **Elements of Algebra.** Revised edition, just published. 12mo. Sheep, 75
——— **Treatise on do.** (College edition.) Large 8vo 420 pages. Sheep, 1 50
——— **Plane Trigonometry and Surveying.** With tables. Large 8vo..... 1 50
PUTZ and Arnold's Manual of Ancient Geography and History. 12mo..... 1 00
——— **Mediæval Geography and History.** 12mo..... 75
——— **Modern do. do.** 12mo..... 1 00
QUACKENBOS'S First Lessons in English Composition. 12mo..... 45
——— **Advanced Course of Composition and Rhetoric.** 12mo..... 1 00
REID'S Dictionary of the English Language, with Derivations, &c. 12mo.. 1 00
ROBBINS' (ELIZA) Class-Book of Poetry, for the use of Schools or Private Instruction. 16mo..... 75
——— **Guide to Knowledge.** Adapted for Young Persons. 18mo..... 63
SEWELL'S First History of Greece. 18mo..... 63
——— **First History of Rome.** 18mo..... 50
SHAKSPEARIAN Reader. By Prof. Hows. 12mo..... 1 25
SPALDING'S History of English Literature. 12mo.....Cloth, 1 00
TAYLOR'S Manual of Modern and Ancient History. Edited by Prof. Henry. 8vo.....Sheep, 2 50
Cloth, 2 25
——— **Ancient History,** separate..... 1 25
——— **Modern do. do.** 1 50
WARING'S Elements of Agriculture. 12mo.....Muslin, 75
WRIGHT'S Primary Lessons; or, Child's First Book..... 12
YOUMAN'S Class-Book of Chemistry. 12mo..... 75
——— **Chart of Chemistry.** On Rollers..... 5 00
——— **Chart of Chemistry.** Atlas form..... 2 00

GREEK AND LATIN.

ARNOLD'S First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar, by Spencer. 12mo..... 75
——— **First Latin Book.** By Harkness. 12mo..... 75
HARKNESS'S Second Latin Book and Reader. 12mo. pp. 262, beautifully printed..... 90
ARNOLD'S Latin Prose Composition. 12mo..... 1 00
——— **Cornelius Nepos.** With Notes. 12mo..... 1 00
——— **First Greek Book.** New edition, revised..... 75
——— **Greek Prose Composition.** New revised edition. 12mo..... 75
——— **Second Greek Prose Composition.** 12mo..... 75
——— **Greek Reading Book.** Edited by Spencer 12mo..... 1 25
BOISE'S Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. 12mo..... 75

Continued in the end of this volume.

Exchange. N. H. Hist. Soc., Jan. 1, 1915.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r

S T U V W X Y Z St.
s t u v w x y z st.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

ä ö ü sch ck st ß
ä ö ü sch ck st ß

German Current Hand.

Nicht die Leier Amphions hat Städte errichtet, keine Zauberruthe hat Wüsten in Gärten verwandelt; die Sprache hat es gethan, sie, die große Gesellerin der Menschen, durch sie vereinigten sie sich und schlossen den Bund der Liebe.

THE

PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR;

OR,

A NATURAL METHOD

OF

LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK

THE

German Language.

BY CHARLES EICHHORN.

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & CO., 346 & 348 BROADWAY,
MDCCCLVII.

RECOMMENDATIONS.

I have carefully examined, from beginning to end, the manuscript of a new German Grammar, prepared by Mr. Charles Eichhorn. In complying with his request, to state in writing my opinion of the merits of his work, I do not hesitate to say, that, among practical grammars of the German language, I regard this as the best. In saying this, I do not wish to depreciate the work of Ollendorff, or that of Hempel. It is not necessary, in recommending a new candidate for literary distinction, to speak disrespectfully, as is so frequently done, of those who have gone before him. The works just mentioned have their peculiar and decided merits. I prefer the work, which Mr. Eichhorn proposes to publish, to others already in use, because his method or plan appears to me more natural and simple, than that found in other grammars. While it proceeds, like other practical grammars, on the inductive method, leading the student on, gradually, in the immediate application of every new acquisition, it adheres more closely than others, and indeed quite strictly, to the ordinary arrangement of synthetic grammars, and adds to the examples and exercises under each head, what is fitly termed proper grammar, i. e., the rules of declension, government, &c. It presents thus, in a form more compact and more easily surveyed, a comprehensive view of the forms and structure of the German language. The simplicity of arrangement, the clearness and fulness of illustration, and the strict consistency of consecutive development according to the common system, which characterize this grammar, will greatly simplify and facilitate the study of the German language; and, as the exercises are designed to lead the student in evolving, for himself, the declensions and conjugations, his memory will thus be greatly aided in grasping and retaining the forms and inflections of the language.

I cordially recommend this grammar as more likely to render the study of German easy, and to afford the student a distinct and comprehensive view of that language, and to fix its peculiarities in the memory, than any other with which I am acquainted.

H. I. SCHMIDT,

Professor of the German language and literature in Columbia College.

NEW-YORK, July 31st, 1849.

I have carefully examined the manuscript of Mr. Eichhorn's German Grammar. The volume pleases me so much, that I shall at once adopt it as a text-book in the German classes of this Hall.

J. F. SCHRŒDER.

St. Ann's Hall,
NEW-YORK, August 2d, 1849.

PREFACE.

There are two principal methods of teaching any foreign language. The first consists in tasking the memory of the pupil with the study of the rules of grammar, and in requiring him to translate sentences; without at the same time giving him a true idea of the spirit of the language, which alone can enable him to form his sentences correctly. This may be called the Grammatical mode.

The other, which we term the Natural method, is the imitation of nature; that is, it teaches the pupil a new language in the way in which he has acquired his own.

We have already a great many German grammars, in which the former method is employed; but I have not met with one in which the second plan is adopted. In one German grammar a somewhat similar mode has been attempted, but it is accompanied with many defects. Rules, relating to the same subject, are exhibited in such detached portions that the pupil is scarcely able to gain a correct view of the structure of the German language; and the examples given, tiring by useless repetitions, afford often but imperfect illustrations.

Considering it of paramount importance that the pupil should study the rules of grammar only, as his progress in the acquisition of the language enables him to receive that knowledge and to appreciate its value, the author has made *this* the leading principle in the preparation of the following work. Our native language is acquired without the assistance of rules. Nature instils the spirit of our mother tongue into the mind of the child by means of hearing and speech—example and imitation; and, from the feeble utterance of infancy, we glide on to

the construction of sentences, gradually acquiring the ability to converse on the ordinary affairs of life. But when we wish to go beyond this, we find that a knowledge of the rules of grammar is requisite to enable us to speak, read, or write with that precision and force which are desirable.

How far the author has succeeded in attaining his object, he leaves teachers and pupils to decide. He has aimed to infuse the spirit of the German language into the minds of students, by giving suitable examples which should be distinctly read by the teacher, until the pupil is able to pronounce them correctly. The pupil should then translate, or compare with the translation, until he has learned the meaning of the words and phrases given as examples. They should then be written out, which will give the pupil the knowledge of orthography, and facilitate the fourth step: committing them to memory. The pupil will by this time be able to apply the rules subjoined to each division; and will have the pleasing consciousness that he is really becoming acquainted with the principles of the German language.

The exercises are not translated, as they are intended to test the pupil's acquaintance with the previous lessons.

Being aware of the advantage arising from the analogy subsisting between the English and German languages, the author has endeavored to facilitate the pupil's progress by arranging the examples, as much as his leading principle allowed it, according to the affinity of these two languages.

The prose and poetic selections annexed to this grammar, are intended as an introduction to the works of the best German authors, and sufficient to enable the pupil to read them.

I feel great pleasure in expressing my obligations to Mr. H. I. Schmidt, Professor of the German language and literature in Columbia College, for his polite attention to me in reference to the English part of this grammar.

CHARLES EICHHORN.

NEW-YORK, August 10, 1849.

PREFACE

TO THE THIRD EDITION.

THE First and Second Edition of this Grammar has been disposed of in a remarkably short space of time, and has met with universal approbation from the most intelligent critics. The general plan of the work, therefore, needs neither explanation nor defence. In revising its details, the author has endeavoured to correct the typographical errors which crept into the first edition, and to make such additions and alterations as his experience has suggested as necessary or useful.

Thus improved, the third edition is presented to the public, in the hope and belief, that it will meet with as favourable a reception as its predecessors, than which no higher reward is claimed for the labour bestowed upon it, by

THE AUTHOR

INTRODUCTION.

THE ALPHABET. SIMPLE LETTERS.

LETTERS.	NAMES.	SOUNDS.	ENGLISH.
𝔄, 𝔞	ah	like a in father.	A, a.
𝔅, 𝔟	bay	like the Engl. b, but more like p at the end of a syllable.	B, b.
ℭ, 𝔠	tsay	like ts, but like k before 𝔞, 𝔬 and 𝔲.	C, c.
𝔇, 𝔡	day	like d, but more like t at the end of a syllable.	D, d.
𝔈, 𝔢,	ay	like a in fate, or e in rest, but never like e in me: it is always pronounced.	E, e.
𝔉, 𝔣	eff	sounds harder than the English.	F, f.
𝔊, 𝔤	ghay	sounds at the beginning of a syllable like g in good; the guttural sound of this letter when it is found at the end of a syllable, is best acquired from the teacher's own lips.	G, g.
ℌ, 𝔥	hah	is silent after a vowel, but never when it begins a syllable.	H, h.
ℑ, 𝔦	e	like i in with, or e in me, but never like i in mine.	I, i.
𝔍, 𝔧	yot	like y in yet.	J, j.
𝔎, 𝔨	kah	like the English.	K, k.
𝔏, 𝔩	el	like the English.	L, l.
𝔐, 𝔪	em	like the English.	M, m.
𝔑, 𝔫	en	like the English.	N, n.
𝔒, 𝔬	o	like o in so, but never like o in move.	O, o.
𝔓, 𝔭	pay	like the English.	P, p.
𝔔, 𝔮	koo	like (kv) the English.	Q, q
ℜ, 𝔯	err	is uttered more distinctly than	R, r.
𝔖, ſ, ß,	ess	similar to the English s; but generally soft at the beginning of words, and between two vowels; more sharply sibilant at the end of words. (The long) ſ is to be placed at the beginning, and (the final) ß at the end of a syllable.	S, s.

LETTERS.	NAMES	SOUNDS.	ENGLISH.
T, t	tay	like t.—When ti is followed by another vowel, the t is pronounced like z.	T, t.
U, u,	oo	like oo in moon, or u in ful, but never like u in use.	U, u.
V, v	fow	like the English F.	V, v.
W, w	vay	similar to the English V.	W, w.
X, x	iks	like ks.	X, x
Y, y	ypsilon	like i.	Y, y.
Z, z.	tsett.	like ts, and never like the English.	Z, z.

COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

LETTERS.	NAMES.	SOUNDS.	ENGLISH
Ch, ch,	tsay-hah	has a guttural sound after a, o, and u: it is palatal after e, i, ä, ö, ü: and can be acquired only from the teacher's own lips. Before a, o, u, and r, and at the end of a syllable or word if followed by s (or ß), except in derivatives and compounds, the s (or ß) of which does not belong to the radical syllable; in which case the ch retains its proper sound — it sounds like k.	Ch, ch.
Sch, sch	es-tsay-hah	like the English sh in shame.	Sch, sch.
ß, ss	ess-tsett, ess-ess	the former is substituted for ß, if pronounced more sharply, and ss is employed for ß in the middle of a word, so that one s finishes the first syllable and the other s commences the next syllable.	ss
Th, th	tay-hah	like t, and never like the English.	Th, th.
Ph, ph	pay-hah	like f, but in Pf, pf and p the two letters are uttered.	Ph, ph.

Other compound consonants only serve to sharpen the sound, for example, ff, pp, tt, kk, &c.; in the place of the latter ck is generally used.

MODIFIED VOWELS.

LETTERS.	NAME AND SOUND IDENTICAL.
Ae, ä	sounds similar to a in ant.
Oe, ö	" " to i in bird, or u in urge; it is the same as the French eu in peur.
Ue, ü	like the French u, and is produced by pronouncing e and rounding the lips.

THE DIPHTHONGS.

LETTERS.	NAME AND SOUND IDENTICAL.
Ei, ei, ey, ai	sounds like i in mine.
Au, au	sounds nearly like ou in mouse.
Eu, eu, äu	sounds similar to oy in boy.

Double vowels are pronounced in German like the simple vowel, the reduplication serving merely to lengthen the sound; for example, aa, oo, ee: but ie is pronounced like a long i.

As in German every letter is pronounced, reading may be acquired in one lesson. Every noun begins with a capital letter in German.

SOME NOUNS.

Ein Vater, a father.	Der Wein, (the) wine.
Ein Bruder, a brother.	Der Thee, (the) tea.
Ein Sohn, a son.	Der Kaffee, (the) coffee.
Ein Freund, a friend.	Der Punsch, (the) punch.
Eine Mutter, a mother.	Der Branntwein, (the) brandy.
Eine Schwester, a sister.	Die Milch, (the) milk.
Eine Tochter, a daughter.	Das Bier, (the) beer.
Ein Kind, a child.	Das Wasser, (the)water.
Das Gold, (the) gold.	Das Zinn, (the) tin.
Das Silber, (the) silver.	Das Kupfer, (the) copper.
Das Quecksilber, (the) quicksilver.	Das Metall, (the) metal.
Das Eisen, (the) iron.	Der Stahl, (the) steel.

For the article and its use, see the observation, page 6.

Haben, to have,

(conjugated in the three principal tenses).

PRESENT.

Ich habe eine Mutter.	I have a mother.
Du hast eine Schwester.	Thou hast a sister.
Er hat ein Kind.	He has a child.
Sie hat einen Vater.	She has a father.
Man hat einen Freund.	One has a friend.
Wir haben einen Sohn.	We have a son.
Ihr habt eine Tochter.	You have a daughter.
Sie haben einen Bruder.	They have a brother.

PERFECT.

Ich habe Gold gehabt.	I have had gold.
Du hast Silber gehabt.	Thou hast had silver.
Er hat Quecksilber gehabt.	He has had quicksilver.
Sie hat Eisen gehabt.	She has had iron.
Man hat Zinn gehabt.	One has had tin.
Wir haben Kupfer gehabt.	We have had copper.
Ihr habt Metalle gehabt.	You have had metals.
Sie haben Stahl gehabt.	They have had steel.

FUTURE.

Ich werde Wein haben.	I shall have wine.
Du wirst Thee haben.	Thou wilt have tea.
Er wird Bier haben.	He will have beer.
Sie wird Kaffee haben.	She will have coffee.
Man wird Wasser haben.	One will have water.
Wir werden Milch haben.	We shall have milk.
Ihr werdet Punsch haben.	You will have punch.
Sie werden Branntwein haben.	They will have brandy.

The object in German is placed between the auxiliary and the verb (past participle or infinitive).

Sein, to be,

(conjugated in the three principal tenses.)

PRESENT.

Ich bin gut.	I am good.
Du bist jung.	Thou art young.
Er ist alt.	He is old.
Sie ist hungrig.	She is hungry.
Man ist durstig.	One is thirsty.
Wir sind blind.	We are blind.
Ihr seid lahm.	You are lame.
Sie sind frei.	They are free.

PERFECT.

Ich bin ein Kind gewesen.	I have been a child.
Du bist hungrig gewesen.	Thou hast been hungry.
Er ist freundlich gewesen.	He has been friendly.
Sie ist durstig gewesen.	She has been thirsty.
Man ist jung gewesen.	One has been young.
Wir sind grausam gewesen.	We have been cruel.
Ihr seid in der Schule gewesen.	You have been at school.
Sie sind stumm gewesen.	They have been dumb.

FUTURE.

Ich werde allein sein.	I shall be alone.
Du wirst schläfrig sein.	Thou wilt be sleepy.
Er wird todt sein.	He will be dead.
Sie wird freundlich sein.	She will be friendly.
Man wird grausam sein.	One will be cruel.
Wir werden zu Hause sein.	We shall be at home.
Ihr werdet brav sein.	You will be brave.
Sie werden wild sein.	They will be wild.

Loben, to praise,

(a regular verb, conjugated in the three principal tenses).

PRESENT.

Ich lobe die Mutter.	I praise the mother.
Du lobst die Schwester.	Thou praisest the sister.
Er lobt die Tochter.	He praises the daughter.
Sie lobt das Kind.	She praises the child.
Man lobt den Freund.	One praises the friend.
Wir loben den Vater.	We praise the father.
Lobt ihr den Bruder?	Do you praise the brother?
Sie loben den Sohn.	They praise the son.

PERFECT.

Ich habe das Gold gelobt.	I have praised (the) gold.
Du hast das Eisen gelobt.	Thou hast praised (the) iron.
Er hat das Silber gelobt.	He has praised (the) silver.
Hat sie das Quecksilber gelobt?	Has she praised (the) quicksilver?
Hat man den Stahl gelobt?	Has one praised (the) steel?
Wir haben das Zinn gelobt.	We have praised (the) tin.
Habt ihr das Kupfer gelobt?	Have you praised (the) copper?
Sie haben das Brod gelobt.	They have praised (the) bread.

FUTURE.

Ich werde die Milch loben.	I shall praise (the) milk.
Wirst du das Wasser loben?	Wilt thou praise (the) water?
Er wird das Bier loben.	He will praise (the) beer.
Wird sie das Brod loben?	Will she praise (the) bread?
Man wird den Punsch loben.	One will praise (the) punch.
Wir werden den Wein loben.	We shall praise (the) wine.
Werdet ihr den Thee loben?	Will you praise (the) tea?
Werden sie den Branntwein loben?	Will they praise (the) brandy?

Let the pupil form the answers to the questions for himself.

PROPER GRAMMAR.

OF THE ARTICLE.

Der Vater hat eine Bibel.	The father has a bible.
Der Zucker ist süß.	Sugar is sweet.
Die Nichte ist reich.	The niece is rich.
Die Rose ist roth.	The rose is red.
Das Eisen ist hart.	Iron is hard.
Das Kupfer ist ein Metall.	Copper is a metal.
Ein Monat hat dreißig Tage.	A month has thirty days.
Ein Tag hat vier und zwanzig Stunden.	A day has twenty-four hours.
Eine Stunde hat sechzig Minuten.	An hour has sixty minutes.
Eine Minute hat sechzig Secunden.	A minute has sixty seconds.
Ein Haar ist dünn.	A hair is thin.
Ein Ei ist rund.	An egg is round.

There are two articles in German: the definite (der die, das; the), and the indefinite (ein, eine, ein; a or an) The definite article indicates the gender of the nouns, viz.:

der, the masculine gender,
die, the feminine gender, and
das, the neuter gender.

Which of the indefinite articles are alike?

THE GENDER OF THE GERMAN NOUNS.

Der Gott der Christen ist ein guter Vater.	The God of the christians is a good father.
Der heilige Geist ist der Geist Gottes.	The Holy Ghost is the Spirit of God.
Der Engel des Herrn hat die Jungfrau Maria gesegnet.	The angel of the Lord (has) blessed the Virgin Mary.
Der Mensch ist das Geschöpf (die Creatur) Gottes.	Man is the creature of God.
Joseph ist der Bruder Benjamins gewesen.	Joseph was (has been) the brother of Benjamin.
Wilde Thiere sind: der Löwe, der Leopard, der Wolf, der Bär und der Tiger.	Wild animals are: the lion, the leopard, the wolf, the bear, and the tiger.
Wir haben vier Jahreszeiten: Frühling, Sommer, Herbst und Winter.	We have four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter.
Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate: Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August, September, October, November und December.	A year has twelve months: January, February, March, April, May June, July, August, September October, November, and December.

Eine Woche hat sieben Tage: Sonntag, Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag und Sonnabend (or Samstag).	A week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, and Saturday.
Die vier Hauptwinde sind: der Nordwind, Südwind, Ostwind und Westwind.	The four (main) winds are, the north wind, south wind, east wind, and west wind.
Der Stein ist hart.	The stone is hard.
Der Diamant, der Smaragd und der Rubin sind Edelsteine.	The diamond, the emerald, and the ruby, are precious stones.
Der Teller ist rund.	The plate is round.
Die vier Finger sind: der Zeigefinger, Mittelfinger, Ringfinger und der kleine Finger.	The four fingers are: (the) forefinger, middle-finger, ring-finger, and little-finger.
Der Daumen ist kurz.	The thumb is short.
Ein Wagen ist theuer.	A wagon is dear.
Der Stengel ist lang.	The stalk is long.
Der Esel ist nützlich.	The ass is useful.
Ein guter Meißel ist scharf.	A good chisel is sharp.
Ein Ring ist rund.	A ring is round.
Er ist mein Liebling.	He is my favorite.
Der Säugling ist todt.	The infant (babe) is dead.
Der Flüchtling hat das Kind ermordet.	The fugitive has murdered the child.

Of the masculine gender are:

1st, the name of God, the names of spirits, and of males. Exception: das Mannsbild, a figurative expression for the man; das Söhnlein, the little son.

2d, the names of seasons, months, days, and winds.

3d, the names of stones.

4th, many words ending in er, en, el, ing, and ling.

OF THE FEMININE GENDER.

Die Mutter liebt das Kind.	The mother loves the child.
Venus ist die Göttin der Schönheit.	Venus is the goddess of beauty.
Die Kuh ist sehr nützlich.	The cow is very useful.
Die Katze ist falsch.	The cat is deceitful.
Die Eiche ist das Bild der Stärke (die Stärke).	The oak (tree) is the emblem of (the) strength.
Die Tulpe, Rose und Nelke sind Blumen.	The tulip, rose, and pink, are flowers.

Die Birne, Pflaume, Aprikose und Quitte sind Früchte (die Frucht).	The pear, plum, apricot, and quince are fruits.
Die Sonne ist ein Fixstern, aber die Erde ist ein Planet.	The sun is a fixed star, but the earth is a planet.
Die Schmeichelei ist verächtlich.	(The) flattery is contemptible.
Die Schönheit ist keine Tugend, aber die Aufrichtigkeit.	(The) beauty is no virtue, but (the sincerity (is).
Die Hoffnung versüßt das Leben.	(The) hope sweetens (the) life.
Eine Bucht ist zuweilen sehr klein.	A bay is sometimes very small.
Die Vernunft ist eine Gabe Gottes.	(The) reason is a gift of God.
Die Kunst sucht Niemanden.	(The) art seeks nobody.

Of the feminine gender are:

1st, the names of women, goddesses, and female animals. Except.: das Mädchen, the girl; das Fräulein, the young lady; das Frauenzimmer, the lady; das Weib, the wife, woman.

2d, the names of trees, fruits, and flowers, ending in e. In general e is the characteristic termination of feminine nouns.

3d, substantives ending in ei, heit, keit, ucht, unft, and unst.

4th, Nouns used in a general sense in German take the article.

Exercise. Flattery is contemptible. The pear is a fruit, but the pink is a flower. The earth is a planet, and the sun is a fixed star. Sincerity is a virtue. The mother loves the daughter. The fugitive has murdered the child. She has a cat. The ass is useful. The middle finger is long, and the thumb is short. A week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, &c. A good chisel is sharp. Wild animals are: the tiger, bear, wolf, lion, and leopard. An egg is round. Will you commend (praise) flattery? Do you love art? Has he sought the quince?

OF THE NEUTER GENDER.

Das Eisen ist nicht so theuer, als das Silber.	(The) iron is not as dear as (the) silver.
Man findet das Gold in Californien.	One finds (the) gold (or: Gold is found) in California.
Das südliche Frankreich grenzt an die Pyrenäen.	The southern part of France borders on the Pyrenees.
Das glückliche Arabien ist sehr fruchtbar.	Arabia-Felix is very fertile.

Rußland ist das größte Land in Europa.	Russia is the largest country in Europe
Das Gebälk ist baufällig.	The (collection of) beams are decayed.
Das Gewölk ist über uns.	The (collection of) clouds are above us.
Ein Kind ist entweder ein Knabe, oder ein Mädchen.	A child is either a boy or a girl.
Dieses Pferd ist keine Stute, aber ein Hengst.	This horse is not a mare, but a stallion.
Es ist ein Hund, aber keine Hündin.	It is a dog, but no bitch.
Hier ist die Taube und dort ist der Tauber (or der Tauberich).	Here is the hen-pigeon, and there is the cock-pigeon.
Das Gehen ist gesund.	(The) walking is healthy.
Das Arbeiten macht stark.	(The) work makes strong.
Ich bin das A und das O (3).	I am the Alpha and (the) Omega.
Das theure Ich denkt oft nur an sich.	(The) dear self often thinks only of itself.
Er wünscht mir das letzte Lebewohl.	He wishes me the last farewell.
Dieses ist mein Zeugniß.	This is my certificate.
Das Christenthum ist nicht so alt, als das Judenthum.	(The) christianity is not as old as (the) judaism.
Das Söhnlein ist todt.	The little son is dead.
Das Häuschen ist von Stein gebaut.	The little house is built of stone.
Das Gänschen ist grün.	The gosling is green.
Ein Birnbaum ist hoch.	A pear-tree is high.
Der Frühling ist eine Jahreszeit.	(The) spring is a season.
Der Heldenmuth ist lobenswerth; aber der Hochmuth ist verächtlich.	(The) heroism is praiseworthy, but (the) haughtiness is contemptible.
Das Tischtuch ist weiß.	The table-cloth is white.
Eine Taschenuhr ist rund.	A watch is round.

Of the neuter gender are:

1st, the names of metals, countries, towns, and villages. Exc.: **der Stahl**, the steel; **der Zink**, the zinc; **die Türkei**, Turkey; **die Schweiz**, Switzerland.

2d, collective and frequentative nouns beginning with **ge**.

3d, the denominations of species, if there are particular names for the individuals. If that is

not the case, the denomination of the species is either identical with the name of the male —from which the name of the female is then formed by adding **in**—or with that of the female—in which case the name of the male is formed by adding **er** or **erich**. Except.: **der Mensch**, man.

4th, all parts of speech, even letters, if used substantively.

5th, many words ending in **niß** and **thum**, and the diminutives ending in **chen** or **lein**.

Observation. The gender of compound nouns is determined by the last member (or word) of the compound. Exception: **die Antwort**, the answer; **der Abscheu**, abhorrence; **die Anmuth**, grace; **die Demuth**, humility; **die Großmuth**, generosity; **die Langmuth**, forbearance; **die Sanftmuth**, meekness; **die Schwermuth**, melancholy.

Exercise. Silver is not as dear as gold. He has my pewter. New-York is very large. Is this child a boy or a girl? Is this horse a stallion or a mare? There is a hen-pigeon and here is a cock-pigeon. Labor (to work) is very healthy. I am the Alpha and (the) Omega. A gosling is small. He has built a little house. We commend generosity, but we do not praise melancholy. He thinks of the clouds above us. Heroism is praiseworthy. Flattery is contemptible. Reason is a gift of God. The tulip is a flower. July is a month. The babe is dead. A plate is round. The father has had a bible. A minute has sixty seconds.

Several nouns that are written and pronounced alike, change their signification with their gender:

Der Band, the binding of a book, or volume.	**Das Band**, ribbon, bond.
Der Bauer, peasant, farmer.	**Das Bauer**, cage.
Der Bund, league, confederacy.	**Das Bund**, bundle.
Der Chor, chorus.	**Das Chor**, choir.
Der Erbe, heir.	**Das Erbe**, inheritance.
Der Geißel, hostage.	**Die Geißel**, scourge.
Der Harz, the Hercynian forest.	**Das Harz**, rosin.
Der Heide, pagan.	**Die Heide**, heath.

Der Hut, hat.	Die Hut, heed, pasture.
Der Kiefer, jaw.	Die Kiefer, Scotch fir.
Der Kunde, customer.	Die Kunde, notice.
Der Mensch, man.	Das Mensch, wench.
Der Reis, rice.	Das Reis, sprig.
Der Schild, shield.	Das Schild, the sign of a house.
Der See, lake.	Die See, sea.
Der Thor, fool.	Das Thor, gate.

FORMATION OF THE NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

Die Einwohner von New-York sind theils reich, theils arm.	The inhabitants of New-York are partly rich, (and) partly poor.
Die Adler sind Vögel.	(The) eagles are birds.
Die Bohrer sind rund.	(The) augers are round.
Die Meißel sind entweder von Eisen oder von Stahl.	(The) chisels are either of iron or of steel.
Hier sind die Schlüssel.	Here are the keys.
Die Karpfen sind Fische (der Fisch).	(The) carps are fish.
Die Rechen sind von Holz.	(The) rakes are of wood.
Die Fräulein sind glücklich gewesen.	The young ladies have been happy.
Die Fläschchen werden leer sein.	The little bottles will be empty.
Sie sind meine Freunde.	They are my friends.
Die Bäche (der Bach) sind kleine Flüsse (der Fluß).	(The) brooks are small rivers.
Die Frösche (der Frosch) quaken.	(The) frogs croak.
Die Bäume (der Baum) haben Stämme (der Stamm).	(The) trees have trunks.
Die Hände (die Hand) sind nicht so lang, als die Arme (der Arm).	The hands are not as long as the arms.
Die Haare sind dünn.	The hairs are thin.
Die Städte (die Stadt) haben Straßen.	(The) towns have streets.
Die Blumen sind Pflanzen.	(The) flowers are plants.
Die Schwalben haben Federn.	(The) swallows have feathers.
Die Lehrerinnen sind traurig.	The (female) teachers are sad.
Die Deutschen haben gute Schulen.	The Germans have good schools.
Die Franzosen sind lebhaft.	The French are lively.
Die Augen (das Auge) sind der Spiegel des Geistes.	The eyes are the mirror of the mind (heart).
Die Kinder singen Lieder (das Lied).	The children sing songs.
Er holt die Eier.	He is going for (fetches) the eggs.
Die Bänder sind lang.	(The) ribbons are long.
Die Männer lesen Bücher (das Buch).	The men read books.

Er hat vier Paar Ochsen (der Ochs) gekauft.	He has bought four pair of oxen.
Zwanzig Buch Papier machen ein Ries.	Twenty quires of paper make a ream.
Ein Ochs hat zuweilen achtzig Pfund Talg.	An ox has sometimes eighty pounds of tallow.
Der Schacht ist gegen dreihundert Klafter (die Klafter) tief.	The stratum is about three hundred fathoms deep.
Dort sind vier hundert Mann Reiterei.	There are four hundred men cavalry.

Rule 1st., The definite article has two numbers, the singular (der, die, das) and the plural (die); but the indefinite has no plural.

2d., Masculine and neuter nouns ending in er, en, el, chen and lein, retain their termination in the plural. Feminine nouns of this termination generally take n. Example: die Schwester, die Schwestern, sisters.

3d., The termination e in the plural is that which more particularly characterizes masculine nouns, although it is not peculiar to them.

4th., Feminine nouns generally terminate in n or en in the plural.

5th., The plural of neuter nouns generally terminates in er.

6th., Nouns changing their vowels a, o, u into ä, ö, ü, and the diphthong au into äu never take the termination en.—Particular attention is to be paid to the formation of the plural.

7th., Nouns denoting number, measure, or weight, remain unchanged after a numeral; and the English "of" after the latter is never to be translated.

Exceptions are (they form a plural): die Elle, yard; die Flasche, bottle; die Meile, mile; die Tasse, cup; die Unze, ounce; die Stunde, hour; die Minute, minute; die Secunde, second.

The following nouns have no singular:

die Beinkleider, or Hosen, pantaloons.	(die) Ostern, easter.
die Briefschaften, letters.	(die) Pfingsten, whitsuntide.
die Einkünfte, revenue.	(die) Weihnachten, christmas
die Fasten, lent.	die Gebrüder, the brothers.

die Geschwister, brothers and sisters.
die Kosten, costs, expenses.
die Leute, people.
die Molken, whey.
die Sporteln, fees.
die Eltern, parents.

Exercise. I praise the father, the mother, the sisters, and the brothers.. We have bought twenty bottles of wine and three pair of oxen. Eagles and swallows have feathers. He has bought three yards of ribbon. Ribbons are sometimes dear. He is going for the tulips, roses, pinks, pears, plumbs, and apricots. Are the plates round? We have four fingers: the fore finger, etc. Asses are useful. Are the stalks green (grün)? Trunks are thick. Oaks are trees. Are the letters here? Parents are kind. Twenty quires of paper make a ream. Fools (die Thoren) are sometimes cruel. Gates (die Thore) are large. Brooks are small; rivers are large. The Germans are not as lively as the French. The children read books. America has many (viele) towns. The eyes are the mirror of the heart. There are many young ladies. Kittens (die Kätzchen) are small. Rakes are of wood. Augers and chisels are either of iron or of steel.

DECLENSION OF THE GERMAN ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION (OF NOUNS).

Der Freund liebt den Freund.	The friend loves the friend.
Die Worte des Freundes sind ohne Schmeichelei.	The words of the friend are without flattery.
Des Freundes Worte sind ohne Schmeichelei.	The friend's words are without flattery.
Der Freund sagt dem Freunde die Wahrheit.	The friend speaks the truth to the friend (or: the friend tells his friend the truth.).
Man achtet den Freund.	One esteems the friend.
Die Freunde helfen einander.	(The) friends help each other.
Freunde in der Noth gehen tausend auf ein Loth (half an ounce).	Friends in need are friends indeed.
Die Herzen der Freunde sind ohne Heuchelei.	The hearts of (the) friends are without hypocrisy.
Er hat den Freunden das Geld gegeben (geben).	He has given the money to the friends.
Er wird die Freunde loben.	He will praise the friends.
Ein Apfel ist rund.	An apple is round.
Der Stiel eines Apfels ist kurz.	The stem of an apple is short.

Ich gebe einem Apfel den Vorzug.	I prefer (give the preference to) an an apple.
Der Knabe hat einen Apfel gekauft.	The boy has bought an apple.
Das Pferd hat vier Beine (das Bein).	The horse has four legs.
Der Schweif (or Schwanz) des Pferdes ist lang.	The tail of the horse is long.
Des Pferdes Schweif ist lang.	The horse's tail is long.
Geben Sie dem Pferde das Heu.	Give the hay to the horse
Er wird das Pferd kaufen.	He will buy the horse.
Die Pferde sind nützlich.	(The) horses are useful.
Die Haare der Pferde sind kurz.	The hair(s) of (the) horses is (are) short.
Er gibt den Pferden zu wenig Hafer.	He gives the horses too little oats.
Er gibt es den Pferden.	He gives it to the horses.
Wir werden die Pferde verkaufen.	We shall sell the horses.
Ein Mädchen hat Zahnschmerzen.	A (i. e., a certain) girl has the toothache.
Die Hände eines Mädchens sind zart.	The hands of a girl are delicate.
Ich habe einem Mädchen die Blumen geschenkt (schenken).	I have presented the flowers to a girl.
Sie hat ein Mädchen verwundet.	She has wounded a girl.

Let the learner find and form the declension of the masculine and neuter article, from the examples given.

This plan should be pursued by the pupil, whenever a new subject has been exhibited and illustrated by examples: let him develop its forms in due succession as he traces them in different sentences; by thus evolving them, as it were out of himself, and synthetically reducing them to the ordinary scheme of proper grammar, he will more readily and effectually commit them to memory. It is only in this way that he will be able thoroughly to master the necessary rules; whereas, if they were given to him—as something existing without him—the slightest disturbing influence may again take them from his mind.

Rule. 1st., To the first declension belong those nouns which have the genitive singular ending either in **es** and the dative in **e**, or in **s** (and the dative like the nominative), as is the case with all nouns ending in **er**, **en**, **el**, **chen**, and **lein**; the accusative singular (of

the noun) has in all genders the same termination as the nominative.

2d., The genitive and accusative plural (of the noun) is in all genders like the nominative plural; the dative plural takes n in all genders, with the exception of those nouns which already end in n in the nominative plural.

3d., The dative precedes the accusative in German, but follows it when it, viz., the accusative, is expressed by a pronoun.

SOME NOUNS,

BELONGING TO THE FIRST DECLENSION.

der Jüngling, the youth.
der Schuh, the shoe.
der Tisch, the table.
der Stern, the star.
der Fuchs, the fox (Füchse).
der Kopf, the head (Köpfe).
der Zahn, the tooth (Zähne).
der Baum, the tree (Bäume).
der Traum, the dream (Träume).
der Fehler, the fault.
der Kuchen, the cake.
der Besen, the broom.
der Aermel, the sleeve.
der Löffel, the spoon.
der Schnabel, the bill (Schnäbel).
der Nagel, the nail (Nägel).
der Garten, the garden (Gärten).
der Ofen, the stove (Oefen).
der Hammer, the hammer (Hämmer).
der Vater, the father (Väter).
das Schaf, the sheep (–e).
das Bein, the leg (–e).
das Thier, the animal (–e).
das Jahr, the year (–e).
das Bett, the bed (Betten).
das Feld, the field.
das Bild, the picture.
das Siegel, the seal.
das Zimmer, the room.
das Messer, the knife.
das Tischchen, the little table.
das Blatt, the leaf (Blätter).
das Lamm, the lamb (Lämmer).
das Band, the ribbon (Bänder).
das Tuch, the cloth (Tücher).
das Dach, the roof (Dächer).
das Buch, the book (Bücher).
das Horn, the horn (Hörner).
das Kalb, the calf (Kälber).

Exercise. A youth is not old. I have the shoe of the (my) father. The hearts of (the) friends are without hypocrisy. Is

the table round? Give the broom to the youth. The tail of the fox is long. The picture is handsome. Is the room large? A year is long. We give the hay to the lamb. I will present the cake to the child. A tree has leaves. The leaves of a tree are green. I am looking for (seek) the spoon, the picture, the knife, the hammer, and nail. I tell the man the truth. The Holy Ghost is the Spirit of God. I have had a dream. I shall buy a stove. (The) dear self often thinks only of itself. We love lambs. To the heads. To the animal. To a stove. The seals are partly green, and partly red (roth). Do you prefer (give the preference to) a sheep or (to) a lamb? I prefer a calf. They are reading (read) a book. We have had a table, a cake, a broom, a hammer, a picture, a bed, a spoon, and a knife.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Der Hase ist furchtsam.	The hare is timid.
Die Augenlieder des Hasen sind kurz.	The eye-lids of the hare are short.
Der Mensch gleicht oft dem Hasen.	Man often resembles the hare.
Der Hund sucht den Hasen.	The dog is looking for (seeks) the hare.
Die Hasen leben in dem Walde.	(The) hares live in the forest.
Die Ohren (das Ohr) der Hasen sind lang.	The ears of (the) hares are long.
Der Winter schadet den Hasen.	(The) winter injures (the) hares.
Ich habe die Hasen gern.	I am fond of hares.
Hast du die Hasen gern?	Art thou fond of hares?
Ein Elephant ist groß.	An elephant is large.
Die Beine eines Elephanten sind lang.	The legs of an elephant are long.
Er hat einem Elephanten ein Glas Wein gegeben.	He has given a glass of wine to an elephant.
Er füttert einen Elephanten.	He feeds (is feeding) an elephant.

RULE. Those nouns belong to the second declension which add **n** to the nominative singular in forming all the other cases, both singular and plural, if it (the nominative singular) terminates in **e**, and **en**, if it ends in a consonant.

The nouns of this declension are chiefly of the masculine gender. The following are examples:

Der Affe, the monkey.
Der Bär, the bear.
Der Löwe, the lion.
Der Ochs, the ox.
Der Fink, the finch.
Der Rabe, the raven.
Der Mensch, man.
Der Held, hero.
Der Thor, der Narr, fool.
Der Knabe, der Bube, boy.
Der Herr, the master.
Der Monarch, the monarch.
Der Prinz, the prince.
Der Christ, the christian.
Der Jude, the Jew.
Der Grieche, the Greek.
Der Deutsche, the German.
Der Franzose, the Frenchman.

Exercise. He sells the watch to the Jew. An ox has sometimes eighty pounds of tallow. The finch and the raven are birds. The reason of man. The master of the house is not here. I have said it to the master of the house. They are Frenchmen. We do not praise the monarch. He is a fool. The ribbons of the Jew are dear. A hero is brave. The French are lively. I shall present the monkey to the prince. They have wounded a bear, a lion, and a raven. The son of a monarch is a prince. The Germans are upright (bieder). Has he fed the ox? I am fond of finches. Are you looking for the boys? He prefers (gives the preference to) the French. You resemble a lion. We have given the Germans four bottles of wine. Ravens are wild. Are you fond of monkeys? The ears of an ox are not long. The bills of (the) ravens are short. The master is in the garden. The beams of the house are decayed. I am thinking (I think) of the faults of man. Many men live in America.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Die Rose ist eine Blume.	The rose is a flower.
Die Farbe der Rose ist entweder roth oder weiß.	The color of the rose is either red or white.
Wo ist die Biene? Sie ist auf der Rose.	Where is the bee? It is on the rose
Er sucht die Rose nicht.	He does not seek the rose.
Die Rosen haben Dornen.	(The) roses have thorns.
Er bewundert die Schönheit der Rosen.	He admires the beauty of roses
Er sucht nach den Rosen.	He is looking for the roses.
Sie hat die Rosen gern.	She is fond of roses.
Eine Ratte ist kleiner, als eine Katze.	A rat is smaller than a cat.
Die Falschheit einer Katze.	The deceitfulness of a cat.

Man kann einer Katze nicht trauen.	One cannot trust a cat.
Es hat eine Katze.	It has a cat.

Which cases of the feminine article are alike?

RULE 1st., None but feminine nouns belong to the third declension; they remain unaltered in the singular. For the manner of forming the plural, see RULE 2d, page 15.

2d., The negative „nicht," not, is to be placed after the object in German. (Page 165.)

Some nouns of the third declension.

Die Natur, nature.	Die Nacht, night (Nächte).
Die Lilie, the lily.	Die Bank, bench (Bänke).
Die Unschuld, innocence.	Die Tochter, daughter (Töchter).
Die Freude, joy.	Die Maus, mouse (Mäuse).
Die Wolle, wool.	Die Nuß, nut (Nüsse).
Die Freiheit, freedom, liberty.	Die Kirche, church.
Die Perle, the pearl.	Die Gabel, fork.

Exercise. Nature is the work of God. The mother is in the garden. I do not trust a cat. The sister of the niece is very good. The lily is the emblem of innocence, and the rose is the emblem of beauty and of joy. He is at school, but she is at church. The wool of sheep is soft. We have bought many nuts, apricots, plums, and pinks. The color of a tulip. Liberty is the pearl of life. New-York has many churches. Frogs croak. She is going for (fetches) a fork, knife, spoon, and plate. Where is the rat? It is on the bench. The cat is an enemy of mice. We admire the innocence of a child. Christianity is not as old as Judaism. He has injured the gosling. Reason is a gift of God. Flattery, and haughtiness, are contemptible. Where is the bench? It is in the room. The oak is the emblem of strength. I give you four nuts. We have three daughters. Benches are (made) of wood.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

NOMINATIVE.

Franz ist fleißig.	Francis is industrious.
Caroline tanzt.	Caroline is dancing.
Großbritanien ist eine Insel.	Great Britain is an island.
Der Rhein ist ein Fluß.	The Rhine is a river.

GENITIVE.

Das Betragen des Carl ist gut.	The behavior of Charles is good.
Carl's Betragen ist gut.	Charles' behavior is good.
Der Stolz des Franz ist unerträglich.	The pride of Francis is unbearable.
Franzen's Stolz ist unerträglich.	Francis' pride is unbearable.
Die Schönheit der Wilhelmine.	The beauty of Wilhelmina.
Wilhelminen's Schönheit.	Wilhelmina's beauty.
Amerika's Staaten. / Die Staaten von Amerika.	The states of America.
London ist die Hauptstadt England's or von England.	London is the capital of England.
Die Einwohner von Paris und Mainz.	The inhabitants of Paris and of Mayence.
Die Alpen der Schweiz.	The Alps of Switzerland.

DATIVE.

Viele Menschen gehen nach Californien.	Many men go to California.
Eduard hat der Sophie einen Affen geschenkt.	Edward has presented a monkey to Sophia
Philipp gleicht Ludwig or dem Ludwig.	Philip resembles Lewis.
Frankfurt am Main.	Frankfort on the Maine.
Er lebt in der Türkei.	He lives in Turkey.
Wir gehen zu der Caroline.	We are going to Caroline.

ACCUSATIVE.

Wo ist die Margareth?	Where is Margaret?
Sie ruft Sophie or die Sophie.	She calls Sophia.
Wir lieben Elisabeth or die Elisabeth.	We love Elizabeth.
Ich lese den Herold.	I am reading the Herald.
Die Werke des Dichters Schiller sind vortrefflich.	The works of the poet Schiller are excellent.
König Friedrich's Siege.	King Frederick's victories.
Friedrich Sallet's Gedichte.	The poems of Frederic Sallet.
Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln.	The fables of — — Gellert.

Rule 1st., Proper names, declined with the definite article, remain unaltered. Feminine names of countries, and rivers, are declined only with the definite article.

2d., Proper names without the definite article take 's in the genitive, but masculine names ending in s, sch,

ß, x, and z, and feminine names ending in e, take ens (ns).—The genitive case of names of countries, places, and rivers, is often expressed by the preposition von, especially with names ending in s, sch, and z.

3d., The dative and accusative is like the nominative.

4th., Proper names, being preceded by a substantive *with an Article*, are not declined.

5th., If the surname is preceded by one or more Christian names, the surname only is declined.

Observation. The English *to*, expressing a direction towards a person, is to be translated by zu in German, but by nach, if expressing a direction towards a place, or country.

Exercise. Charles is hungry, and Margaret is thirsty. I admire the beauty of Sophia. America is very fertile and rich. Frederick's pride is unbearable. Francis' behavior is praiseworthy. The deceitfulness of John is contemptible. We live in New-York, and not in Turkey. Do you go to England or to Switzerland? The inhabitants of Boston are partly rich, and partly poor. He is seeking the Alps of Switzerland. He resembles Philip. We shall go to Lewis; will you go to Francis? No, sir, (nein, mein Herr,) I shall go to Turkey. We have told (said it to) Charles, have you told Frederick? No, sir, I have told John. We have presented a finch to Philip, and he will present a fox to Charles.

OF THE GERMAN ADJECTIVES.

Das Eis ist kalt.	(The) ice is cold.
Das Blut ist warm.	(The) blood is warm.
Der Schnee ist weiß.	(The) snow is white.
Die Lilie ist weiß.	The lily is white.
Das Papier ist weiß.	The paper is white.
Die Lilien sind weiß.	(The) lilies are white.
Ein Wurm ist rund.	A worm is round.
Die Würmer sind rund.	(The) worms are round.
Ein Kalb ist jung.	A calf is young.
Kälber sind jung.	Calves are young.

Adjectives, used as predicates, are not declined at all.

Adjectives declined with the definite Article.

Der reiche Kaufmann ist zufrieden.	The rich merchant is contented.
Ich bewundere die Güte des reichen Kaufmannes.	I admire the kindness of the rich merchant.
Wir wohnen mit dem reichen Kaufmanne in einem Hause.	We live with the rich merchant in the same house (in one house).
Sie werden den reichen Kaufmann rufen.	They will call the rich merchant.
Die reichen Kaufleute haben viel Geld.	The rich merchants have much money.
Die Kinder der reichen Kaufleute sind reich.	The children of the rich merchants are rich.
Er hat es den reichen Kaufleuten gesagt.	He has told the rich merchants.
Sie suchen die reichen Kaufleute.	They seek the rich merchants.
Die fette Gans kann leicht schwimmen.	The fat goose can swim with ease (easily).
Das Fleisch der fetten Gans ist ungesund.	The flesh (meat) of (the) fat goose is unhealthy.
Er gibt der fetten Gans Hafer.	He gives (some) oats to the fat goose.
Füttert sie die fette Gans?	Does she feed the fat goose?
Die fetten Gänse sind schwer.	The fat geese are heavy.
Die Federn der fetten Gänse sind lang.	The feathers of (the) fat geese are long.
Schadet es den fetten Gänsen?	Does it hurt the fat geese?
Sie haben die fetten Gänse verkauft.	They have sold the fat geese.
Das gute Kind ist nicht hier, es ist dort.	The good child is not here, it is there.
Das Betragen des guten Kindes.	The behavior of the good child.
Er gibt dem guten Kinde die Aepfel.	He gives the apples to the good child.
Die Eltern loben das gute Kind.	The parents praise the good child.
Die guten Kinder arbeiten gern.	(The) good children are fond of working.
Schonen Sie der guten Kinder.	Spare (of) the good children.
Der Vater hat den guten Kindern zwei Dutzend Nüsse gekauft.	The father has bought two dozen nuts for the good children.
Der Lehrer lobt die fleißigen und guten Kinder.	The teacher praises the industrious and good children.

RULE. Adjectives, used in an attributive sense, i. e., being placed before the noun and forming with it, as it

were one idea, and being preceded by the definite article, terminate in the nominative singular of all genders, and in the accusative singular of the feminine and neuter genders in **e**; all other cases, both singular and plural, end in **en**.

Observation. This rule holds good even when several adjectives precede the noun.

Exercise. The soft wool of a sheep. The long bench. The large elephant. The white teeth. The great fault. The high trees. The green ribbons. I praise the industrious girl. He calls the deceitful Sophia. We feed the old horse. We are looking for the little cat. The useful books are instructive (lehrreich). The instructive book is on the round table. He has sold the handsome pictures to the good girls. The parents of the young children are dead. She has given the handsome flowers to the brother of the little boy. The children of the rich merchant are rich. The dumb boy has hurt the old man. Has he sold the handsome horses to the happy niece? The small eye-lids of the timid hare. The long ears of the useful ass. The deep stratum. The legs of the fat calves. The contented girls have given four dollars to Charles. I commend the good behavior of John. Are the long feathers of (the) fat geese dear? Has he fed the hungry ox? The excellent works of the poet Schiller. I read the victories of the old king Frederick. The high Alps of Switzerland.

Adjectives declined with the Indefinite article.

Er ist ein fleißiger Knabe.	He is an industrious boy.
Die Arbeiten eines fleißigen Knaben sind reinlich und fehlerfrei.	The exercises (works) of an industrious boy are clean and correct.
Der Lehrer erlaubt einem fleißigen Knaben manches Vergnügen.	The teacher allows an industrious boy many a pleasure.
Der Erzieher liebt einen fleißigen Knaben.	The tutor loves an industrious boy
Ich unterrichte fleißige Knaben gern.	I like to instruct industrious boys.
Liebe und Achtung sind der sichere Lohn fleißiger und guter Knaben.	Love and esteem are the sure rewards of industrious and good boys.
Ich habe Umgang mit fleißigen Knaben.	I have intercourse with industrious boys.
Ich kenne viele fleißige Knaben.	I know many industrious boys.

Eine goldene Taschenuhr ist theuer.	A gold watch is dear.
Was ist der Preis einer goldenen Taschenuhr?	What is the price of a gold watch?
Er arbeitet an einer goldenen Taschenuhr.	He works at a gold watch.
Er hat eine goldene Taschenuhr gekauft.	He has bought a gold watch.
Goldene Taschenuhren sind gewöhnlich klein.	Gold watches are commonly small.
Der Eigenthümer goldener Taschenuhren ist nicht immer reich.	The owner of gold watches is not always rich.
Er handelt mit goldenen Taschenuhren.	He deals in (trades with) gold watches.
Wir haben goldene Taschenuhren gern.	We are fond of gold watches.
Ein schönes Pferd kostet gegen vier hundert Thaler.	A handsome horse costs about four hundred dollars.
Was ist der Preis eines schönen Pferdes?	What is the price of a handsome horse?
Er gibt einem schönen Pferde mehr Hafer, als einem häßlichen.	He gives more oats to a handsome horse than to an ugly one.
Herr O. hat ein schönes und gutes Pferd gekauft.	Mr. O. has bought a handsome and good horse.
Die arabischen Pferde sind schöne Pferde.	The Arabian horses are handsome horses.
Die Farbe schöner Pferde.	The color of handsome horses.
Herr A. handelt mit schönen Pferden.	Mr. A. deals in handsome horses.
Er wird schöne Pferde suchen.	He will seek handsome horses.

RULE. Adjectives, declined with the indefinite article, take in the nominative and accusative singular of all genders, and in the plural the termination of the Definite Article. The genitive and dative singular end in all genders, in en.

Observation. *One* (*ones*) which in English often follows adjectives, is not to be translated; and the German adjective, in this case, is treated as if it were accompanied by a noun.

Exercise. The Arabian horse of an old general. A silver[1] spoon. An iron[2] nail. A paper[3] hat. A gold knife. A tin[4] plate. A stone[5] bench. A good name is a great treasure (der Schatz.) I wish you a good morning, a good day, a good evening, a good night. The small worms live in and on the

1. Silberner; 2. eiserner; 3. papierner; 4. zinnerner; 5. steinerne.

earth. Virtuous (tugendhaft) men have intercourse with virtuous men. The bible is a good book. I have had a paper hat. Mr. X. has red hair (plur.). Mr. X. deals in gold rings, iron knives, and forks and silver spoons. Caroline is dancing with a handsome youth. I know many instructive books. Wild animals are: the tiger, leopard, &c. High trees are not always fertile trees. Spare the gentle (sanft) lambs. Long, white sleeves. What is the price of a large, fertile garden? Do you instruct many diligent and good children? Esteem and love are the sure reward of virtuous youths. I have granted (the) friendly Francis many a pleasure. Has she presented the gold ring to the son of the rich merchant? Are iron hammers heavy? Contented men are happy.

Adjectives, declined without any Article.

Alter Wein ist der beste.	Old wine is the best.
Ein Glas altes (alten) Weines.	A glass of old wine.
Er schwimmt in altem Weine.	He swims in old wine.
Wir trinken alten Wein.	We drink old wine.
Hölzerne Hämmer sind leicht.	Wooden hammers are light.
Das Gewicht hölzerner Hämmer.	The weight of wooden hammers.
Sie arbeiten mit hölzernen Hämmern.	They work with wooden hammers.
Ich will Wilhelm zwei hölzerne Hämmer schicken.	I will send two wooden hammers to William.
Theure Schwester!	Dear sister!
Das Gewicht theurer und wohlfeiler Butter ist gleich.	The weight of dear and cheap butter is the same (equal).
Er schickt nach theurer Butter.	He sends for dear butter.
Er kostet theure Butter.	He tastes dear butter.
Alte Personen sprechen gern.	Old persons are fond of talking.
Die Erfahrung alter Personen.	The experience of old persons.
Wir glauben alten Personen.	We believe old persons.
Die Religion gebietet Achtung gegen alte Personen.	Religion requires us to reverence (commands esteem towards) old persons.
Ist weißes Brod nahrhaft?	Is white bread nutritive?
Die Nahrhaftigkeit weißes (weißen) Brodes.	The nutritiveness of white bread.
Er handelt mit weißem Brode.	He deals in white bread.
Herr E. hat ein sehr weißes Hemd.	Mr. E. has a very white shirt.

Sind gesunde Kinder (Menschen) immer zufrieden?	Are healthy children (men) always contented?
Das Blut gesunder Kinder (Menschen) ist roth.	The blood of healthy children (men) is red.
Er hat gesunden Kindern Arznei (or Medizin) gegeben.	He has given medicine to healthy children.
Ich kenne gesunde und ungesunde Kinder.	I know healthy and unhealthy children.

RULE. Adjectives, preceded by no article take in all cases, both singular and plural, the termination of the definite article.—The nominative and accusative singular of the neuter gender change the termination of the definite article **as** into **es**, and the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter genders end, for the sake of euphony, in **en**.

Exercise. Dear friend! Dear mother! Dear sisters! This is the reward of virtuous men. I am looking for iron nails. Have you gold ones, sir? We have sent for sweet apples. Hast thou white table-cloths? We esteem virtuous and good men. A glass of old wine. A pound of sweet sugar. A yard of green cloth. My sister always dances with handsome and tall youths. Iron hammers are heavy. I love nutritive bread. The nutritiveness of good meat. We admire the handsome color of the white lilies. They praise the good behavior of (the) little Sophia. Have you danced with the friendly girl? The exercises of an industrious scholar are correct and clean. I do not give the dear ring to the cruel Frederick. Is the old woman there alone? Hast thou intercourse with cruel persons? Do you instruct many industrious or many lazy (faul) scholars? I instruct industrious and lazy ones, but more industrious ones. The rich are not always happy. The parents of good and obedient (gehorsam) children are happy. Mr. N. sells cheap pantaloons. What is the price of a pair of pantaloons? Religion commands love towards all men. Mr. X. is the owner of this large house. Seawater is commonly bitter.

THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.

Die Seele ist unsterblich.	The soul is immortal.
Das Federmesser ist scharf.	The penknife is sharp.

Das Leben ist kurz.	Life is short.
Er ist der Hülfe bedürftig.	He is in want of help.
Der Reiter ist des Reitens gewohnt.	The rider is accustomed to riding.
Der Sohn ist dem Vater ähnlich.	The son resembles the father.
Ich bin zehn Jahre alt.	I am ten years old.
Mein Haus ist sechzig Fuß lang.	My house is sixty feet long.
Er ist so arm, wie ich.	He is as poor as I (am).
Ich bin eben so groß, wie du.	I am just as tall as thou (art).
Der Marder ist nicht so listig, als der Fuchs.	The marten is not as cunning as the fox.
Gott ist eben so gerecht, wie gütig.	God is as just as kind.
Die Frauenzimmer sind nicht so tapfer, als listig.	Women are not as brave as they are cunning.

RULE. If different subjects are compared with one another, with regard to one quality, or if the comparison refers to different qualities pertaining to one subject, and if these qualities are affirmed to be equal, the English *as–as*, is to be translated into German by **so–wie**; and, if no equality results, the English *not as* (or *not so*)*–as*, by **nicht so–als**.

COMPARATIVE.

Dieses Hemd ist weißer, als jenes.	This shirt is whiter than that one.
Ist Carl älter, als Ludwig?	Is Charles older than Lewis?
Nein, mein Herr, er ist jünger.	No, sir, he is younger.
Die Schale (der Nuß) ist härter, als der Kern.	The shell (of the nut) is harder than the kernel.
Ein Anker ist schwerer, als ein Hammer.	An anchor is heavier than a hammer.
Der Schnee ist kälter, als das Wasser.	Snow is colder than water.
Die erwachsenen Personen sind klüger, als die Kinder.	(The) grown-up persons are more prudent than children.
Die Tanne ist länger, als die Eiche.	The fir-tree is taller than the oak-tree.
Du bist lebhaft, aber ich bin lebhafter, als du.	Thou art lively, but I am more lively than thou (art).
Dieser Acker ist fruchtbarer, als jener.	This acre is more fertile than that.
Dieses ist der fruchtbarere Acker.	This is the more fertile field.
Der einfachere Mensch ist zufriedener, als der verschwenderische.	The more frugal man is more contented than the prodigal one.
Er ist trauriger, als ich.	He is more sad than I (am).
Die Männer sind tapferer, als die Frauen.	Men are more valiant than women.

Caroline ist schlanker, als Sophie; aber Sophie ist stolzer, als Caroline.	Caroline is more slender than Sophia, but Sophia is prouder than Caroline.
Er ist mehr gelehrt, als weise.	He is more learned than wise.
Sie ist mehr schön, als gut.	She is handsomer than (she is) good.
Er hat einen mehr geläuterten Geschmack, als sein Bruder.	He has a more refined taste than his brother.
Du bist weniger gelehrt, als dein Vater.	Thou art less learned than thy father.
Der weniger gelehrte Mensch hat oft ein gesunderes Urtheil, als der gelehrte.	The less informed man has often a sounder judgment than the man of learning.
Sie ist um Vieles lasterhafter, als ich.	She is more vicious by a great deal than I (am).
Er ist um die Hälfte kürzer, als sein Oheim.	He is shorter by one half than his uncle.
Herr N. ist um Vieles geschickter, als Herr Z.	Mr. N. is more skilful by a great deal than Mr. Z.
Franz ist bei Weitem fleißiger, als Ferdinand.	Francis is more industrious by a great deal than Ferdinand.

RULE 1st. The comparative is formed by adding er to the positive and changing a, o, u, in the radical syllable into ä, ö ü.

2d. Adjectives, not having a, o, or u in the radical syllable, those which end in er, and those which are formed either like participles (rasend, mad; verhaßt, odious, &c.) or by the addition of syllables (dankbar, grateful, &c.); as also a number of others*, do not soften these vowels. The diphthong au is never changed.

3d. The comparative must be formed by prefixing mehr, *more*, to the positive, when two different qualities are compared with each other, or when it would be difficult to pronounce the adjective in the ordinary form of the comparative degree.

4th. If a quality is expressed in an inferior degree weniger or minder, *less*, must be used.

5th. The English *than*, after the comparative degree, is to be translated by als.

6th. Adjectives in the comparative degree, if used attributively, have the same terminations as in the positive.

* See p. 30.

SUPERLATIVE.

Wer ist der fleißigste Schüler?	Who is the most industrious scholar?
Ludwig ist der fleißigste.	Lewis is the most industrious.
Der geradeste Weg ist der kürzeste.	The straightest way is the shortest.
Der zufriedenste Mensch ist der glücklichste.	The most contented man is the happiest.
Er ist der ärmste von uns allen.	He is the poorest of us all.
Er hat es dem ärmsten von uns gegeben.	He has given it to the poorest of us.
Waschington war der größte Wohlthäter Amerika's.	Washington was the greatest benefactor of (to) America.
Kennen Sie den kürzesten Weg nach Californien?	Do you know the shortest way to California?
Die Zeit ist das Kostbarste, was wir haben.	Time is the most precious possession (what) we have.
Der kleine Schmeichler sagt: theuerster Vater, theuerste Mutter, theuerstes Mädchen, ich liebe dich sehr.	The little flatterer says: dearest father, dearest mother, dearest girl, I love thee very (much).

Dieses Tuch ist am schwärzesten.	This cloth is blackest.
Sophie war am aufmerksamsten, am folgsamsten, am freundlichsten.	Sophia was most attentive, most obedient, most friendly.

Rule 1st., The superlative is formed by adding est or st to the positive; but as the superlative is used with the definite article, e is added to est or st (este or ste). As regards the softening of the letters a, o, and u, observe the rules given in connexion with the comparative.

2d., The declension of the superlative is like that of the positive.

3d., When the superlative in English is formed without the definite article, and in some instances when the article is used, the Germans make use of the dative singular (of the adjective) to which the word am is prefixed.

Sein Beweggrund ist edel.	His motive is noble.
Seine Beweggründe sind edler, als die meinigen.	His motives are nobler than mine.
Die Seele ist vollkommener als der Körper; die Seele ist daher der edelste Theil des Menschen.	The soul is more perfect than the body; the soul, therefore, is the noblest part of man.
Dieses Tuch ist dunkler als jenes.	This cloth is darker than that.

Der Birnbaum ist hoch, die Eiche ist höher, und die Tanne ist am höchsten.	The pear-tree is high, the oak is higher, and the fir-tree is highest.
Die Tanne ist der höchste Baum unter diesen.	The fir-tree is the highest among these.
Er ist dem Rande des Abgrundes nahe.	He is near the edge of the precipice.
Ich bin näher daran gewesen.	I have been nearer to it.
Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gottes Hülfe am nächsten.	When our (the) need is greatest, God's help is nearest. (A German saying).
Sein Vater ist wirklich sehr gut, aber der meinige ist besser.	His father, indeed, is very good, but mine is better.
Die Tugend ist der beste Schatz.	Virtue is the best treasure.
Ein zufriedener Mensch ist am besten daran.	A contented man is best off.

RULE 1st., Adjectives ending in **el**, drop the **e** before **l** in the comparative.

2d., The degrees of comparison of **hoch**, **nahe**, and **gut**, are irregular.

Exercise. The body is mortal, but the soul is immortal. The soul is more perfect than the body. I am accustomed to labor (infinitive in G.). Is he accustomed to walking? She is twenty years old; the babe is four months old. Is his babe younger than mine? This trunk is twenty feet long. Is it longer than that? He is as insufferable as she (is). She is just as deceitful as he (is). Is the marten as cunning as the fox? No, sir, the fox is more cunning. The fox is one of the most cunning animals. God is as kind as (he is) just. Are children as prudent as grown-up people? No, sir, they are not as prudent as grown-up people, but they are more innocent. Iron is harder than gold. A hammer is not as heavy as an anchor. He is lively, but she is more lively than he. She is the liveliest girl of all. Charles is very prodigal, but William is more prodigal, and Francis is the most prodigal of all. This child is more slender than fat. Thou art more vicious than virtuous. The less informed man has often a sounder judgment than the man of learning. Mr. O. is richer by a good deal than I am, but Mr. L. is (the) richest. This Jew is better by a good deal than that one. A contented man is best off. Jesus was the greatest benefactor of mankind (die Menschheit). God is the kind father of mankind.

In the following adjectives the vowels a, o, u, are not softened.

blaß, pale,
bunt, variegated,
fahl, fallow,
fad, insipid,
falsch, false, deceitful, counterfeit,
flach, flat,
froh, joyful,
grad, (gerad or gerade) straight,
gesund, healthy,
glatt, smooth,
hohl, hollow,
hold, kind,
kahl, bald,
karg, stingy,
knapp, tight,
lahm, lame,
laß, tired,
los (or lose), loose, wicked,
matt, faint, wearied,
morsch, brittle, rotten,
nackt, naked,
platt, flat,
plump, clumsy,
roh, raw, rude,
rund, round,
sacht (or sachte), slow, gentle.
satt, satisfied,
schlaff, loose, lax,
schlank, slender,
schroff, rugged, steep,
starr, stiff,
stolz, proud,
straff, tight, stiff,
stumm, dumb,
stumpf, blunt,
toll, mad,
voll, full,
zahm, tame.

PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Ich bin hier.	I am here.
Er spottet meiner.	He is mocking (of) me.
Er wird mir nicht schaden.	It will not hurt me. (dat.)
Sie kennt mich.	She knows me.
Wir sind der Hülfe bedürftig.	We are in want of help.
Er gedenkt unser.	He remembers (of) us.
Geben Sie uns gefälligst das Geld.	Give us the money, if you please.
Sie werden uns nicht bestrafen.	They will not punish us.
Du hast Recht.	Thou art right.
Ich schone Deiner.	I spare thee. (gen.)
Wir glauben Dir nicht.	We do not believe thee.
Er ruft Dich.	He calls thee.
Ihr habt Unrecht.	You (ye) are wrong.
Er ist Euer würdig. } Euer ist er würdig. }	He is worthy of you (ye)
Ich habe Euch gewarnt.	I have warned you. (plur.)
Euch habe ich gewarnt.	You I have warned.
Wer hat Euch gerufen?	Who has called you?

RULE 1st., If another word than the subject begins the phrase, it (the subject) is placed after the verb, or in compound tenses after the auxiliary.

2d., The second person singular, du, *thou*, is more frequently used in German than in English. The Germans use it in the same manner as the English do, and, beside, in addressing intimate friends, children, &c., as it implies familiarity founded upon affection and fondness. Du is also used in addressing inferiors.

3d., Pronouns, by which we address persons, (in letters, &c.,) are written with a capital initial letter in German.

Exercise. I speak German. Do you speak German, sir? We are at school. He remembers me, does he remember thee? She resembles thee very (much). Does he resemble me? They have sent a letter to us. She has presented it to you. Give me the book, if you please. It was useful to us. She mocks us. Art thou contented? You are happier than I. To thee I say so (it). I know thee, thou art a little rogue (der Schelm). Has he hurt you? Do you speak of me? Are you here? The child mocks you. Has he sent it to you or to me? He has sent it neither to thee nor to you, he has sent it to us. We have a more refined taste than you have. Thou art more skilful by a good deal than my brother. We do not believe you. They do not esteem us. He was near the edge of the precipice. The soul is the noblest part of man. Thou art not worthy of us. Who is the happiest of us all? The straightest way is not always the best. Hand (reichen Sie) me the silver spoon, if you please. Thou art more cunning than brave.

Er, der großmüthige Beschützer der Unschuld, ist ein großer Feind der Lüge.	He, the generous protector of innocence, is a great enemy to lying (of the lie).
Sie schmeicheln seiner.	They flatter him.
Es ist seiner nicht würdig.	It is not worthy of him.
Sie hat es ihm gereicht.	She has handed it to him.
Ihm hat sie es gereicht.	To him she has handed it.
Ich habe ihn gesucht.	I have sought him.
Ihn habe ich gesucht.	Him have I sought.

Sie hat Hunger.	She is hungry.
Er gedenkt ihrer nicht.	He does not remember her.
Reichen Sie ihr den Stuhl.	Hand her the chair.
Hast Du sie bestraft?	Has thou punished her?
Es (das Kind) hat Durst.	It (the child) is thirsty.
Ich schone seiner ja.	I do spare it.
Erlauben Sie es ihm?	Do you permit (it to) him?
Er hat es im Deutschen unterrichtet.	He has instructed it in German.
Arbeiten sie (or Sie)?	Do they (or you) work?
Er ist ihrer (or Ihrer) würdig. / Ihrer ist er würdig.	He is worthy of them (or of you).
Ich bin ihnen (or Ihnen) sehr verbunden.	I am very much obliged to them (or to you).
Ihnen bin ich sehr verbunden.	To them (or to you) I am very much obliged.
Wir bewundern sie (or Sie).	We admire them (or you)

RULE. The Germans employ the third person plural to address any individual with whom they are not intimately acquainted. (Superiors, strangers, persons of rank, &c.) When this is done in writing, the pronoun Sie must begin with a capital letter.

Exercise. He, the youngest son of Mr. N., is dead. What do they say of her? To them he will send it. To you I say so (it). It loves them, but they do not love it. He goes to her, but she does not go to him. They esteem you, but you do not esteem them. They will dance with you. It drinks much brandy. She likes to help us. He has spared me, has he spared you? We do not flatter him. Does he flatter us? I go with him to the theatre, and not with her. She was near me. We do not remember him. Dear and cheap meat are equal in weight. (In German, the weight of dear and of cheap meat is equal). Are the Arabian horses handsome horses? We have intercourse with good men, and with wicked ones. The tutor loves obedient scholars. The behavior of Francis is insufferable. He resembles a deceitful cat. Friends in need are friends indeed.

REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

Ich freue mich darüber.	I am glad of it.
Du wirst dich verwunden, mein Freund.	Thou wilt wound thyself, my friend

Er pflegt seiner (selbst).	He nurses himself.
Wir schämen uns, schämst du dich nicht?	We are ashamed, art thou not ashamed?
Habt ihr euch gewärmt?	Have you warmed yourselves?
Wie befinden Sie sich?	How do you do?
Ich danke Ihnen, sehr wohl.	Very well, I thank you.
Sie haben sich (selbst) geschlagen.	They have struck themselves.
Sie haben sich einander geschlagen.	They have beaten one another.
Habt ihr euch (selbst) bewundert?	Have you admired yourselves?
Habt ihr euch einander bewundert?	Have you admired one another?
Wir haben uns (selbst) gelobt.	We have praised ourselves.
Wir haben einander gelobt.	We have praised each other.
Sie werden den Wein selbst trinken.	They will drink the wine themselves.
Sie wird ihn selbst kosten.	She will taste it herself.
Es tanzt selbst gern.	It (the child) is fond of dancing itself.
Wärmt er sich das Gesicht selbst?	Does he himself warm his face?
Ja, mein Fräulein, der Hausherr thut es selbst.	Yes, miss, the master of the house does it himself.
Selbst ich habe es gelesen.	Even I have read it.
Selbst er hat es mir gesagt.	Even he has told me.
Ein Hund kennt alle Glieder der Familie, selbst den Säugling.	A dog knows all members of the family, even the babe.

Rule 1st., The Germans use **selbst**, *self*, *of one's self*, with the reflective pronouns, only in order to avoid an ambiguity or to emphasize the subject.

2d., The pronouns (*my*, *thy*, *him*, *her*, *it*, *our*, *your*, and *them*), preceding *self*, *selves*, are not to be translated in German, provided the phrase is not reflective.

3d., **Selbst** preceding the subject, or object, is to be translated by *even*, in English.

Exercise. They love each other. How do you do? How does your father do? He is very well, I thank you. We esteem each other. Friends tell each other the truth. They are glad of it. He will instruct himself. Even the president is there. This lady admires herself. Even he gives me a glass of water. Do you do this work yourself? Thou must not speak so often of thyself. We shall taste the beer ourselves. Have they beaten one another? No, sir, they have beaten themselves. Are you not ashamed (plur.)? I shall spare thee. They esteem you, but you do not esteem them.

Do you remember her? We are hungry, but not thirsty Does he mock us? Give me the table-cloth, if you please. She is wrong, and he is right. Who is best off? Contented men are best off. She has given a dollar to the poorest among us. She is shorter by half than her mother. Grown-up people have more experience than youths. Mr. N. deals in pantaloons and coats.

IDIOMS.

Ich lobe mir den Champagner.	I give the preference to (the) champagne.
Du bist mir ein schöner Kerl.	Thou art a fine fellow.
Das war Euch ein Anblick!	That was a sight!
Das mag dir eine Freude gewesen sein.	That must have been a great pleasure.
Ein Bruder von mir ist General.	A brother of mine is general.
Ich habe ein Pferd von ihm gehabt.	I have had a horse of his.
Ein Bedienter von Ihnen hat mir das Geld gereicht.	A servant of yours has handed me the money.
Bekannte von uns haben ihr gestern einen Besuch gemacht.	Relations of ours paid her a visit yesterday.
Ich wasche mir die Hände.	I wash my hands.
Er wird sich die Nase verbrennen.	He will burn his nose.
Wir zerbrechen uns den Kopf nicht darüber.	We do not trouble (break) our heads about it.
Hast du dir den Fuß verrenkt?	Hast thou sprained thy foot?
Es ist ein schönes Bild.	It is a fine picture.
Es sind schöne Bilder.	They are fine pictures.
Es sind schöne Bilder. / Es gibt schöne Bilder.	There are fine pictures.
Er war es selbst.	It was he himself.
Sie waren es selbst.	It was they themselves.
Es sind viele Leute hier. / Es gibt viele Leute hier.	Here are many people.
Es war gestern schönes Wetter.	It was fine weather yesterday.
Ein Mann ist es. / Es ist ein Mann.	It is a man.
Ich bin es.	It is I.
Sie ist es nicht	It is not she.

RULE 1st., The Germans sometimes insert, in *familiar language*, the dative of the pronoun, some say

merely as an expletive; but it really gives a peculiar character and force, generally that of irony, to the sentence.

2d. When we speak of the parts or members of persons, animals, or things, the possessive pronoun used in English is, in German, represented by the dative case of the reflective pronoun or the personal pronoun used as a reflective, while the noun itself is preceded by an article.

3d., Es, *it*, is joined with all genders and numbers, and emphasizes the subject.

4th., The English, *there is*, *there are*, expressing existence in general, is to be translated in German by „es gibt," in other cases by „es ist, es sind."

Exercise. That was a pleasure. I prefer (give the preference to) a glass of fresh water. A dog of mine can dance. There was a great noise (der Lärm) in the house. I shall give it to a daughter of yours. It is Christmas to-day. He has sprained his hand. Have you sprained your foot? Many beds of mine are burned. (There are burnt many beds of mine.) A son of yours has sprained his ancle (der Knöchel). There are many good men. It is a lady. I was not there; it was he. You yourself had paid her a visit. Has she burnt her foot or her hands? We do not trouble our heads about it. Thou art a fine gentleman. They do not speak of themselves, they speak of you. They are very much obliged to him. Venus is the goddess of beauty. The clouds are above us. She wishes me the last farewell.

CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Du bist mein lieber Sohn.	Thou art my dear son.
Ich höre die Stimme meines theuren Sohnes.	I hear the voice of my dear son.
Er spricht mit meinem guten Oheim.	He speaks to my good uncle.
Ich habe meinen Fehler bemerkt.	I have observed my fault.
Meine tugendhaften Söhne behandeln mich sehr freundlich.	My virtuous sons treat me very kindly (friendly).
Der Kummer über den Tod meiner tugendhaften Söhne verkürzt mir das Leben.	The grief occasioned by (over) the death of my virtuous sons is shortening my life.
Mit meinen fleißigsten Schülern habe ich einen Spaziergang gemacht.	I have taken a walk with my most industrious scholars.

Gegen meine gehorsamen und fleißigen Zöglinge bin ich stets freundlich.	Towards my obedient and industrious pupils I am always kind.
Meine graue Katze ist eine große Feindin der Mäuse.	My gray cat is a great enemy of (to) mice.
Ich folge gern dem Rathe meiner guten Mutter und zu meiner Freude hat sie immer zu meinem Besten gerathen.	I gladly follow the advice of my good mother, and to my joy, she has always advised me for my good (to my best).
Für meine theure Mutter lasse ich mein Leben.	For my dear mother I give (leave) my life.
Meine runden Figuren sind am schönsten.	My round figures are (the) finest.
Er bewundert den Gesang meiner Nachtigallen.	He admires the song of my nightingales.
Er spielt auf meinen alten Trommeln und raucht meine Cigarren.	He plays on my old drums and smokes my cigars.
Mein theures Weib ist dreißig Jahre alt.	My dear wife is thirty years old.
Die Mähne meines Pferdes ist schwarz.	The mane of my horse is black.
Er liegt auf meinem besten Bette.	He lies on my best bed.
Willst du mein Stroh oder mein Heu kaufen?	Wilt thou buy my straw or my hay?
Meine Gebäude sind verkauft.	My buildings are sold.
Er fragt nach dem Preise meiner grünen Kleider.	He asks for the price of my green clothes.
Sie kleidet sich mit meinen schwarzen Kleidern.	She dresses herself with my black clothes.
Er hat meine schönen Halsbänder verbrannt.	He has burnt my handsome necklaces.

Exercise. Translate again all the examples just given, substituting dein, deine, dein, thy; sein, seine, sein, his; ihr, ihre, ihr, her; sein, seine, sein, its, for my.

Unser Schneider ist sehr wohlfeil; aber euer Schuhmacher ist sehr theuer.	Our tailor works (is) very cheap, but your shoemaker is very dear
Die Tische und Stühle unseres (or unsers) und eueres (or eures) Schreiners sind nett gemacht.	The tables and chairs of our cabinet-maker and yours, are neatly done.
Wir haben es eurem alten Hutmacher und ihr unserm Zimmermanne gereicht.	We have delivered it to your old hat-maker, and you to our carpenter.

Er hat unsern Barbier und nicht euren Brauer gerufen.	He has called our barber, and not your brewer.
Unsere und eure Waschfrau haben sich einander geschlagen.	Our and your washerwoman have beaten one another.
Die Waaren unserer Modehändlerin sind theuer und gut; aber die Waaren eurer Modehändlerin sind theuer und schlecht.	The goods of our milliner are dear and good, but the (wares) of your milliner are dear and bad.
Hat sie nach unserer oder nach eurer Amme geschickt?	Has she sent for our nurse or for yours?
Willst du unsere oder eure Schneiderin fragen?	Wilt thou ask our mantua-maker or yours?
Unser Waschhaus und euer Backofen sind baufällig.	Our laundry and your bakehouse are decayed.
Die Lage unseres (or unsers) Kosthauses ist angenehmer, als die Lage eures Kosthauses.	The situation of our boardinghouse is pleasanter than that of yours (the situation of your boarding-house).
Er war in unserm Kaffeehause und nicht in eurem Hüttenwerk.	He was in our coffee-house, and not in your foundry.
Er wird erst in unser Gasthaus und dann in euer Wohnhaus gehen.	He will first go to our inn, and then to your dwelling-house.
Unsere und eure Weinhändler haben den besten Wein.	Our wine merchants and yours have the best wine.
Die Arbeit unserer Arbeiter ist schwerer, als die Arbeit eurer Arbeiterinnen.	The work of our workmen is harder than the work of your female operatives (workwomen).
Ich spreche von euren Waschhäusern und ihr von unsern Waschfrauen.	I am speaking of your laundries, and you of our laundresses.
Er sucht unsere Handlanger und nicht eure Schornsteinfeger.	He is seeking our hodmen, and not your chimney-sweeper.
Ihre Agenten spielen gern.	Their (or your, sing.) agents are fond of gambling.
Die Waffen ihrer (or Ihrer) Waffenschmiede sind wohlfeil.	The arms of their (or your) armorers are cheap.
Ich habe mit ihren (or Ihren) Gesellen, aber nicht mit ihren (Ihren) Stickerinnen gesprochen.	I have spoken to their (or your) journeymen, but not to their (your) embroiderers.
Er hat ihre (or Ihre) Lehrlinge getadelt.	He has censured their (or your) apprentices.
Sie behandeln ihre (Ihre) Ladenmädchen sehr freundlich.	They (or you) treat their (or your) shop-maids very kindly.

RULE 1st., Those conjunctive possessive pronouns, which have the same termination as the indefinite article, are inflected like it. The plural takes the termination of the definite article, or that of the adjectives of the third declension.

2d., When adjectives follow conjunctive possessive pronouns, they have the same termination as when they follow the indefinite article. The plural of all genders and cases terminates in en.

Exercise. That must have been a great pleasure. A son of mine is general. I am washing my feet. There are many bad apprentices. You are my dear sons. We hear the voice of their workmen. Do you not observe his faults? The grief occasioned by the death of our industrious daughters is shortening our life. Do you like to follow our advice? He deals in our goods, and not in his (goods). Will you not break their new glasses? Our shoemaker makes good boots. The pantaloons of your tailors are very cheap. Where does your cabinet-maker live? We have given the old hat to their hatter. We do not believe his barber. She ridicules their laundresses. Do you send for our or for their nurse? Call your mantua-maker, if you please. Is her laundry, or his bakery decayed? The situation of your (sing.) coffee-house is very pleasant. He has not been in our boarding-house. Do you know their wine-merchants? Where is thy workman? There are many laundresses in New-York. He finds fault with (tadeln) the arms of his armorers. Have you observed the works of her embroiderers? I have presented it to your hodman. Have you paid your chimney-sweeper? They have paid their journeyman. The dwelling-houses of my tailors have a pleasant situation. They are lazy workmen. Her little children are very hungry. Are you satisfied with your embroiderers? The wife of his wine-merchant has been sick. There was a great noise at their inn. I will pay a visit to thy old friends. We are well satisfied with him.

ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Dein Vater und meiner (or der meinige) machen einen Spaziergang zusammen.	Thy father and mine are taking a walk together.

Der Hund deines Nachbars ist wachsamer, als der Hund meines (or des meinigen).	The dog of thy neighbor is more watchful than that (the dog) of mine.
Ihr Freund hat mit Ihrem Bruder und mit meinem (or dem meinigen) gesprochen.	Your friend has spoken to your brother and to mine.
Er füttert Ihren Esel und meinen (or den meinigen).	He feeds your ass and mine.
Deine Knaben und meine (or die meinigen) haben zusammen gespielt.	Thy boys and mine have played together.
Die Farbe Ihrer Hunde ist schöner, als die Farbe meiner (or der meinigen).	The color of your dogs is more beautiful than the color of mine.
Er wird es seinen Feinden und meinen (or den meinigen) sagen.	He will tell his enemies and mine.
Sie werden eure Füße und meine (or die meinigen) wärmen.	They will warm your feet and mine.
Seine Mutter ist nicht meine (or die meinige).	His mother is not mine.
Ist er Ihrer Freundschaft oder meiner (or der meinigen) gewiß?	Is he sure of your friendship or of mine?
Hat sie eurer Katze oder meiner (or der meinigen) die Milch gegeben?	Has she given the milk to your cat or to mine?
Der Schneider wird deine Jacke und meine (or die meinige) machen.	The tailor will make thy jacket and mine.
Ihre Freundinnen und meine (or die meinigen) waren in dem Garten.	Your friends and mine were in the garden.
Er erinnert sich ihrer Schwestern und meiner (or der meinigen).	He remembers her sisters and mine.
Schreibt sie mit ihren Federn oder mit meinen (or den meinigen)?	Does she write with her pens or with mine?
Werdet ihr seine Wiesen und meine (or die meinigen) kaufen?	Will you buy his meadows and mine?
Sein Kind ist unartig, aber meines (or das meinige) ist artig.	His child is naughty, but mine is polite.
Ist er Ihres Messers und meines (or des meinigen) benöthigt?	Is he in want of your knife and of mine?
Wird er Deinem Kinde oder meinem (or dem meinigen) die goldene Taschenuhr schenken?	Will he present the gold watch to thy child or to mine?
Der Arzt wird sein Mädchen und meines (or das meinige) heilen.	The physician will heal his girl and mine.

Ihre Pferde sind theurer, als meine (or die meinigen).	Their horses are dearer than mine.
Er bedient sich eurer Messer und meiner (or der meinigen).	He makes use of your knives, and of mine.
Haben sie in Deinen Büchern oder in meinen (or den meinigen) gelesen?	Have they read in thy books, or in mine?
Er lacht über ihre Gebrechen und über meine (or die meinigen).	He laughs at her infirmities, and at mine.

Exercise. Translate the same sentences with deiner, deine, deines (or der deinige, die deinige, das deinige), thine; seiner, seine, seines (or der seinige, die seinige, das seinige), his; ihrer, ihre, ihres (or der ihrige, die ihrige, das ihrige), hers; and seiner, seine, seines (or der seinige, die seinige, das seinige), its.

Euer Schneider und unserer (or der uns'rige) machen schöne Röcke.	Your tailor and ours make beautiful coats.
Die Röcke Ihres Schneiders und unseres (or des uns'rigen) sind von feinem Tuche gemacht.	The coats of your tailor and of ours are made of fine cloth.
Er hat mit Ihrem Weber und mit unserem (or dem uns'rigen) gesprochen.	He has spoken to your weaver, and to ours.
Rufet euren Schmied und nicht unseren (or den uns'rigen).	Call your smith, and not ours.
Eure Zinngießer und unsere (or die uns'rigen) haben schlechtes Zinn.	Your pewterers and ours have bad pewter.
Die Körbe Deiner Korbmacher und unserer (or der uns'rigen) sind stark.	The baskets of thy basket-makers and of ours are strong.
Er hat mit seinen Pferdehändlern gesprochen und nicht mit unseren (or den uns'rigen).	He has spoken to his jockies, and not to ours.
Er tadelt ihre Fehler und unsere (or die uns'rigen).	He censures their faults and ours.
Eure Schneiderin und unsere (or die uns'rige) wohnen in der Wilhelmstraße.	Your tailoress and ours live in William-street.
Die Zähne Deiner Mutter und unserer (or der uns'rigen) sind sehr weiß.	The teeth of thy mother and of ours are very white.
Sie gleicht weder seiner Modehändlerin noch unserer (or der uns'rigen).	She resembles neither his milliner nor ours.
Sie will ihre Waschfrau rufen und nicht unsere (or die uns'rige).	She will call her washer-woman, and not ours.

Ihre Haushälterinnen und unsere (or die uns'rigen) sind verschwenderisch.	Their housekeepers and ours are wasteful.
Die Gesichtszüge seiner Töchter und unserer (or der uns'rigen) sind sehr ähnlich.	The features of his daughters and of ours are very (much) alike.
Sie war in Ihren Sägemühlen und nicht in unseren (or den uns'rigen).	She was in your saw-mills, and not in ours.
Sie verachten ihre Schmeicheleien und unsere (or die uns'rigen).	They despise her flatteries, and ours.
Ihr Waschhaus und unseres (or das uns'rige) sind ganz rein.	Your laundry and ours are quite clean.
Herr Y. hat das Zahnfleisch seines Kindes und unseres (or des uns'rigen) verwundet.	Mr. Y. has wounded the gums of his child, and of ours.
Hat sie das Geld ihrem Kinde oder unserem (or dem uns'rigen) geschickt?	Has she sent the money to her child, or to ours?
Hat der Schlosser euer Schloß oder unseres (or das uns'rige) gemacht?	Has the locksmith made your lock, or ours?
Ihre Federmesser und unsere (or die uns'rigen) sind scharf.	Their penknives and ours are sharp.
Die Sättel eurer Pferde und unserer (or der uns'rigen) sind verschieden.	The saddles of your horses and of ours are different.
Er sucht nach einem von euren Wirthshäusern, und nicht nach einem von unseren (or den uns'rigen).	He is looking for one of your inns, and not for one of ours.
Sie verabscheut ihre Laster und unsere (or die uns'rigen).	She detests their vices, and ours.

Rule 1st., The absolute possessive pronouns are formed either by adding to the conjunctive possessive pronouns, the terminations of the definite article (**er, e, es**) in the same manner as the adjectives not preceded by the article, or any other specifying or qualifying word, are formed, or by suffixing **ige** and placing before them the definite article.

2d., Absolute possessive pronouns, formed in the manner first specified, are declined like adjectives not preceded by any article or pronoun; and those formed

in the second way, are declined like adjectives with the definite article.

Exercise. Translate the foregoing sentences with eurer, eure, eures (or der eurige, die eurige, das eurige), yours; ihrer, ihre, ihres (or der ihrige, die ihrige, das ihrige), theirs; Ihrer, Ihre, Ihres (or der Ihrige, die Ihrige, das Ihrige), yours (addressing one person).

Additional exercise. Our wounds and his pain very much. Its (the child's) sickness and theirs are very much alike. The teacher has commended the attention (die Aufmerksamkeit) of your children and of theirs. I know his infirmities, and hers. My windmill is near thine; but her papermill is between (zwischen) yours and ours. Our shoes are clean, and yours are dirty (schmutzig). I will make use of thy hammer and not of theirs. The barbers have beaten each other. A relation of mine lives in New-Orleans. Does thy gardener work in thy garden, or in his? He works neither in mine nor in his, he works in hers. Mr. N. is either in one of your inns or in one of theirs. I love neither thee nor him. I have taken a long walk with our uncles and yours. I have been at thy school and at theirs. Our father is not hers. Are you sure of my friendship, or of hers? Will he go for her jacket, or for his? The physician has cured the members of our family, and of theirs. We remember our housekeepers, and yours. The child does not laugh at your infirmities, or at his. He will warm our beds, and theirs. Will you go to our mantua-maker, or to hers? She works neither at our weaver's nor at yours. Your face is dirty. The locksmith has made our locks, and theirs. His pewterer is dead. Have you noticed our basket-maker, or hers? I like her features. Where do their jockies live? Have you been in their sawmills, or in his? He has made use of one of our knives, and of one of yours. We detest your faults, and theirs. She has spoken of their flatteries, and of his; she detests them. I am always kind to my industrious and obedient pupils. (Towards my industrious and obedient pupils I am always friendly.) He will burn his nose. Have you given medicine to healthy children? He censures our faults, and theirs.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.

Dieser Rock ist schöner, als diese Weste.	This coat is handsomer than this waistcoat.
Dieses Messer ist schärfer, als jenes.	This knife is sharper than that.
Jener Mann und jene Frau sind von Paris.	That man and that lady are from Paris.

GENITIVE.

Er hat sich dieses groben Ausdrucks bedient.	He (has) made use of this (or that) rude expression.
Er erinnert sich dieses und jenes großen Fehlers seiner Jugend.	He remembers this and that great error of his youth.
Die Wurzel dieser und jener nützlichen Pflanze ist verfault.	The root of this and (of) that useful plant is decayed.
Die Handschrift dieses Mädchens ist hübscher, als die Handschrift jenes.	The hand-writing of this girl is prettier than the hand-writing of that one.

DATIVE.

Diesem armen Manne gebe ich Nichts, aber jenem gebe ich Etwas.	To this poor man I give nothing, but to that one I give something.
Warum kommen Sie zu dieser späten Stunde?	Why do you come at this late hour?
Dieses kleine Mädchen ist von jener Stadt.	This (or that) little girl is from that (or yonder) town.
Geben Sie mir mehr von diesem Biere, als von jenem.	Give me more of this beer than of that.

ACCUSATIVE.

Er hat diesen und jenen kleinen Kuchen gegessen.	He has eaten both those cakes (this and that little cake).
Er lobt diese gute Schauspielerin, aber nicht jene schlechte.	He praises this good actress, but not that bad one.
Wir haben dieses und jenes Theater gebaut.	We have built this theatre and that.

PLURAL. NOMINATIVE.

Diese Schüler sind nicht so fleißig, als jene.	These scholars are not as diligent as those.
Diese Mädchen und jene Frauen haben sehr gute Herzen.	These girls and those ladies have very kind hearts.

GENITIVE.

Der letzte dieser beiden Briefe ist von meinem theuren Bruder.	The latter of these two letters is from my dear brother.
Erinnert er sich jener Worte?	Does he remember those words?

DATIVE.

Ich habe nur wenige von diesen Federn gesehen.	I have seen only a few of these pens.
Haben Sie das Geld diesen oder jenen Kaufleuten geschickt?	Have you sent the money to these merchants, or to those?

ACCUSATIVE.

Wendet ihr euch an jene gottlosen Weiber?	Do you apply (address yourselves) to those wicked women?
Er wird sich diese schwarzen Mützen (Kappen) kaufen.	He will buy these black caps.
Werden Sie mir jene Felder verkaufen?	Will you sell me those fields?

RULE 1st., **Dieser, diese, dieses,** *this;* **jener, jene, jenes,** *that;* having the same termination as the definite article, are declined like *it*, and require the adjectives which follow them to be declined in the same manner as those which are preceded by the definite article.

2d., *That*, is to be translated by **jener, jene, jenes,** if a comparison is made between two persons or things, or if it relates to a person or thing spoken of before; and in other cases by **dieser, diese, dieses.**

SINGULAR. NOMINATIVE.

Der (dieser) Ofen heizt gut.	That stove heats well.
Die (diese) Wiese und das (dieses) Blatt sind grüner, als jenes Tuch.	This meadow and this leaf are greener than that cloth.

GENITIVE.

Des Flusses Ufer sind steiler, als die Ufer jenes.	The bank of this river is steeper than the bank of that one.
Die Fehler der (dieser) Tochter (or des (dieses) Sohnes) sind größer, als die Fehler jener (or jenes).	The faults of this daughter (or of this son) are greater than the faults of that one.

Erinnerst du dich des losen Streiches?	Do you remember that mischievous trick?
Ich erinnere mich dessen nicht.	I do not remember (of) it.
Sind Sie seiner Freundschaft gewiß?	Are you sure of his friendship?
Ich bin deren gewiß.	I am sure of it.
Ist er des Geldes benöthigt?	Is he in want of this money?
Er ist dessen benöthigt.	He is in want of it.
Bist du dessen gewiß?	Art thou sure of it?
Deß rühme der blutige Tyrann sich nicht.	That the bloody tyrant shall not boast of.
Deß sind wir fröhlich.	Of that we are glad.

DATIVE.

Werden sie dem Greise helfen, oder jenem?	Will they help this old man, or that one?
Sehnen Sie sich nach der Freundin, oder nach jener?	Do you long for this friend, or for that one?
Ich sehne mich nicht nach der und nicht nach jener, ich sehne mich nach jenem Kinde.	I do not long for this one, or for that one, I long for that child.

ACCUSATIVE.

Ich achte den nicht; denn er hat sein Wort nicht gehalten.	I do not esteem this man, for he has not kept his word.
Ich verlasse mich auf das Versprechen und nicht auf jenes; und er verläßt sich auf jenes und nicht auf dieses.	I rely upon this promise, and not on that one; and he relies on that, and not on this one.

PLURAL. NOMINATIVE.

Sind die (diese) Diebe in unserem Hause gewesen, oder jene?	Have these thieves, or those, been in our house?
Die sind dort gewesen.	These have been there.
Sind die (diese) Figuren besser, als jene?	Are these figures better than those?

GENITIVE.

Schonen Sie der (dieser) Männer!	Spare these men.
Ich schone derer (or ihrer) ja.	I do spare them.
Spotten Sie der Kinder?	Do you mock these children?
Ich spotte derer (or ihrer) nicht.	I do not mock them.

DATIVE.

Ich werde mit den Kindern einen Spaziergang machen, und er wird nicht mit denen, sondern mit jenen gehen.	I shall take a walk with these children, and he will not go with these, but with those.
Er spricht von jenen Schauspielerinnen und nicht von denen (diesen).	He speaks of those actresses, and not of these.

ACCUSATIVE.

Willst du die Aepfel haben, oder jene?	Wilt thou have these apples, or those?
Hat er die Musikbanden oder jene gelobt?	Has he praised these bands-of-music, or those?

Rule 1st., **der, die, das,** when substituted for the demonstrative pronouns **dieser, diese, dieses,** is pronounced with greater emphasis than the definite article, and declined like it, if connected with a noun. If used separately, the genitive singular is changed into **dessen, deren, dessen,** and the genitive plural into **derer** (in all genders), and the dative plural into **denen** (in all genders).

2d., The abbreviation of the genitive **dessen** into **deß,** is principally used in the more elevated style of speaking, and employed by writers.

THE NEUTER DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

Das (dieses or dies) ist ein nützliches Buch.	That is a useful book.
Das (dieses or dies) waren glückliche Stunden.	These were happy hours.
Jenes ist sein Eigenthum.	That is his property.
Jenes waren unsere Wiesen.	Those were our meadows.
Es ist meine Neigung das (dieses or dies) zu thun.	I have an (it is my) inclination to do that.
Er thut weder dies noch jenes.	He does neither this nor that.
Dies nun weiße Haar, deckt der Helm schon fünfzig Jahr.	The helmet has, for fifty years, covered that hair, now white. (That now white hair, the helmet already covers fifty years.)

Rule. The neuter demonstrative pronoun **das** (**dieses** or **dies**), and **jenes,** are used to point out a substantive

following, whether it be masculine, feminine, or neuter, and both in the singular or plural (like it).

Exercise. This paper costs four cents, and that twelve cents. That was a pleasure. The hand-writing of these scholars is prettier than that of those. Why does he come at this late hour? Have you been in this church and in that? That boy has a very kind heart. The best of these three horses I have bought. We shall apply to these honest men. She has noticed but few of these wicked creatures. That stove heats best. Is the bank of this river steeper than the bank of that one? I detest these mischievous tricks. Do you remember your friend? I remember him. Do you remember that pleasure? I remember it. Of that we are certain. We long for our father. Do you rely on that promise? Have these thieves, or those, despised your money? I detest his behavior. Has he made use of this iron, or of that? He has made use of this. Does she resemble these ladies, or those? She resembles these. That was a happy hour. Do you make use of this sword, (das Schwert,) or of that? That is green cloth. I have a coat of this fine cloth, and not of that. Do you live in this house, or in that? The price of these shirts is too high. The air in those rooms is very unhealthy. (It is very unhealthy air in those rooms). Those houses are the finest in New-York. This ox has only sixteen pounds of tallow. Has he bought these ships, or those? That is a beautiful song. Of that we are witnesses (der Zeuge). That is the most beautiful young lady of all. I have sold these useful books cheaper than those bad ones. The owner of these houses is more generous than the owner of those. This heart was very sad. This water is too cold and that too warm. This fresh water is healthier than that bad wine. He (has) had this long sword in his hand (during) twenty minutes.

THE DETERMINATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR. NOMINATIVE.

Dieser Mann ist derselbe, welcher (or der) gestern da war.	This man is the same that was here yesterday.
Ich, der ich krank und schwach bin, soll arbeiten.	I, though (who am) sick and weak, am to work.
Das ist dieselbe Frau, welche (or die) mich im Theater bemerkt hat.	That is the same lady who (has) noticed me in the theatre.

Dieses ist dasselbe Pferd, welches (or das) ich gestern verkauft habe.	That is the same horse which I sold yesterday.

GENITIVE.

Dies ist das Haus desselben Vaters, dessen Kinder uns durch ihren lieblichen Gesang erfreut haben.	This is the house of the (same) father whose children delighted us by their sweet song.
Jenes ist der Gemahl derselben Frau, deren Betragen ein Muster der Tugend ist.	That is the husband of the same lady whose conduct is a model of virtue.
Dieses sind die Gesinnungen desselben Kindes, dessen Handlungen ihr tadelt.	These are the sentiments of the very child whose actions you censure.
Glücklich ist der Mensch, dessen Seele frei von Schuld ist.	Happy is the man whose soul is free from guilt.
Der Freund, von dessen Unschuld ich überzeugt bin, ist des Diebstahls beschuldigt.	The friend of whose innocence I am convinced, is accused of theft.
Die Sache, von deren Inhalt ich benachrichtigt war, hat sich bestätigt.	The affair respecting the value of which I had been informed, has been confirmed.
Der Baum, dessen Blätter verwelkt sind, ist hundert Jahre alt.	The tree, whose leaves are faded, is (a) hundred years old.
Die Mildthätigkeit, deren Uebung unsere Pflicht ist, ist eine edle Tugend.	Charity, which it is our duty to practise, (the practice of which is our duty), is a noble virtue.
Das Geld, dessen Werth das menschliche Leben so deutlich beweis't, ist an und für sich werthlos.	Money, of the value of which human life affords such ample proof, (the value of which the human life proves so plainly,) is worthless in itself.

DATIVE.

Mit demselben Arzte, von welchem (or dem) ihr sprecht, habe ich Umgang gehabt.	I have enjoyed the society of that same physician of whom you are speaking. (With the same physician of whom you speak I have had intercourse.)
Ich habe Federn von derselben Gans, von welcher (or der) ihr welche habt.	I have feathers from the same goose from which you have some.
An demselben Vergnügen, an welchem (or dem) ihr Antheil nehmen werdet, werde ich auch Antheil nehmen.	I shall participate in the same pleasure in which you (will) participate.

Der fette Ochs, mit welchem (or dem) ihr das Feld gepflügt habt, ist verkauft.	The fat ox with which you have ploughed the field has been (is) sold.

ACCUSATIVE.

Ich lobe denselben Lehrer, den (or welchen) Sie loben.	I praise the same teacher that you praise.
Ich kenne dieselbe Dame, die (or welche) ihr kennt.	I know the same lady that you know.
Wir brauchen dasselbe gute Eisen, welches (or das) er braucht.	We want the same good iron that he wants.

PLURAL. NOMINATIVE.

Es sind dieselben Betrüger, welche (or die) mir geschrieben haben.	These are the very impostors who have written to me.
Dieselben Werke, welche da sind, waren auch dort.	The same works that are here, were also there.

GENITIVE.

Ich erzähle gern die Begebenheiten, deren du nicht gedacht hast.	I will gladly relate the events, which you forgot to mention. (I willingly relate the events (of) that thou hast not remembered.)
Die Heiden, deren Götter von Holz und Stein sind, sind ebenfalls Gottes Ebenbild.	The pagans, whose gods are of stone and of wood, are also God's image.

DATIVE.

Ich habe nach denselben Büchern gesucht, nach welchen (or denen) Sie suchen.	I have been looking for the same books which you are seeking.
Willst du denselben Tanten die Geschenke schicken, mit denen (or welchen) ich gestern die vergnügten Stunden verlebt habe.	Wilt thou send these presents to the same aunts with whom I (have) yesterday spent those happy hours.

ACCUSATIVE.

Er fragt dieselben Knaben, welche (or die) er schon gefragt hat.	He asks the same boys whom he has already asked.
Sie schreibt dieselben Buchstaben (masc.), welche sie schon geschrieben hat.	She is writing the same letters which she has already written.

Er erzählt dieselben langweiligen Fabeln (fem.) wieder, welche er schon gestern erzählt hat.	He is again relating the same tedious stories which he has already related yesterday.

IDIOMS.

Er hat einen Garten gekauft; er will denselben (instead of ihn) in einen Park verwandeln.	He has bought a garden; he will change it into a park.
Das Leben hat einen hohen Werth, aber die Dauer desselben ist unsicher.	Life is of a great (high) value, but its duration is uncertain.
Ich lese die Geschichte der amerikanischen Revolution, kennen Sie dieselbe?	I am reading the history of the American revolution, do you know the work (it)?
Die Wachsamkeit meines Hundes ist groß, aber die Anhänglichkeit desselben ist größer.	The vigilance of my dog is great; but his attachment (to me) is greater.
Haben Sie guten Käse?	Have you good cheese?
Ich habe welchen.	I have some.
Hat sie gute Butter?	Has she good butter?
Sie hat welche.	She has some.
Hast du Salz gehabt?	Hast thou had salt?
Ich habe welches gehabt.	I have had some.
Werden sie Stöcke haben?	Will they have (some) sticks?
Sie werden welche haben.	They will have some.
Haben Sie Cigarren geraucht?	Have you smoked cigars?
Ja, mein Herr, ich habe welche geraucht.	Yes, sir, I have smoked some.

RULE 1st., The determinative pronouns **derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe,** *the same*, are declined like adjectives with the definite article.

2d., The relative pronouns **welcher, welche, welches,** *who* (*which*, or *that*) are declined like the definite article, or like the demonstrative pronouns **dieser** ꝛc., but instead of the genitive **welches, welcher, welches, dessen, deren, dessen,** must be used. The definite article, when substituted for it, is inflected as being of the character of a demonstrative pronoun; but the genitive plural is **deren,** instead of **derer.**

3., The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; the case, as in other languages, depending on some verb or preposition in its own member of the sentence.

Relative pronouns require the verb (in compound

tenses the auxiliary) to be placed at the end of the phrase or sentence.

4th., The determinative pronouns are often used instead of the personal or possessive pronouns, to avoid an ambiguity, or for the sake of euphony.

5th., The English *some* (or *any*), if taken in a partitive sense, is to be translated into German by **welcher, welche, welches.**

Exercise. The leaves of the same tree. He, though strong and healthy, will not work. These are the same persons whose virtue we have admired. There are the nightingales of the same general whose soldiers (have) delighted us by their sweet song. Is this the same girl whose features were so beautiful? Happy is the person whose soul is free from guilt. I do not go to the same school to which you go. He has the same grammar (die Sprachlehre) that we have. He is still the same generous man. Charity is a noble virtue, the practice of which is our duty. The gentleman who will send me a present, is a rich merchant. Those are the same old horses which Mr. N. (has) sold yesterday. Have you useful books? Yes, sir, I have some. I pay a visit to the same learned man with whom you have conversed on (sprachen über) the value of the bible. The same women have quarrelled with each other. Have you fresh bread? Yes, sir, I have some. The vigilance of his dog is very great, but its attachment to him is still greater. A dog is a watchful animal. Are you acquainted with the history of the French revolution? He is not acquainted with it. The duration of life is short and uncertain. Will you change your meadow into a garden? No, sir, I shall change it into a park. He relates very tedious stories. Does he ask the same boys whom he has already asked? We have spent many happy hours with the ladies of whom you are speaking. Are the pagans also God's image? I will relate the events that you did not mention. Do you want money? Yes, sir, I want some. Have they ploughed their fields? We participate in your pleasure. Do you participate in mine? I shall plough the same field which they (have) ploughed yesterday. Money, of the value of which human life affords such ample proof, is worthless in itself. The tree whose trunk is rotten is twenty feet high. Its leaves are yellow. Has the affair been con-

firmed (confirmed itself)? An uncle of mine has said that. Lewis is the name of the same boy who has sprained his ancle. Men do not always know the sentiments of their fellow-men (der Nebenmensch) with whom they have had intercourse (for) many years. Do you apply to these wicked men? I have bought but few of these caps. She praises this good actress, but not that bad one. Give me less of this wine than of that, if you please. The roots of those beautiful flowers are decayed. They have made use of those improper (unschicklich) expressions. He detests our faults, and theirs. We despise his haughtiness and yours. Our housekeepers and hers are wasteful. The boys have laughed at my infirmities, and thine. I am as learned as you are. The human soul is immortal. Religion enjoins (gebieten) respect for old persons. The weight of cheap and dear butter is the same.

SINGULAR.

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen. Derjenige (diejenige or dasjenige), welcher (welche, or welches) nicht hören will, muß fühlen.	He who will not hear, must feel.
Wessen Thaten mit seinen Gesinnungen nicht übereinstimmen, ist ein Heuchler. Der (or die), dessen (or deren) Thaten mit seinen (or ihren) Gesinnungen nicht übereinstimmen, der (or die) ist ein Heuchler(in).	He whose actions do not agree with his sentiments, is a hypocrite.
Weß das Herz voll ist, deß geht der Mund über.	Out of the abundance of the heart, the mouth speaketh. (That, whereof the heart is full, the mouth overflows.)
Ich bemerke an Deinem Betragen, mit wem Du Umgang hast.	I perceive from thy behavior with whom thou hast intercourse.
Ich habe keinen Umgang mit demjenigen (or derjenigen), mit dem (or der) Du Umgang hast.	I have no intercourse with him (her) with whom thou hast intercourse.
An wen Du auch schreibst, grüße ihn (or sie) von mir.	To whomsoever thou art writing, present my compliments to him (her).

PLURAL.

Diejenigen, welche die Wissenschaft verachten, kennen dieselbe nicht.	Those who despise science have no knowledge of it (do not know it.)

Das Herz derjenigen guten Menschen, welche so gegen ihre Nebenmenschen handeln, wie gegen sich selbst, ist der Sitz wahrer Liebe.	The heart of those good men who act (thus) towards their fellow-men as towards themselves, is the seat of genuine love.
Ich schreibe denjenigen Pathen, die mir am nächsten wohnen.	I write to those godfathers who live nearest to me.
Ich werde mich an diejenigen wenden, die ein Urtheil über die Sache haben.	I shall apply to those who are capable of judging concerning (have a judgment over) that affair.

Rule 1st., The determinative pronouns **derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige,** are declined like adjectives preceded by the definite article. The definite article, considered as a demonstrative pronoun, may be substituted in its place.

2d., The relative pronoun **wer,** *he who,* relates only to persons, and is declined like the definite article **der,** used as a demonstrative pronoun. It may be analyzed as follows: **derjenige, welcher; diejenige, welche; dasjenige (das Kind), welches;** but it must be observed, that by this analysis the subject is represented as distinctly determined.

Die Freundschaft.

Der Freund, der mir den Spiegel[1] zeiget,
Den kleinsten Flecken[2] nicht verschweiget,[3]
Der ist mein Freund,
So wenig er es scheint.[4]

Doch[5] der, der mich stets schmeichelnd preiset,[6]
Mich immer lobt, mir Nichts verweiset,[7]
Der ist mein Feind,
So freundlich er auch scheint.

1. mirror; 2. stain, fault; 3. to conceal; 4. to appear; 5. yet; 6. to bestow flattering praise; 7. to reprove (for).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN „was," *what.*

Was ihr wollt, das euch die Leute thun sollen, das thut ihnen auch.	What(soever) ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them.
Was du wünschest, das thue Andern.	What thou wishest (for thyself) that do to others.

Ich werde nicht vergessen, was Sie mir gesagt haben.	I shall not forget what you have told me.
Ist er mit dem zufrieden, das er hat?	Is he satisfied with what (that which) he has?
Die Nachtigall liebt die Oerter, wo (an denen or an welchen) es Wasser gibt.	The nightingale likes the places where there is water.
Wo du bist, will ich auch sein.	Where thou art, I will be also.
Er war auf einem (dem) Berge, wo (auf welchem) man eine schöne Aussicht hat.	He was on a mountain where there is (one has) a beautiful view.
War er darauf, darin, daran?	Was he upon it, in it, at it?
Worauf? worin? woran?	Whereupon? wherein? whereat?

RULE. The relative pronoun **was**, *which*, when analyzed, amounts to the same as **dasjenige, welches**; and the relative term **wo**, *where*, which may be resolved into **in, an, auf welchem, welcher, welchem,** or **denen,** are not inflected at all.

Solcher, solche, solches, *such.*

Solcher Wein — solche Butter — solches Bier — ist gut.	Such wine—such butter—such beer —is good.
Mein Bruder hat einen Klumpen solchen Zinkes — solcher Kreide — solchen Goldes — geholt.	My brother has fetched a lump of such zinc—of such chalk—of such gold.
Mit solchem Stahle — mit solcher Kohle — mit solchem Eisenblech — kann ich nicht arbeiten.	With such steel—with such charcoal—with such sheet-iron—I cannot do anything (work).
Ich habe schon solchen Agat — solche Pottasche — solches Messing — gesehen.	I have already seen such agate—such potash—such brass.
Ein solcher Stolz — eine solche Eigenliebe — ein solches Mißvergnügen — ist tadelhaft.	Such (a) pride—such (a) self-love —such (a) moroseness—is reprehensible.
Das ist die Strafe eines solchen Ungehorsams—einer solchen Grausamkeit—eines solchen Verbrechens.	That is the punishment of such (a) disobedience—of such (a) cruelty —of such a crime.
Mit einem solchen Muthe — mit einer solchen Beständigkeit — mit einem solchen Andenken — bin ich zufrieden.	With such (a) courage—with such (a) constancy—with such a remembrance—I am satisfied.
Einen solchen Eifer — eine solche Rechtlichkeit — ein solches Wissen — achte ich.	Such (a) zeal—such (a) probity—such (a) learning—I esteem.
Mein Bruder ist ein großer Feigling; bist du auch ein solcher?	My brother is a great coward, art thou also (such a) one?
Er ist kein solcher.	He is not (such a one).

PLURAL.

Solche Leute brauchen wir.	We want such people.
Der Stolz solcher Menschen, welche dumm sind, ist um so verächtlicher.	The pride of (such) men who are stupid, is the more contemptible.
Ein Mann von solchen Talenten und solchen guten Grundsätzen verdient die Liebe seiner Nebenmenschen.	A man of such talents and of such good principles, deserves the love of his fellow-men.
Ich liebe solche gute Eigenschaften.	I like such good qualities.
Glaubst du, daß ich solche Vorwürfe nicht bemerke?	Dost thou think that such reproaches escape my notice?

RULE 1st. The determinative pronouns **solcher, solche, solches,** such, are, when not preceded by any article, declined like adjectives not preceded by any article or pronoun; when used with the indefinite article, which must always precede them in German, and when not followed by a noun, they are inflected like adjectives preceded by the indefinite article. Before nouns we may say: **Solch ein, solch eine, solch ein,** and in this case **solch** remains unchanged.

2d. The conjunction **daß**, *that*, affects the structure of the sentence in the same manner as the relative pronouns.

Exercise. He who will not hear, must feel. I know with whom thou keepest company (hast intercourse). Have you good zinc? Yes, sir, I have some. Has he had good brass? Yes, ma'am, he has had some. He who despises science has no knowledge of it. To this poor man I give nothing, but to that one I give something. The heart of the man who acts towards his fellow-men as towards himself, is the seat of genuine love. Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them. He will forget what thou hast told (to) him. I was in a house where virtue dwells. Where (in) hast thou been? Such potash, such agate, such zinc. Do you deal in such bad charcoal, in such bad chalk, and in such bad sheet-iron? Such zeal, such constancy, and such probity, are praiseworthy. I like to have intercourse with a man of such learning, such great talents, and such good principles. Do you think that I do not love such qualities? and that such reproaches escape my notice? I do not know where he is. What we promise, we must perform (keep). He that is contented, is happy. Whomsoever (him whom) we love, we also esteem. What we like to do, is easily done.

Be satisfied with what thou hast. The cowardly soldier (the soldier who is cowardly) (feig) deserves contempt. Do what is right. God sees thee, wheresoever thou mayest be (art). Are you such a one? No, sir, I am not such a one as your brother (is). Have you ever heard of such affairs? He is fond of playing such tricks. Where has she been? On that mountain, ma'am. Hast thou been there (on it, or thereupon) with her? No, sir, I have been with my father in a large saloon. Have you ever been in it? Where(in)? In that saloon, in which I saw (have seen) you yesterday. What are you thinking of? (Of what (woran) do you think?) I am thinking of the fine present I (have) received this morning. That is the house of the same lady whose children (have) delighted us with their sweet song. The handsome horse with which thou hast ploughed the field, is dead. I do not share in such (a) pleasure. Will he call our saddler, or his? He will call neither his nor ours, he will call yours. They are washing their hands.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.

Wer klopft an die Thür?	Who is knocking at the door?
Welcher Mann (welche Frau, welches Kind) klopft an die Thür?	Which man, (which woman, which child,) is knocking at the door?
Was gibt es (or was gibt's.)	What is the matter?
Der Mann ist da.	The man is here.
Welcher? der Neger.	Which one? The negro.
Die Frau klopft.	The lady knocks.
Welche? die schöne.	Which one? The beautiful one.

GENITIVE.

Wessen Schriften studiren Sie?	Whose writings do you study?
Die Werke welches Schriftstellers studiren Sie? / Die Werke welcher Schriftstellerin studiren Sie?	The works of which writer do you study?
Die Schwester welches Mädchens ist krank?	The sister of which girl is sick?

DATIVE.

Wem ist der Brantwein schädlich?	To whom is brandy hurtful?
Welchem Umstande verdankt er sein Glück?	To what (which) circumstance does he owe his fortune (success)?

Von welcher Dame spricht er?	Of which lady is he speaking?
Wovon ist die Rede?	What are you talking about? (Whereof is the discourse?)
Wovon hat er geträumt?	What did he dream of?

ACCUSATIVE.

Wen liebt Gott?	Whom does God love?
Welchen Knaben hast du unterrichtet?	Which boy hast thou instructed?
In welche dieser Kirchen wirst du gehen?	In which of these churches wilt thou go?
Welches braucht sie?	Which one does she want?
Das rothe.	The red one.
Was bedeutet das?	What does that mean?
Was wünscht er zu sehen?	What does he wish to see?

PLURAL. NOMINATIVE.

Wer sind diese langen Männer?	Who are these tall men?
Welche Dampfschiffe kommen dort?	What steamers are coming there?
Welche Blumen hat er am liebsten?	What flowers does he like best?

GENITIVE.

Von dem Tode welcher Personen benachrichtigt ihr mich?	Of whose death do you bring me news?
Welcher gedenkst du?	(Of) which (ones) dost thou remember?

DATIVE.

Von welchen dieser Knaben habt ihr diese verständigen Antworten gehört?	From which of these boys have you heard these sensible answers?
Mit welchen Mädchen hat sie gespielt?	With which girls did she play?

ACCUSATIVE.

Welche jener Oerter habt ihr schon besucht?	Which of those places have you already visited?
Welche fruchtbaren Wiesen verwandeln deine Eltern in einen Park?	Which fertile meadows do thy parents change into a park?

Was für ein, was für eine, was für ein, what (sort of)?

Was für ein Landsmann sind Sie?	What countryman are you?
Was für eine Belohnung soll ich ihm geben?	What reward shall I give him?

Was für ein Thier ist das?	What sort of animal is that?
Was für einen Vogel hat er gesehen?	What sort of bird has he seen?
Was für eine Neuigkeit erzählt er?	What news does he relate?
Nach was für einem Kinde hast du dich gesehnt?	What sort of child hast thou longed for?
Nach welchem Kinde hast du dich gesehnt?	Which child hast thou longed for?
Was für Marmor braucht er?	What sort of marble does he want?
Was für Mehl (neut.) hat sie?	What sort of flour has she?
Mit was für Federn schreibt er?	With what sort of pens does he write?
Mit Stahlfedern.	With steel-pens.
Mit welchen Federn schreibt er?	With which pens does he write?
Mit den Ihrigen.	With yours.
Was für Ochsen willst du kaufen?	What sort of oxen wilt thou buy?
Was für ein Mensch! / Welch' ein Mensch!	What a man!
Was für eine Begebenheit! / Welch' eine Begebenheit!	What an event!
Was für ein Geschick! / Welch' ein Geschick!	What a fate!
O, was für Wetter!	O, what weather!
Welche Nachrichten!	What news! (plur.)

Rule 1st., **Wer**, *who*, asks for persons, and **was**, *what*, for things; **welcher, welche, welches**, asks for distinct persons or things; and **was für ein** ꝛc., for the sort or description of persons, and the sort or species of persons and things. In the last mentioned signification the indefinite article is omitted before names of materials, and in the plural.

2d., **Was für ein** ꝛc., and **welcher, welche, welches**, omitting the final syllable (**er, e, es**) also serve to form exclamations, and to denote surprise, &c.

Exercise. Who is hungry, who is thirsty, who is sleepy? What sort of plant is that? Which plant have you? What is the matter? What does that apple cost? With whom does she dance? With which youth will she dance? Who has sprained his ancle? With whom did you spend those happy hours? Which person can prove that? The leaves of which tree are faded? Whom have you convinced of the truth of that saying? Whom does he long for? To what

circumstance does he owe his success? What does that mean? What steamers are there? Such a sensible answer! What countryman is he? Which countryman do you like best? What sort of cigars do they smoke? What sort of marble has he bought? With which oxen have you ploughed the field? What reward will he give me? What an event! What (a) joy! What a useful practice! What answer will you give him? Into which windmill are you going? What fire is the warmest? The red or the yellow (one)? What sort of coals have you in your stove? From which insects do we get honey (der Honig)? What sort of ears has the ass? What sort of bread has your baker? What a fine morning! Of which concert are you speaking? With what sort of arms did you wound (have you wounded) them? What are you talking about? Which of the two brothers is sick? To whom have you written? Which of these strangers are you acquainted with? With those you have spoken of. Who is not delighted with such probity, such courage, and such constancy? And who does not despise such haughtiness, such pride, such melancholy, and such cruelty? I shall never forget what thou hast told me. We shall apply to those who are capable of judging concerning that affair. The pagans, whose gods are of stone and of wood, are also God's image.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Es regnet, es schneit.	It rains, it snows.
Es schlägt (schlagen) zwölf Uhr.	The clock strikes twelve.
Ich habe es schon gehört.	I have already heard it.
Man muß sich in Acht nehmen.	One must take care (let them take care).
Man kann dort machen, was man will.	You (one) may do there what you (one) like (likes).
Man kann arm sein und doch achtungswerth.	A person may be poor, yet worthy of respect.
Man hat mir gesagt, daß die Räuber bestraft sind.	I have been told that the robbers have been (are) punished.
Man gebietet ihnen zu gehorchen.	They are commanded to obey.
Man erwartet heute den Präsidenten.	The president is expected to-day.
Man irrt sich, wenn man das glaubt.	People are mistaken, if they believe that.

Einer, Eine, Eines, one; Keiner, Keine, Keines, none.

SINGULAR.	NOMINATIVE.
Ist Einer (Eine, Eines) von euch hier gewesen?	Has one of you been here?
Nein, mein Herr, Keiner (Keine, Keines) von uns ist dort gewesen.	No, sir, none of us has been there.

GENITIVE.

Sind Sie eines Anzugs (masc.) bedürftig?	Are you in want of a suit of clothes?
Ich bin Eines (or Keines) bedürftig.	I am in want of one (or none).

DATIVE.

Wir haben es Einem gegeben.	We have given it to (some) one.
Wir haben gestern mit irgend Einem (Einer, Einem) gesprochen.	We spoke yesterday with some one.
Hast Du meiner oder seiner Kuh Heu gegeben?	Hast thou given (some) hay to my cow or to his?
Ich habe Keiner welches gegeben.	I have not given any to either.

ACCUSATIVE.

Ich liebe nicht Alle, aber Einen, (Eine, Eines); und Carl liebt Keinen, (Keine, Keines).	I do not love all, but one; and Charles loves none.

PLURAL.

Haben Sie Schafe? Ich habe Keine.	Have you any sheep? I have none.
Hast Du je Wölfe gesehen?	Hast thou ever seen wolves?
Ich habe noch Keine gesehen?	I have not yet seen any.

Etwas, something; Nichts, nothing, not anything.

Etwas ist mehr, als Nichts und weniger als Alles.	Something is more than nothing, and less than all.
Hat er Etwas gehört?	Has he heard something?
Er hat Nichts gehört.	He has not heard anything.
Haben Sie etwas Neues in der Stadt gesehen?	Have you seen anything new in the city?
Ich habe nichts Neues gesehen?	I have not seen anything new.
Er sieht nichts Gutes in ihrer Gesellschaft.	He sees nothing good in their company.

RULE 1st., The indefinite pronouns **es**, *it*; **man**, *one, they, people*; **Etwas**, *something*; **Nichts**, *nothing* or *not anything*, are not declined. **Etwas** and **Nichts** used as adjectives or adverbs, are written with a small initial letter.—As **man** can be used only in the nominative

case, the Germans employ in its stead **Einer, Eine, Eines** (declined like the definite article) in the other cases. **Keiner, Keine, Keines,** *none, no one,* or *not any,* are inflected like **Einer,** &c.

Any, accompanied by *not,* is to be translated into German by **Keiner,** &c.; and *anything,* preceded by *not,* is to be translated by **Nichts.**

2d., **Wenn,** *if,* affects the structure of the sentence in the same manner as the relative pronouns.

Mancher, Manche, Manches, many a one.

SINGULAR.

Mancher (Manche, Manches) hat unser gespottet.	Many a one (many a man, many a woman, many a child) has mocked us.
Die Früchte manches Baumes (mancher Pflanze) sind faul.	The fruit of many a tree (of many a plant) is decayed.
Die Geschwister manches Kindes sind faul.	The brothers and sisters of many a child are idle.
Ich habe mit Manchem (Mancher) eine vergnügte Stunde verlebt.	I have spent a happy hour with many a one.
Er hat schon Manches gelernt.	He has already learned many things.
Er wird manchen Freund (manche Freundin) in Amerika finden.	He will find many a friend in America.

PLURAL.

Manche tadeln, was sie nicht kennen.	Many persons censure what they do not know.
Die Straßen mancher Städte sind sehr schmutzig.	The streets of many towns are very dirty.
Manchen Leuten fehlt es am Nöthigsten.	Many people are destitute of the most necessary things.
Das ist der Schurke, der manche höllische Streiche verübt hat.	That is the villain who has perpetrated many infernal tricks.
Ist er manchmal bei Dir gewesen?	Has he been more than once (sometimes) with thee?

RULE. **Mancher, Manche, Manches,** *many a one,* and if followed by a substantive, *many a,* are declined like the definite article.

Jedermann, *every body*; Jeder, Jede, Jedes, *every one*.

NOMINATIVE.

Jedermann (Jeder, Jede, Jedes)— Jeglicher, Jegliche, Jegliches; Jedweder, Jedwede, Jedwedes — liebt sich selbst.	Every body (every one) loves himself (herself, itself, applied to children).
Und Jedermann ging, daß er sich schätzen ließe, ein Jeglicher in seine Stadt.	And every body (all) went to be taxed, every one to his own city.

GENITIVE.

Er ist Jedermann's Liebling.	He is every body's favorite.
Das ist das Schicksal eines Jeden (einer Jeden, eines Jeden), der (die, das) unrecht handelt.	That is the fate of every one who acts wrong.

DATIVE.

Auf jeder Seite dieses Buches ist etwas Neues.	There is something new on every page of this book.
Er zankt sich mit einem Jeden (einer Jeden; Jedermann).	He quarrels with every body

ACCUSATIVE.

Er lacht über jeden Fehler.	He laughs at every fault.
Sie ist gegen eine Jede unhöflich.	She is rude to every one.
Ich habe ein Jedes gefragt.	I have asked each one.
Du mußt Dich nicht auf Jedermann verlassen.	Thou must not rely on every body.

RULE. **Jedermann**, *every body*, takes in the genitive an **'s**, all other cases are like the nominative. **Jeder, jede, jedes**, *every*, which has like **Jedermann** no plural, is declined like the definite article. Sometimes it is preceded by the indefinite article, and then it is declined like adjectives preceded by that article.

Observation. The other forms for every one (mentioned at the head of this division) are not much used; they are declined like the definite article.

Exercise. It is bad weather, it rains and snows. Let us take care. He is a very respectable man. They are mistaken, if they think I am sick. I do not esteem any one of those

villains. Have you any salt? Yes, sir, I have some. Have you a horse? Yes, sir, I have one. No, sir, I have none. Something is more than nothing, but less than every thing. Has he anything sweet? One of us must write a letter to Germany. Each of us must write a letter to Germany. Every body will see the president. Many a one has praised me. He has already learned many things. Many people are destitute of the most necessary things. They sometimes laugh at him. And all went to be taxed, and every one to his own city. That is something good. Hast thou seen every soldier? Yes, sir, but I know not one. That is the fate of every one who acts wrong. She has quarrelled with every one. Do you rely on every body? Many a one speaks well, but writes badly. I am contented. They have talked about none of you. They are no thieves. Have you any apples? I have not any. He blames one of his enemies. Has he a true friend who helps him in need? He has none, he quarrels with every one. They are said to be villains, but they are none; they speak the truth to every body. What an event! What sort of flowers does she like best? Which places has he visited? What news does he relate? The pride of stupid people is the more contemptible. Out of the abundance of the heart, the mouth speaketh. That is the husband of the same lady, whose conduct is so praiseworthy. Happy is the man whose soul is free from guilt. Money, of the value of which human life affords such ample proof, is worthless in itself. What sort of flowers were they (it) of which the stalks are faded?

Jemand, *somebody*; Niemand, *nobody*.

Jemand will dich sprechen.	Somebody wishes to speak to thee
Wem ist diese Uhr?	Whose watch is this?
Sie muß Jemandes Eigenthum sein.	It must be somebody's property.
Ich habe sie Jemandem gegeben, aber ich weiß nicht mehr wem?	I have given it to somebody, but I do not know any more to whom.
Erwarten Sie Jemanden?	Do you expect anybody?
Klopft Jemand?	Is anybody knocking?
Es klopft Niemand.	Nobody knocks.

Sich zu schaden, ist Niemandes Wunsch.	It is nobody's wish to hurt himself.
Er hat den ganzen Abend mit Niemandem gesprochen.	He has not during the whole evening spoken to anybody.
Ich wünsche Niemandem ein solches Unglück.	I wish no one such a misfortune.
Wir brauchen Niemanden.	We do not want any one.

RULE. **Jemand**, *some one, somebody, anybody;* and **Niemand**, *no one, nobody, not anybody,* are used only in the singular, and take in the genitive, dative, and accusative the corresponding terminations of the definite masculine article.

Einige, *some;* Andere, *others.*

Einige sind gut, und Andere sind schlecht.	Some are good, and others are bad.
Der Preis einiger dieser Tücher ist zu hoch und der der andern ist zu niedrig.	The price of some of these clothes is too high, and that of the others is too low.
Die Kinder anderer Leute sind nicht besser, als die unsrigen.	The children of other people are not better than ours.
Ich habe mit Einigen darüber gesprochen.	I have spoken of it to some persons.
Ich spreche weder von den Einen, noch von den Andern.	I speak neither of these (the one,) nor of the others.
Sie haben einige Aepfel gegessen; hast du noch andere?	They have eaten some apples; hast thou any more?
Er wird einige Zeit hier bleiben.	He will stay here some time.
Einiges gefällt mir.	Some things please me.
Er hat es einem Andern gegeben.	He has given it to another.

RULE. **Einiger, Einige, Einiges**, *some,* is principally used in the plural, and inflected, like the definite article.—**Andere**, *others,* may be used with, or without an article, and is inflected in either case, like adjectives, when preceded, or not, by the article. (See a Synopsis of German Grammar, on the declension of the definite article, at the end of this volume.)

Etliche, *some, a few.*

Es waren etliche dreißig Pfund, die er verkauft hat.	It is some thirty pounds that he has sold.
Etlicher Aussagen sind wahr.	What two or three witnesses affirm, is true.
Er hat es schon Etlichen gesagt.	He has already informed several of it.
Ich habe etliche schöne Exemplare erhalten.	I have received some fine copies.
Etliches fiel auf das Steinige, Etliches fiel unter die Dornen, Etliches auf ein gut Land.	Some fell upon stony places, some fell among thorns, some (other) fell into good ground.
Er hat mir Etliches davon gegeben.	He has given me some of it.

RULE. **Etliche,** *some, a few,* is generally used in the plural (or in the singular, in a partitive sense, like **welches**), and declined, like adjectives not preceded by any article, or pronoun. (See a Synopsis of German Grammar, on the declension of the definite article, at the end of this volume.)

Aller, Alle, Alles, *all, everything.*

Aller Anfang ist schwer.	All beginnings are difficult.
Alle (or all') seine Kunst ist dahin.	All his art is gone.
Alles (or all') sein Geld ist fort.	All his money is gone.
Ein tugendhaftes Herz ist der Grund alles wahren Glücks, aller Glückseligkeit.	A virtuous heart is the basis of all true happiness.
Bei allem (or all') seinem Reichthume ist er nicht glücklich.	He is not happy with all his riches (or wealth).
Ist er mit all' diesem Gelde nicht zufrieden?	Is he not satisfied, notwithstanding (with) all this money?
Gott hat Alles geschaffen.	God has created every thing.
Alle meine Brüder sind jetzt in Amerika.	All my brothers are now in America.

Das ist das Schicksal Aller, deren Herzen nicht der Tempel des Herrn sind.	That is the fate of every one whose heart is not the temple of the Lord.
Er hat Allen, außer mir, ein Geschenk gemacht.	He has made all, except me, a present.
Gott hat alle Dinge geschaffen.	God has created all things.
Dieser Bursche (or Kerl) kommt alle Tage zu mir.	That fellow comes to me every day.

RULE. **Aller, Alle, Alles,** *all, everything*, is declined like the definite article.

Viele, *many*; **Mehrere,** *several*; **Verschiedene,** *different*; **Wenige,** *a few.*

Er hat Vieles, Mehreres, Verschiedenes (or viele, mehrere, verschiedene Sachen) gekauft.	He has bought many, several, different things.
Unter Vielen hat er sich eine gewählt.	Out of (among) many he has chosen one.
In wenigen Wochen wird er hier sein.	In a few weeks he will be here.
Ich kenne nur Wenige.	I know but few.
Wir haben mit ihm über verschiedene Dinge gesprochen.	We have spoken to him about several things.
Ich kenne viele Gelehrte, und er keine.	I know many learned men, and he knows none.
Mit Vielem hält man Haus, mit Wenigem kommt man auch aus.	You may use a great many things in housekeeping, but only a few are really necessary. (A German Prov.)

RULE. **Viele,** *many*; **Mehrere,** *several*; **Verschiedene,** *different*; **Wenige,** *a few*, are declined like the definite article; they are not much used in the singular. (See a Synopsis of German Grammar, on the declension of the definite article, at the end of this volume.)

Ganz, *whole*; **halb,** *half.*

Die ganze Welt ist Gottes Werk.	The whole world is God's work.
Unser ganzes Leben ist Nichts als ein steter Wechsel.	Our whole life is nothing but a perpetual change.

In einer halben Stunde bin ich wieder hier.	In half an hour I shall be (am) here again.
Er war den ganzen Tag hier.	He was here all the day.

RULE. Ganz, *whole*, and halb, *half*, are declined like adjectives; but they are never, as in English, placed before the article or pronoun.

Exercise. Art seeks nobody. Has any one heard it? To hurt himself is nobody's wish. I do not wish any body such a misfortune. We have spoken to you about it. Some things please us. He wants some twenty dollars. Have you bought some copies? Some fell upon stony places, some fell among thorns, and other fell into good ground. All beginnings are difficult. All his strength is gone. What is the basis of all true happiness? God has created every thing. Out of many he has chosen one. He speaks but little. Our whole life is nothing but a perpetual change. He was there all the day. The secrets (das Geheimniß) of others are not yours. There was nobody in the garden. Somebody wishes to speak to you. I saw several who (have) laughed at you. It is a whole regiment. Some of these robbers have been (are) punished. He has seen one, but not all. They have hurt all my children. Several ships of his are on the ocean. Some of his relations are very rich. He has received some fine presents. They drink much wine, but little water. I have not slept all the night. God is the father of all men. He has several times read the whole Bible through. I have several good pupils. I see nobody who can inform me of it. He has spoken to nobody in our house, there was nobody at home. Some fell among thorns. I esteem such zeal. What reward will you give him? What is the matter? Whose writings do you study? What news! We are mistaken if we believe that. He sees nothing good in their company. He has passed a happy hour with many a one. He is polite to every body.

NUMERALS.

OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Null, eins, zwei, drei, vier fünf, sechs, sieben, acht, neun, zehn, elf, zwölf, dreizehn, vierzehn, fünf-	Nought, one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen,

zehn, sechzehn, siebenzehn, achtzehn, neunzehn.	sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen.
Zwanzig, ein und zwanzig, &c.	Twenty, twenty-one, &c.
Dreißig, zwei und dreißig, &c.	Thirty, thirty-two, &c.
Vierzig, drei und vierzig, &c.	Forty, forty-three, &c.
Fünfzig, vier und fünfzig, &c.	Fifty, fifty-four, &c.
Sechszig, fünf und sechszig, &c.	Sixty, sixty-five, &c.
Siebenzig, sechs und siebenzig, &c.	Seventy, seventy-six, &c.
Achtzig, sieben und achtzig, &c.	Eighty, eighty-seven, &c.
Neunzig, ein und neunzig, &c.	Ninety, ninety-one, &c.
Hundert, hundert und eins, hundert und vier und zwanzig.	(A) hundred, (a) hundred and one, (a) hundred and twenty-four.
Zwei hundert, drei hundert, &c.	Two hundred, three hundred, &c.
Ein tausend, zwei tausend, &c.	One thousand, two thousand, &c.
Hundert tausend, hundert und vierzig tausend.	A hundred thousand, one hundred and forty thousand.
Eine Million, eine Billion.	A million, a billion.
1849, ein tausend acht hundert und neun und vierzig.	1849, one thousand eight hundred and forty-nine.

THE DECLENSION OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Ein, Eine, Ein, one.

Es ist nur ein Soldat.	It is but one soldier.
Da ist eine Feder, wo ist die andere?	Here is one pen, where is the other (one)?
Hier ist ein Feuer, und dort ist das andere.	Here is one fire, and there is the other.
Das ist eines Zeugen Aussage.	That is the evidence of one witness.
Sie hat sich mit einer Magd gezankt.	She has quarrelled with one maid-servant.
Der Mensch hat einen Kopf, eine Nase, ein Herz, aber zwei Augen.	Man has one head, one nose, one heart, but two eyes.
Der eine Soldat hat sich den Knöchel verrenkt, und der andere ist verwundet.	The one soldier has sprained his ancle, and the other is wounded.
Die eine Frage ist schwer.	The one question (one of these questions) is difficult.
Die Uebungen des einen Schülers (der einen Schülerin) sind fehlerfrei, aber die des (der) andern sind voller Fehler.	The exercises of this scholar are correct, but those of the other are full of mistakes.

Er hat von dem einen Soldaten gesprochen.	He has spoken of this soldier.
Sie haben es dem einen Kinde gereicht und nicht dem andern.	They have handed it to this child, and not to the other.
Ich kenne den Einen und den Andern, die Eine und die Andere, das Eine und das Andere.	I know the one and the other.
Die Einen lachen und die Andern weinen.	These are laughing, and the others are weeping.
Die Kleider der Einen sind neu, und die der Andern sind alt.	The clothes of these are new, and those of the others are eld.
Ich gehe weder zu den Einen, noch zu den Andern.	I go neither to these nor to the others.
Ich habe die Einen, und er hat die Andern.	I have these (the ones) and he has the others.

Kein, Keine, Kein, *no, not a.*

Es ist ein Hund, aber keine Katze.	It is a dog, and (but) no cat.
Er sagt, es ist kein Knabe, und sie sagt, es ist kein Mädchen.	He says, it is no boy, and she says, it is no girl.
Keines Menschen Stärke ist der eines Löwen gleich.	No man's strength is equal to that of a lion.
Ich bemerke keine Seele im ganzen Hause.	I do not find (perceive) a soul in the whole house.
Ich habe keinen einzigen Cent bei mir.	I have not a single cent with me.

Rule 1st., If the numeral **ein, eine, ein,** is joined to a noun, it is declined like the indefinite article, from which it is distinguished only by a stronger accent.

2d., When preceded by the definite article (or pronouns inflected like it) it is declined like adjectives, preceded by this article or pronoun.

3d., Instead of the English *not a*, is used **kein, keine, kein**; they are inflected like the numerals **ein, eine, ein.**

NOMINATIVE.

Zwei Birnen sind weniger als drei (vier, acht, zehn ꝛc.).	Two pears are less than three (four, eight, ten, &c.).
Beide sind längst todt.	Both have been (are) dead long ago.

GENITIVE.

Die Stärke zweier Männer ist noch einmal so groß, als die Eines.	The strength of two men is as great again as that of one.
Das Urtheil dreier Personen ist selten ein und dasselbe.	The judgment of three persons is seldom (one and) the same.
Wir bewundern die Stärke dieser zwei Männer.	We admire the strength of these two men.
Das Urtheil dieser drei Personen ist sehr wahr.	The opinion (judgment) of these three persons is very correct.
Das Geld in meiner Börse ist der Summe von vier (sechs, zehn, fünf und zwanzig ꝛc.) Thalern gleich.	The money in my purse is equal to the sum of four (six, ten, twenty-five, &c.) dollars.

DATIVE.

Das Kind kriecht auf allen Vieren.	The child crawls upon all fours.
Sie gehen zu zweien, zu dreien.	They are going two by two, three by three.
Die Häringe kommen zu hunderten, zu tausenden.	The herrings are coming by hundreds, by thousands.
Er geht mit fünfen, mit sechsen, mit sieben, mit elfen, mit zwanzigen dahin.	He goes thither with five, with six, with seven, with eleven, with twenty.
Er spricht von den sechzehn faulen Knaben.	He speaks of the sixteen idle boys.

ACCUSATIVE.

Herr W. unterrichtet ein und zwanzig Mädchen und drei und dreißig Knaben.	Mr. W. instructs twenty-one girls, and thirty-three boys.

Rule 1st., The genitive of **zwei**, and **drei**, is formed by adding **er** (the termination of the genitive plural of the definite article) to them, but if the genitive case is determined by an article or pronoun, it remains unaltered. The genitive case of all other numerals is expressed by means of the preposition **von**.

2d., The dative of all cardinal numbers, if not joined to a noun, is formed by adding **en** to them; except **sieben**, *seven*, which remains unaltered (and **eins**).

3d., The accusative is like the nominative.

Beide, *both*, is used instead of **zwei**, if there are but two things spoken of.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Der (die, das) erste, der (die, das) zweite, der dritte, der vierte, der fünfte, der sechste, der siebente, der achte, der neunte, der zehnte, der elfte, der zwölfte, der dreizehnte, der vierzehnte, der fünfzehnte, der sechzehnte, der siebenzehnte, der achtzehnte, der neunzehnte.	The first, the second, the third, the fourth, the fifth, the sixth, the seventh, the eighth, the ninth, the tenth, the eleventh, the twelfth, the thirteenth, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, the sixteenth, the seventeenth, the eighteenth, the nineteenth.
Der zwanzigste, der ein und zwanzigste ꝛc.	The twentieth, the one and twentieth, or the twenty-first, &c.
Der dreißigste, der zwei und dreißigste; der vierzigste, der drei und vierzigste.	The thirtieth, the thirty-second; the fortieth, the forty-third.
Der fünfzigste, der sechzigste, der siebenzigste, der achtzigste, der neunzigste, der hundertste.	The fiftieth, the sixtieth, the seventieth, the eightieth; the ninetieth, the hundredth.
Der hundert und zehnte ꝛc.	The hundred and tenth, &c.
Der tausendste, der millionste.	The thousandth, the millionth.

RULE. The *ordinal numbers* in German are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding the syllable **te** to each of the first nineteen, (**der erste und dritte**, are irregular,) and the syllable **ste** to each of the rest.

NOMINATIVE.

Der zweite Betrug ist schlimmer, als der erste.	The second deceit is worse than the first. (A Germ. prov.)
Er war der allererste, aber nicht der allerbeste.	He was the very first, but not the very best.
Heinrich der Vierte.	Henry the fourth.
Ein zweiter Bote kommt, sein Vater ist sehr krank.	A second messenger is coming, his father is very sick.
Mein zweites Kind ist sechs Jahre alt.	My second child is six years old.

GENITIVE.

Die Antwort des dritten (fünften, zwölften 2c.) Schülers ist sehr gut.	The answer of the third (of the fifth, twelfth, &c.) scholar is very good.
Die Gegenwart einer zweiten (dritten, vierten 2c.) Person macht mich furchtsam.	The presence of a second (third, fourth) person frightens me.

DATIVE.

Sie hat es dem zweiten (fünften, sechsten 2c.) Kinde erzählt.	She has related it to the second (fifth, sixth) child.
Sie gleicht weder meiner ersten noch meiner zweiten Tochter.	She resembles neither my first, nor my second daughter.
Ludwig der Vierzehnte, der Sohn Ludwig's des Dreizehnten, hat im siebenzehnten Jahrhundert regiert.	Lewis XIV., the son of Lewis XIII., reigned in the seventeenth century.
Das ist zum sechsten und letzten Mal.	That is for the sixth and last time.

ACCUSATIVE.

Er richtet jedes Mal die siebente (zehnte, zwanzigste 2c.) Frage an mich.	He every time puts the seventh (tenth, twentieth) question to me.
Fragen Sie den vier und dreißigsten Schüler.	Ask the thirty-fourth scholar.

RULE. The cardinal numbers are declined like adjectives, preceded by the definite article, or by the indefinite one.

Exercise. Four and three are seven. Six and one and two are nine. There is one penknife, where is the other? That is the evidence of two witnesses. Man has two legs, two eyes, eight fingers, and two thumbs. I have spoken neither of the one, nor of the other. These (the ones) are laughing, and the others are weeping. I am coming neither from the one, (plur.) nor from the others. I have not a single cent with me. Has he not a single cent with him? The strength of nobody is equal to that of an elephant. He did not find a soul in the whole house. Is the strength of two persons every time as great again as that of one? Spring and summer, these two seasons, I like best. The child crawls upon all fours. I have slept with thirteen together. Is he the very best scholar?

No, sir, he is the very worst. The teacher puts every time the eighth question to me. A third messenger is coming. The presence of a second one frightens him. I was the very first. It is I who comes for the second time. That is for the eighth and last time. Charles and Lewis are at home. Neither (Keiner von Beiden) is gone to Philadelphia. Lewis XIV., the son of Lewis XIII. reigned in the seventeenth century. Washington's birth-day is on the (am) 22. of February. She has but one child. Will you lend me thirty dollars? I can lend you no more than twenty dollars, but my brother has much money, he can lend you some dollars. Will you ask him for it (darum)? How many bottles do you want? I want fifty-three bottles. How much mony do you want? Sixty-six eagles, sir. I will go with you, but not with an other. My birth-day occurs (is) on the 27th of June. He has already learned many things. He does not see anything good in your company. One may do there what one pleases. Which of those places have you visited? A friend in need is a friend indeed. The heart of those good men, who act towards their fellow-men as towards themselves, is the seat of genuine love.

ADVERBIAL NUMBERS.

Ich vermeide seinen Umgang: erstens (zum ersten) verachtet er mich und zweitens (or zum zweiten, zum andern) verabscheut er meinen Freund.	I avoid his intercourse: firstly (in the first place) he despises me, and secondly (in the second place) he detests my friend.
Er hat verschiedene Fehler: erstens schläft er zu lang, zweitens wäscht er sich nicht ordentlich, drittens ist er ungehorsam, viertens ist er unaufmerksam in den Stunden, fünftens spielt er zu viel und arbeitet zu wenig; sechstens hält er seine Kleidungsstücke nicht in Ordnung und siebentens bestrebt er sich nicht die Liebe seiner Nebenmenschen zu gewinnen.	He has a variety of faults: firstly, he sleeps too long; secondly, he does not wash himself properly; thirdly, he is disobedient; fourthly, he is inattentive in his lessons; fifthly, he plays too much and works too little; sixthly, he does not keep his clothes in (good) order, and seventhly, he does not endeavor to gain the love of his fellow-creatures.
Und zum achten, neunten, zehnten, zwanzigsten?	And in the eight, ninth, tenth, twentieth place?

RULE. The adverbials *firstly*, &c. are formed in German by adding **ns** to the ordinal numbers, or employing the dative with **zum**.

Manche Sprichwörter sind nicht wahr, zum Beispiel (z. B.) ein Mal ist kein Mal.	Many proverbs are not true, for example: once is no time (no more than never.)

Er hat mich zweimal gesehen.	He has seen me twice.
Vier Mal fünf ist zwanzig.	Four times five is twenty.
Sieben Mal vierzehn ist acht und neunzig.	Seven times fourteen is ninety eight.
Es war einmal ein Mann.	There was once a man.

RULE. The reiteratives, formed in English with *time* or *times*, are formed in German with **Mal**.

Observation. **Einmal**, once, employed as an adverb of time, has the accent on the last syllable, and is written, as it is generally the case with all these adverbs of time, as one word.

Er ist mein einziger Sohn.	He is my only son.
Das ist unser einziges Vergnügen.	That is our only pleasure.
Ich war nur ein einziges Mal bei ihm.	I was but a single time with him.
Nur einzelne (unverheirathete) Herrn gehen bei mir in die Kost.	Only single gentlemen board with me (to board, in die Kost gehen).
Doppelt (zweifach) hält es besser, als einfach.	Double (twofold) it holds better than simple.
Dreifach ist der Schritt der Zeit (Schiller).	Threefold (triple) is the step of time.
Willst du es siebenfach oder achtfach haben?	Wilt thou have it sevenfold or eightfold?
Etliches fiel auf ein gut Land, und trug Frucht; etliches hundertfältig, etliches sechzigfältig, etliches dreißigfältig.	Some fell into good ground and brought forth (carried) fruit; some an hundredfold, some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold.
Er ist ein sehr einfacher junger Mann.	He is a very unassuming young man.
Er ist ein einfältiger Kerl.	He is a simple fellow.

RULE. The syllable *fold* in these English adverbials is to be translated into German by **fach** or **fältig**; but **einfältig** conveys the idea of imbecility and is very seldom used for *simple* (one fold).

IDIOMS.

Ich habe es ein für alle Mal gesagt.	I have said it once for all.
Wir thun es ein für alle Mal.	We (shall) do it by all means.
Ich bleibe ein für alle Mal dabei.	I abide by it for ever.
Er ist ein für alle Mal ein schlechter Kerl.	He is decidedly a wicked fellow.
Hat er einerlei Wein oder verschiedenerlei Wein?	Has he got wine of one sort or of differents sorts?
Er hat nur einerlei Wein.	He has but one sort of wine.
Ist dies einerlei oder zweierlei Tuch?	Is this cloth of one sort or of two sorts?

Es ist einerlei.	It is of one sort.
Es ist mir einerlei.	It is the same to me.
Er hat mir hunderterlei verschiedene Dinge gezeigt.	He has shown me a hundred different things.
Ich habe mancherlei (allerlei) Menschen gesehen.	I have seen a great variety (all sorts) of men.
Wir werden unsere Tauben paarweise (dutzendweise) verkaufen.	We shall sell our pigeons by pairs, by dozens.
Man verkauft den Zucker pfundweise, und das Tuch ellenweise.	Sugar is sold by pounds, and cloth by yards.
Sein Oheim hat ihm ein Paar neue Stiefeln gekauft.	His uncle has bought him a pair of new boots.
Geben Sie mir gefälligst ein paar Kirschen. (fem.)	Give me some cherries, if you please.
Er wird sie baar bezahlen.	He will pay you in ready money (cash).
Unser zwei (or zwei von uns), ihrer drei (or drei von ihnen) sind dort gewesen.	Two of us, three of them have been there.
Ich besuche ihn einen um den andern Tag.	I visit him every other day.
Ich begegne ihm eine um die andere Stunde.	I meet him every two hours.
Der Doctor kommt jede fünfte Stunde zu dem Kranken (or Patienten).	The doctor comes to see the patient every fifth hour.
Der letzte (der vorletzte, der vorvorletzte) Soldat ist mein Bruder.	The last (the last save one, the last but two) soldier is my brother.
Thun Sie das noch einmal.	Do that once more.
Er ist noch einmal so groß als ich.	He is as tall again as I.
Ich brauche noch einmal so viele.	I want as many again.
Braucht er die doppelte Anzahl?	Does he want double the number?
In vierzehn Tagen werde ich wieder hier sein.	In a fortnight I shall be here again.
Heute über acht Tage findet meine Hochzeit Statt.	To-day sennight my marriage will take place.
Es ist nur ein Bruch.	It is but a fraction.
Ich erhalte die Hälfte davon.	I receive the half of it.
Ich bekomme es halb.	I receive half of it.
Die halbe Stadt weiß es.	Half the city knows it.
Er will mir ein halbes Schock Eier schicken.	He will send me two dozen and a half of eggs.
Du bekommst anderthalb (dritthalb, vierthalb, sechsthalb) Thaler von mir.	Thou receivest one dollar and a half (two dollars and a half, three dollars and a half, five dollars and a half) from me.
Es ist gerade halb zwölf (halb eins, halb drei).	It is just half past eleven (half past twelve, half past two).
Ein Drittel, ein Viertel, ein Zehntel, ein Zwanzigstel, ein fünf und dreißigstel, ein Tausendstel, zwei Sechstel.	A third, a fourth, a tenth, a twentieth, a thirty-fifth, a thousandth, two-sixths.

RULE. The fractional numbers are formed in German by adding l to the ordinal numbers.

Wie viel Uhr ist es?	What o'clock is it?
Es ist ein Viertel auf zwei (or ein Viertel nach eins).	It is a quarter past one.
Ist es schon ein Viertel auf neun?	Is it already a quarter past eight?
O, es ist später, es ist drei Viertel auf neun.	O, it is later, it is a quarter to nine.
Um drei Viertel auf vier ist Eßzeit.	At a quarter to four it is dinner-time.
Es ist beinahe drei Viertel auf zwölf.	It is nearly a quarter to twelve.
Es hat so eben elf geschlagen; Ihre Uhr geht vor (or geht zu früh).	The clock has just now struck eleven, your watch is too fast.
Es ist zwanzig Minuten vor elf.	It is twenty minutes wanting of eleven.
Es sind noch zwanzig Minuten auf elf Uhr.	It still wants twenty minutes of eleven o'clock.
Es sind noch einige Minuten auf zehn.	It wants a few minutes of ten.
Deine Uhr geht nach (or geht zu spät), es ist zwölf Minuten nach zehn Uhr.	Thy watch is too slow, it is twelve minutes past ten o'clock.
Es ist neun vorbei.	It is past nine.
Meine Uhr steht.	My watch stops.

Exercise. He has struck me three times. Seven times eight is fifty-six. Three times nine is twenty-seven. She is my only daughter. Only single gentlemen board with me. That was her only pleasure. Some brought forth a hundred fold, some sixty fold, some thirty fold. Thou art a simple fellow. I shall not by any means do it. We abide by it for ever. Has she got milk of different kinds? It is all the same to me. He will show me a hundred different things. Eggs are sold by dozens in America. I see him every other day. The last but one is dead. She wants double the sum. Three-fourths is a fraction. What o'clock is it? It is half past seven. Ten times ten is a hundred. I have said it twenty times to him. The gentleman who has been here has made me different proposals (der Vorschlag): firstly, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, in the tenth place, in the nineteenth, twenty-first place. Half the money is gone. How much is two, three, and four and a half? Three quarters of a year are how many months? A quarter of a year (ein Vierteljahr) are three months, and half a year are six months. It is a

quarter past three. In half an hour it is a quarter to four. What o'clock is it? It is seven minutes past six. Your watch is too fast, sir. It is not yet (noch nicht) six o'clock, it wants thirteen minutes of six. I do not know what o'clock it is, my watch is too slow. It is ten minutes to nine. Is it possible, you are mistaken. No, sir, time passes by (vergehen) very quick, you have been here an hour and a half. He comes to me every other day. We have only one sort of paper. How many sorts of paper has she? She has ten sorts of paper. Six of you. A dozen knives and two dozens forks are thirty-six pieces. I have seen as many again. Two-fifths are more than three-tenths, but less than two-fourths. Every sixth hour I am free. He is always the last, and I the last but one. I am Alpha and Omega. (The) Dear self often thinks only of itself. That is our only child. Even I have perceived it. (The) grief on account of the death of my virtuous daughters is shortening my life. The goods of our milliner are good, but those of yours are bad. Have you bought these black horses from your jockey, or from his? The banks of this river are steeper than those of that one.

VERBS.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

Werden, *to become, be, shall, will, get, grow, turn,* ***prove.***

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich werde ein Soldat.	I become a soldier.
Wirst du ein Juwelier?	Dost thou become a jeweller?
Er wird kein Barbier.	He does not become a barber.
Wird sie zufriedener?	Does she grow more contented?
Es wird noch nicht dunkel.	It does not grow dark yet.
Werden wir auf diese Weise Faulenzer?	Do we thus become lazy-fellows?
Ihr werdet ganz gewiß Bettler.	You will, most assuredly, become beggars.
Alle meine Brüder werden Sattler.	All my brothers become saddlers.

IMPERFECT.

Wurde ich fleißig?	Did I become industrious?
Du wurdest nicht fleißiger.	Thou didst not grow more industrious.

Er wurde kein Dachdecker.	He did not become a slater.
Wurde sie nicht sehr traurig?	Did she not grow very sad?
Was ich gesagt habe, wurde wahr.	What I said, proved to be true.
Wir wurden nicht unzufrieden mit dir.	We did not become dissatisfied with thee.
Wurdet ihr nicht sehr schwach?	Did you not grow very weak?
Wann wurden Sie blind?	When did you (*sing.*) become blind?
Die Blätter wurden gelb.	The leaves grew yellow.

PERFECT.

Past Participle, geworden, *become, &c.*

Ich bin sehr geizig geworden.	I have become very avaricious.
Bist du nicht mein Freund geworden?	Hast thou not become my friend?
Was ist er geworden?	What became of him?
Sie ist sehr artig geworden.	She has grown very polite.
Was ist aus dem Kinde geworden?	What has become of the child?
Wir sind Buchhändler geworden.	We have turned booksellers.
Seid ihr Amerikaner geworden?	Have you become Americans?
Sie sind ein wahrer Franzose geworden.	You became a real Frenchman.
Seine Haare sind nicht schwarz geworden.	His hair has not grown black.

PLUPERFECT.

Er war zu der Zeit sehr stolz geworden.	He had become very proud at that time.
Warst du nicht ein Sattler geworden, ehe du ein Juwelier wurdest?	Hadst thou not become a saddler, before thou becamest a jeweller.
Sie war schöner geworden, als er.	She had become more beautiful than he.
War es nicht heller lichter Tag geworden, ehe Sie nach Hause kamen?	Had it not become broad day-light, before you came home?
Wir waren sehr lustig geworden, als er in die Stube kam.	We had become very gay when he came into the room.
Ihr waret sehr ärgerlich geworden, ehe wir den Streit hatten.	You had become very angry, before we had the dispute.
Waren Sie gegen meinen Vater nicht anzüglich geworden?	Have you not used offensive language to my father?
Sie waren artig geworden, ehe sie mich sahen.	They had become polite, before they saw me.

FIRST FUTURE.

Wann werde ich wieder gesund werden?	When shall I get well again?
Du wirst unter diesen Umständen (*masc.*) nie gesund werden.	Thou wilt never get well under these circumstances.

Er wird leider ein Taugenichts werden.	Alas, he will become a good-for-nothing fellow.
Sie wird keine gute Hausfrau werden.	She will not prove a good landlady.
Wird es nicht bald schönes Wetter werden?	Will there not be fine weather soon?
Wir werden niemals hochmüthig werden.	We shall never be haughty.
Ihr werdet keine guten Zimmerleute werden.	You will not be good carpenters.
Sie werden uns nützlich werden, wenn Sie (sie) Ihre (ihre) Pflicht pünktlich erfüllen.	You (they) will prove useful to us if you (they) punctually fulfil your (their) duty.
Meine Tanten werden niemals wohlthätig werden; sie sind zu geizig.	My aunts will never become beneficent; they are too avaricious.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde Uhrmacher geworden sein, wann Sie wieder hier sind.	I shall have become a watchmaker, when you return.
Du wirst noch nicht reich geworden sein.	Thou wilt not yet have become rich.
Er wird ein Gärtner geworden sein, ehe du nach England kommst.	He will have become a gardener, before thou wilt arrive in England.
Wird sie verständiger geworden sein?	Will she have grown more sensible?
Das Holz wird nicht trocken geworden sein; die Sonne scheint nicht.	The wood will not have become dry, the sun does not shine.
Wir werden in acht Tagen keine Buchbinder geworden sein.	We shall not have become bookbinders in a week.
Ihr werdet bei eurer Arbeit nicht müde geworden sein.	You will not have become tired by (at) your work.
Werden sie nicht naß geworden sein, als das Gewitter kam?	Will they not have become wet, when the thunder-storm came?

Rule 1st., The perfect and the pluperfect of the auxiliary verb **werden**, *to become, shall*, which answers to the English verbs, *to grow, to get, to turn, to prove*, are formed by adding its past participle to the present (**ich bin**, &c.) and imperfect (**ich war**, &c.) of **sein**, *to be*. The first future is formed by adding the infinitive of it to its present tense, and the second future by adding **geworden sein**, to its present tense.

2d., The English *when* (*if*), expressing a condition, is to be translated into German by „**wenn**" and ex

pressing time by „wann", except in cases of comparison with a past event, in which case it must be translated by „als". These words, and ehe, *before*, affect the sentence in the same manner as the relative pronouns.

Exercise. Is it growing dark? I shall not become a good-for-nothing fellow. Wilt thou become a jeweller? The weather grows very fine. Has it not grown very cold? You became very pale (blaß). Why did they become so pale? He became a learned man. I became very sick when I was with my uncle. Didst thou become healthy when thou wast in the country? She did not become a good singer, but she plays very well on the piano-forte. He has become very avaricious. Has he become my enemy? Have you become Americans? His hair has become black. She had become very proud at that time. It had become broad daylight. They had not become angry before you came home. Thou hast used offensive language to my dear godfather. We shall soon get fine weather. That man will become very useful to us, if he fulfils his duty. That child will have grown more sensible in a year. He will have become more beneficent, before thou wilt become beneficent. They will not have become tired, they have been in bed all the day. It grew very dark when we were in the forest. They were very polite to him. They had become beggars, before we saw them. What became of him? He has become an impostor. Hast thou also been an impostor? They have become good-for-nothing fellows. You have become very industrious. Has she not become prudent (klug)? She will never become prudent. He who did not become prudent by this accident (der Vorfall) will never be prudent. I had become a watchmaker before he asked me. He had not been angry with (über) me. Had you ever grown angry at this affair? It had become broad daylight before we came home. We shall become very diligent scholars, but thou wilt become idle. I know what will become of her, but I do not know what will become of him. We shall have become rich when you return, but they will have become poor. Will it not have turned white in the course (im Laufe) of a week? He will not have become a good-for-nothing fellow when you see him again, he will have become a learned man.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Im Fall, daß ich ein Schauspieler werde.	In case I should become an actor
Ich wünsche, daß du ein Astronom werdest.	I wish you to become an astronomer.
Ist es möglich, daß sie nicht größer werde?	It is possible that she may not grow taller?
Wünschen Sie nicht, daß es schönes Wetter werde?	Do you not wish it to be fine weather?
Er behauptet, daß wir geiziger werden.	He maintains that we are growing more avaricious.
Wenn ihr fleißiger werdet, so mache ich euch ein Geschenk.	If you become more diligent I will make you a present.
Ich gebe ihnen das Geschenk, vorausgesetzt, sie werden höflicher.	I will give them the present, provided they become more polite

IMPERFECT.

Er glaubte, ich würde ein Zahnarzt.	He thought I was becoming a dentist.
Ich glaubte du würdest kein Zahnarzt.	I thought thou wouldst not become a dentist.
Ich befürchtete schon damals, daß es kalt würde.	I feared already at that time that it might grow cold.
Sie wünschten, daß wir aufmerksamer würden.	They wished us to become more attentive.
Ich zweifelte, daß ihr Philosophen würdet.	I doubted of your becoming philosophers.
Ich hörte, Sie würden ein Apotheker.	I heard you might (would) become an apothecary.

PERFECT.

Vorausgesetzt, ich sei ein Schuhmacher geworden.	Provided I had become a shoemaker.
Man sagt, du seist ein Bäcker geworden.	Thou art said to have become a baker.
Man sagt, daß er dir gefährlich geworden sei.	He is said to have become dangerous to you.
Er sagt, daß wir grausamer geworden seien.	He says that we have become more cruel.
Sie glauben, ihr seiet Schornsteinfeger geworden.	They believe you to have become chimney-sweepers.
Ihr habt Unrecht, wenn ihr denkt, sie seien Lohgerber geworden, sie sind Färber geworden.	You are wrong, if you think they have become tanners, they have turned dyers.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich wäre an deiner Stelle ein Kaufmann geworden.	I should have become a merchant in thy place.

Wenn du doch ein Buchhändler geworden wärest!	I wish thou hadst become a book seller.
Wenn er ein Banquier geworden wäre, so würde er viel Geld haben.	If he had become a banker, he would have much money.
Ich dachte, sie wäre klüger geworden, als sie ist.	I thought she had become more prudent than she is.
Wäre es unter diesen Umständen nicht besser geworden?	Would it not have become better under these circumstances?
Wir wären nicht besser geworden.	We should not have become better.
Man sagt, ihr wäret ungerecht gegen ihn geworden, wenn —	It is said you would have proved unjust towards him, if—
Wenn sie aufrichtiger geworden wären, so würden sie die Wahrheit sagen.	If they had become more sincere, they would speak the truth.

FIRST FUTURE.

Er glaubt, ich werde ein Schlosser werden.	He believes I shall be a locksmith.
Sie zweifelt, daß du ein Glaser werden werdest.	She doubts your becoming a glazier.
Vorausgesetzt, er werde kein Glaser werden.	Provided, he will not be a glazier.
Er glaubt, wir werden Pflasterer werden.	He believes us to become paviors.
Er hofft, ihr werdet nicht ungeduldig werden.	He hopes you will not grow impatient.
Ich denke, sie werden schlechte Töpfer werden.	I think they will become bad potters.

SECOND FUTURE.

Was glauben Sie, daß ich geworden sein werde, wann Sie wieder kommen?	What do you think I shall have become, when you return?
Ich hoffe, du werdest ein geschickter Optikus geworden sein.	I hope thou wilt have become a skilful optician.
Im Fall, daß er bis morgen nicht aufmerksam geworden sein werde, bestrafe ich ihn.	In the event that he will not have become attentive by to-morrow, I shall punish him.
Obgleich wir größer geworden sein werden, so werden wir doch nicht klüger sein, wann —	Though we shall have grown taller, yet we shall not be more prudent, when —
Werden sie grausamer geworden sein, als sie waren?	Will they have become more cruel, than they have been? (were)

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Wenn ich dort wäre, würde ich gesunder werden.	If I were there, I should become healthier.

Was würdest du unter diesen Umständen werden?	What wouldst thou become under these circumstances?
Wenn er so reich, wie du wäre, würde er ein Banquier werden.	If he were as rich as thou he would become a banker.
Ich weiß, was wir nicht werden würden, und was ihr werden würdet.	I know what we should not be, and what you would be.
Wenn sie nicht so geizig wären, so würden sie sehr verschwenderisch werden.	If they were not so avaricious, they would become very prodigal.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde ein Offizier geworden sein, wenn er es mir erlaubt hätte.	I should have become an officer if he had allowed me.
Und du, mein Freund, würdest Hauptmann geworden sein.	And thou, my friend, wouldst have become a captain.
Was würde er nicht Alles geworden sein, wenn —	What all would he not have become, if —
Wir würden längst Geschichtsforscher geworden sein.	We should have become historians long ago.
Würdet ihr Bettler geworden sein, wenn ihr gearbeitet hättet?	Would you have become beggars, if you had worked?
Sie würden keine Bettler geworden sein.	They would not have become beggars.

RULE 1st., Both the subjunctive and conditional are employed, when the predicate is conditionally attributed to the subject—when there is a contingency in the case; it, therefore, frequently happens that the Germans employ the subjunctive instead of the English conditional—the imperfect for the first conditional, and the pluperfect for the second conditional.

2d., If a sentence, consisting of two members, commences with **wenn, obgleich, was** ꝛc., or in general with a conjunction whether the second member commences with **so** or not, the subject is placed after the verb, or in compound tenses, after the auxiliary.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Werdend, (or **indem man wird,**) *becoming.*

IMPERATIVE.

Indem man älter wird, wird man erfahrener.	We get experience as we grow older.

Das Kind wird unleidlich, indem es schläfrig wird.	As the child grows sleepy, it becomes insufferable.
Wir werden besser, indem wir weise werden.	As we grow wiser we become better.

Werde fleißiger.	Become (thou) more industrious.
Laßt ihn (sie, es) einen Schneider (in) werden.	Let him (her, it) be a tailor (ess).
Laßt uns geduldiger werden.	Let us be more patient.
Werdet wie die Kinder.	Become as (little) children.
Werden Sie nicht so eifrig, mein Freund.	Do not become so excited, my friend.
Laßt sie hungrig werden.	Let them get hungry.

Exercise. I doubt of thy becoming rich. Is it possible that he should become a thief? He does not permit her to become disobedient. Do you think it will grow tall? Do you believe that these flowers may turn red? I did not believe that they would turn white. I was sure thou wouldst not become a locksmith. We should have proved more useful in thy place. I wish he had become a bookseller. Should we not have become richer under these circumstances? If you were more sincere you would tell the truth. He doubted of my becoming a locksmith. Provided, they will become paviors. What do you think he will have become when you return? I think he will have become a learned historian. We hope you will have become a skilful optician. Though they have become rich they are not beneficent. What would he be under these circumstances? If we were as rich as you, we should be more contented. As they grow older, people become more experienced. Let her be a mantua-maker. Become as little children. He doubted my having become a good-for-nothing fellow. Provided, I may have become an optician. He is said to have become cruel towards her. They are said to have become beggars. If it were true that thou hadst become a soldier I should believe it. In case we should have become bookbinders, would you have praised us? Does he believe I shall be an officer? He believes thou wilt not be an officer. If I should become rich I would give you a hundred dollars. We would be jewellers if we were in New-Orleans. I hope thou wilt have become a skilful optician, when I return. In case they should not have become more attentive, punish them. Become more patient, my friend. Let her become a milliner. Let us become more generous. In pro-

portion as we acquire knowledge (indem wir gelehrter ꝛc.) we perceive that we know but little.

Sein, *to be.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Bin ich sicher?	Am I safe?
Du bist nicht sicher.	Thou art not safe.
Ist er zu Hause?	Is he at home?
Sie ist nicht zu Hause.	She is not at home.
Ist es Ihr Sohn?	Is it (he) your son?
Ist er nicht dein Freund?	Is he not thy friend?
Sind wir nicht berechtigt dazu?	Are we not entitled to it?
Ihr seid nicht freigebig.	You are not liberal.
Sind Sie mein treuer Nachbar?	Are you my faithful neighbor?
Sind die Kinder in der Schule?	Are the children at school?
Sie sind keine Schüler mehr.	They are no more scholars.

IMPERFECT.

War ich auf dem Lande, als Sie mich besuchten?	Was I in the country when you visited me?
Du warst nicht auf dem Lande, du warst in der Kirche.	Thou wast not in the country, thou wast at church.
War er nicht im Concerte, als sie da war?	Was he not at the concert, when she was here?
War es ein Wiesel, oder ein Eichhörnchen?	Was it a weasel, or a squirrel?
Wir waren noch bei Tische, als Sie nach Hause kamen.	We were yet at table, when you came home.
Ihr waret sehr ungeschickte Tölpel, als ihr zu mir kamet.	You were very awkward boobies when you came to me.
Sie waren ein verwegener Kämpfer, mein theurer Freund.	You were a very audacious champion, my dear friend.
Sie waren nicht besser daran, als wir.	They were not better off than we.

PERFECT.

Past Participle, gewesen, *been.*

Bin ich sein Lehrer gewesen?	Have I been his teacher?
Du bist sein Lehrer nicht gewesen.	Thou hast not been his teacher.
Ein Bauer ist ihr Retter gewesen.	A farmer has been her deliverer.
Ist sie nicht wohlthätig gegen die Armen gewesen?	Has she not been beneficent towards the poor?
Ist das Kind dessen gewiß gewesen?	Has the child been sure of it?
Wir sind niemals da gewesen.	We have never been here.

Seid ihr wirklich meine Freunde gewesen?	Have you, indeed, been my friends?
Sie sind gar nicht vorsichtig gewesen.	You (they) have not been careful at all.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war im Keller gewesen, ehe er kam.	I had been in the cellar, before he came.
Warst du nicht bekümmert gewesen?	Hadst thou not been distressed?
Er war so verlegen gewesen, wie ich.	He had been as embarrassed as I.
War sie nicht gütiger gewesen, als sie jetzt ist?	Had she not been kinder than she is now?
Wir waren in New-York gewesen, ehe du dort warst.	We had been at New-York, before thou wast there.
Waret ihr nicht zu Hause gewesen?	Had you not been at home?
Sie waren meine Zöglinge nicht gewesen.	They had not been my pupils.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde erfreut sein, Euch zu sehen.	I shall be glad to see you.
Wirst Du vollkommen befriedigt sein?	Wilt thou be perfectly satisfied?
Er wird kein aufmerksamer Schüler sein.	He will not be an attentive scholar.
Wird sie nicht liebenswürdig sein?	Will she not be amiable?
Es wird keine wohlriechende Blume sein.	It will not be a fragrant flower.
Wir werden nicht furchtsam sein.	We shall not be fearful.
Werdet ihr nicht meine Gäste sein?	Will you not be my guests?
Sie werden nicht in der besten Lage sein.	They will not be in the best situation.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde bis neun Uhr in Brooklyn gewesen sein.	Until nine o'clock I shall have been in Brooklyn.
Wirst Du dort gewesen sein.	Wilt thou have been there?
Er wird noch nicht dort gewesen sein.	He will not yet have been there.
Wird sie nicht in der Stadt gewesen sein?	Will she not have been in the city?
Wird es nicht zu kalt und regnerisch gewesen sein?	Will it not have been too cold and rainy?
Werden wir die Einzigen gewesen sein, die dort waren?	Shall we have been the only ones who were there?

Ihr werdet auf der Jagd gewesen sein.	You will have been a hunting.
Werden sie nicht demüthig genug gewesen sein?	Will they not have been humble enough?

RULE. The perfect and pluperfect of **sein**, *to be*, is formed in German by placing the past participle after its present, and imperfect tense; the first future by placing the infinitive (**sein**) after the present of **werden**, *to become;* and the second future by adding **gewesen sein** to the present tense of **werden.**

Exercise. We are not safe. Are they liberal? Were you at the concert? It was no squirrel, it was a weasel. Was she at table, when you saw her? He was an awkward booby. We were not better off than you. You were not careful at all. She was there twice. Had we not been in the cellar? She had been embarrassed when she saw us. Will he not have been perfectly satisfied? They will have been amiable towards him. She will not have been in the best situation. You will have been the only ones who have been there. I shall have been a hunting. Am I sincere? Is he not proud? She is not proud. Art thou here, or in the garden? Your sister was very tired. His life was too short. We were not at home when he was at our house. When I was with him, he was very sick. They were always enemies. Have they been humble? No, ma'am, they have not always been so (it). You have been the most careful of all. Have I been a useful member of human society (die menschliche Gesellschaft)? We all have once been young. We had been sick. He had not been with us. Had I not been the most innocent of all? Thou hadst not been the most innocent. Had she not been more amiable than her sister? They had not been the only ones. Will they be a hunting? Wilt thou not have been in the same situation? At eight o'clock it will have been dark. To-day fortnight we shall have been in Charlestown. His birthday is on the third of March. I avoid his intercourse: firstly, he detests me, and secondly, he despises my uncle. That is my only joy. Threefold is the step of time. Double the sum is as much again. I abide by it for ever. It is all the same to us. Show me that once more, if you please. We meet him every other day. How much is two and a half, four and a half, and six and three quarters? It wants ten minutes of

six. Your watch is too slow, it has stopped. What has become of the farmers? Did he not become very sad? Will it not prove true? They have turned very avaricious. The leaves grew yellow. The wood will not have become dry, the sun does not shine. Will they not have become dry? He thought I would become a dentist. We were afraid at that time already that it might grow cold. I should have become a tanner in thy place. Will they not have grown more polite? If we were in the country we would become healthier. They would have become historians long ago, if —

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Glaubt er nicht, daß ich zu Hause sei?	Does he not believe that I am at home?
Er behauptet, du seist mein Bruder nicht.	He pretends that thou art not my brother.
Wünschest du, daß er der deinige sei?	Dost thou wish him to be thine?
Glaubt ihr, daß diese Feder die ihrige sei?	Do you believe that this pen is hers?
Man glaubt, daß wir ehrliche Leute seien.	We are considered to be honest people.
Angenommen, daß ihr keine Betrüger seiet.	Suppose you are no impostors.
Vorausgesetzt, sie seien gehorsam.	Provided, they are obedient.

IMPERFECT.

Sie dachten, ich wäre ein Kaufmann.	They thought I was a merchant.
Wir dachten nicht, daß du so verschwenderisch wärest.	We did not think that thou wast so prodigal.
Glaubten Sie, daß er bei seinem Vater wäre?	Did you think he was with his father?
Ich dachte, sie wäre die schönste.	I thought she was the most beautiful. (Or: I took her to be the most beautiful.)
Er verlangte, daß wir sparsamer wären.	He required us to be more economical.
Er sagt, ihr wäret anmaßender, als sie.	He says, you were more arrogant than they.
Sie würden nicht so schläfrig sein, wenn sie nicht so müde wären.	They would not be so sleepy, if they were not so tired.

PERFECT.

Angenommen, ich sei dein Bruder gewesen?	Suppose (granting), that I had been thy brother?

Im Fall, daß du ein Metzger gewesen seist.	In case that thou hast been a butcher
Glauben Sie, daß es wahr gewesen sei?	Do you think it was (has been) true?
Obgleich ihr vorgebt, ihr seiet meine Freunde gewesen, so waret ihr sie doch nicht.	Though you pretend to have been my friends, yet you were not.
Können Sie glauben, daß sie hier gewesen seien?	Can you believe that they have been here?

PLUPERFECT.

Er wünscht, daß ich der Vorderste gewesen wäre.	He wishes that I might have been the foremost.
Wärest du wirklich der Erste gewesen, wenn ich dort gewesen wäre?	Wouldst thou, indeed, have been the foremost if I had been there?
Er wäre es gewesen.	He would have been.
Es wäre besser, wenn wir aufmerksamer gewesen wären.	It would be better, if we had been more attentive.
Wollte Gott, daß ihr bei uns gewesen wäret.	Would to God that you had been with us!
Wenn sie nicht so gütig gewesen wären, so würden wir nicht mehr sein.	If they had not been so kind, we would be no more.

FIRST FUTURE.

Er glaubt, ich werde nachstes Jahr ein General sein.	He believes that I shall be a general next year.
Glaubst du, daß du willkommener sein werdest, als ich?	Dost thou believe that thou wilt be more welcome than I?
Denkst du, daß er mit diesem Vorschlage nicht zufrieden sein werde?	Dost thou think that he will not be satisfied with this proposal?
Ich hoffe, ihr werdet damit zufrieden sein.	I hope you will be satisfied with it.
Vorausgesetzt, sie werden nicht furchtsam sein.	Provided they will not be fearful.

SECOND FUTURE.

Glaubst du, ich werde zweimal in New-Jersey gewesen sein, ehe er einmal dort war?	Dost thou believe I shall have been twice in New-Jersey, before he was there once?
Ich glaube nicht, daß du zweimal dort gewesen sein werdest.	I do not believe thou wilt have been there twice.
Aber ich glaube, sie werde zweimal dort gewesen sein.	But I believe she will have been there twice.
Obgleich sie bei uns gewesen sein werden, so werden sie uns doch nicht gesehen haben.	Though they will have been with us, they will not have seen us.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Würde ich ein partheiischer Schiedsrichter sein, wenn ich an deiner Stelle wäre?	Should I be a partial arbiter, if I were in thy place?
Du würdest kein partheiischer Schiedsrichter sein.	Thou wouldst not be a partial arbiter.
Er würde kein niedriger Schmeichler sein.	He would not be a mean flatterer.
Wir würden reicher sein, als ihr, wenn —	We should be richer than you, if —
Wenn ich nicht hier wäre, so würdet ihr ohne Hülfe sein.	If I were not here, you would be without help.
Meine Hunde würden die besten von allen sein, wenn —	My dogs would be the best of all, if —

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde ein treuer Unterthan gewesen sein, wenn —	I should have been a loyal subject, if —
Würdest du nicht der faulste Schüler gewesen sein, wenn er es nicht gewesen wäre?	Wouldst thou not have been the laziest scholar, if he had not?
Wir würden nicht so hartnäckig gewesen sein.	We should not have been so stubborn.
Würdet ihr so verstockt gewesen sein?	Would you have been so obdurate?
Würden sie nicht besser daran gewesen sein, als ihr?	Would they not have been better off than you?

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Seiend (or indem man ist), being.

IMPERATIVE.

Indem man ist, bildet man ein Glied der menschlichen Gesellschaft.	While we live we are (form) members of human society.
Sei ein artiges Kind.	Be (thou) a polite child.
Laßt ihn lustig sein.	Let him be joyful.
Laßt sie (es) nicht verstockt sein.	Let her (it) not be obdurate.
Laßt uns menschenfreundlich sein.	Let us be humane.
Seid nicht so partheiisch!	Do not be so partial.
Seien Sie edel in Ihrer Handlungsweise.	Be generous in your dealings.
Laßt sie nicht tückisch sein.	Let them not be malicious.

Exercise. Does he pretend that I am not at home? Does she believe these pens to be ours? Suppose we are im-

postors. He wishes that I might be a dyer. I thought this horse the dearest. They say he was more arrogant than she. In case that we had been badly (übel) off, we would have called you. Though she pretends to have been my friend, she is my enemy. We wish thou mightst have been the foremost. It would have been better. Would it not have been better? Would to God you had been more careful! Do you believe you shall be more welcome than we? Provided that he will not have been fearful. Wouldst thou be a partial arbiter? He would not be a partial arbiter, but you would (be one). Would they be mean flatterers? If we had not been here, you would have been without help. Would he have been a loyal subject? Let us not be stubborn. While we live, we are members of human society. He wishes me to be more virtuous. I wish thou mayst not be so malicious. We doubt of their being obdurate. I did not think that you were the last one. I wished they might be the first. It would be better, if we were less arrogant. What wouldst thou have done if thou hadst not been in the city? He is said to have been there. We are thought to be poor, and we are rich. Suppose thou hadst been in the theatre. Would to God that I had been more sincere! I wished that I had been among them I believe I shall be happy. Wouldst thou not be fearful? They would be in better circumstances, if they were diligent. We should not be so well off, if we were not diligent. Thou wouldest have been the first one. Would you not have been envious (neidisch)? Yes, sir, he would have been envious. Would they not have been more contemptible than we? Let him be just towards every body. Be contented with your situation. Do not be such a fool. Be silent.

Haben, *to have.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich habe einen Adler.	I have an eagle.
Hast du eine Lerche?	Hast thou a lark?
Hat er nicht einen Strauß?	Has he not an ostrich?
Sie hat einen Strauß.	She has an ostrich.
Das Eichhörnchen hat einen langen Schwanz.	The squirrel has a long tail.
Haben wir keine Rothkehlchen?	Have we no redbreasts?

Wie viel Kanarienvögel habt ihr?	How many canary-birds have you?
Die Papageien haben ein schönes Gefieder.	Parrots have a handsome plumage.

IMPERFECT.

Ich hatte einen Esel.	I had an ass.
Wie viele Schafe hattest du?	How many sheep hadst thou?
Er hatte vierzig Lämmer.	He had forty lambs.
Hatte sie ein Kalb und eine Kuh?	Had she a calf and a cow?
Es hatte ein Füllen.	It had a colt.
Hatten wir nicht zwanzig Hengste und fünf Stuten, als Sie bei uns waren?	Had we not twenty stallions and five mares, when you were with us?
Hattet ihr einige Maulesel?	Had you a few mules?
Sie hatten einige Maulesel.	They had a few mules.

PERFECT.

Franz, habe ich Seefische oder Flußfische gehabt?	Francis, have I had sea fish, or fresh water fish?
Du hast zwei Wallfische gehabt.	Thou hast had two whales.
Er hat keinen Aal gehabt.	He has not had an eel.
Hat sie Austern gehabt, die nicht gut waren?	Has she had oysters that were not good?
Wir haben Hummer und ihr habt Häringe gehabt.	We have had lobsters, and you have had herrings.
Haben sie Krebse gehabt?	Have they had crabs?

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte gestern noch keine Bienen gehabt.	I had not yet had any bees yesterday.
Hattest du eine Spinne gehabt?	Hadst thou had a spider?
Es ist ganz gewiß, daß er eine Spinne gehabt hatte, ehe er einen Krebs hatte.	It is quite sure that he had had a spider before he had a crab.
Wir hatten in jenem Hause keine Wanzen gehabt.	We had had no bed-bugs in that house.
Hattet ihr wirklich Flöhe (der Floh) gehabt?	Had you really had fleas?
Sie hatten welche gehabt.	They had had some.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde kein Wiesel und keinen Dachs haben.	I shall not have a weasel, or a badger.
Was wirst du haben?	What wilt thou have?
Wird er einen Fuchs oder einen Adler haben?	Will he have a fox or an eagle?

Sie wird weder einen Fuchs noch einen Adler haben.	She will have neither a fox nor an eagle.
Es wird'etwas Schönes haben.	It will have something beautiful.
Wie viele Kameele werden wir haben, wenn wir diese sechs noch kaufen?	How many camels shall we have, if we buy these six more?
Werdet ihr in acht Tagen einige Füchse haben?	Will you have a few foxes to-day a week?
Nein, mein Herr, sie werden keine haben.	No, sir, they will have none.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde zwei Raupen gehabt haben, ehe es Nacht wird.	I shall have had two caterpillars before it grows night.
Wirst du Seidenwürmer gehabt haben, wann —	Wilt thou have had silkworms, when —
Er wird einen Wurm, aber keine Seidenwürmer gehabt haben.	He will have had a worm, but no silkworms.
Wir werden schon Blutigel gehabt haben.	We shall have had leeches already.
Ihr werdet weder Blutigel noch Blindschleichen gehabt haben.	You will have had neither leeches nor slowworms.
Was werden sie (Sie) gehabt haben?	What will they (you) have had?

RULE. The perfect and pluperfect of **haben**, *to have*, are formed by adding the past participle to its present, and imperfect tense; and the first future by adding the infinitive (**haben**) and the second future by adding **gehabt haben**, to the present tense of **werden**.

Exercise. Should I be a partial arbiter? Let them be humane. I have no eagle. Hast thou not an ostrich? Have they no robins? How many canary-birds hadst thou? He had not any, he had six parrots, when I saw him. We had sixty-two lambs last year. Had you a colt? Had she good oysters? We have not had any whales. He had just sold a dozen of crabs. Do you like eels? We had had many lobsters before we had herrings. Do you see the spider? He had had one in his hand. They will have had fleas. A flea is an insect. I shall have had two camels before you see one. What worms have you? We have none, but we shall have silkworms. Hast thou a colt? What will she have? Will they have had goslings, before you have any? Hadst thou ever had a canary-bird? Yes, sir, I had one, when I was sick. Will they have had something good? They will not

have had anything good. She has had six pounds of sugar. She would be richer than he, if—. Wouldst thou have been stubborn? Should we not have been better off than they? Be generous in your dealings.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Er will, daß ich kein Vergnügen habe.	He does not wish me to have any pleasure.
Ich will Dir das Geld geben, damit Du genug habest.	I will give thee the money (in order) that thou mayest have enough.
Ist es möglich, daß er kein Geld habe?	Is it possible that he has no money?
Angenommen, daß sie Geld habe.	Suppose she has money.
Im Fall, daß er Recht habe.	In case that he may be right.
Ich zweifle, daß wir die Kraft haben, es zu thun.	I doubt of our having strength to do it.
Ich wünsche, daß ihr die Güte habet, mich zu rufen.	I wish you to have the kindness to call me.
Es ist möglich, daß unsere Verwandten viel Vermögen haben.	It is possible that our relations may have a good deal of property.

IMPERFECT.

Ich wollte, ich hätte mehr Zeit.	I wish to have more time.
Ich dachte nicht, daß Du so viele Thaler hättest.	I did not think thou hadst so many dollars.
Sie zweifelte, daß mein Vater Pferde hätte.	She doubted of my father's having horses.
Glaubten Sie, daß sie einen solchen Vorsatz hätte?	Did you believe her to have such an intention?
Wäre es nicht besser, wenn wir Geduld hätten?	Would it not be better if we had patience?
Wäre es möglich, daß ihr so viele Mühe damit hättet?	Can it be possible that you had so much trouble with it?
Ich glaubte, Sie hätten gar keine Mühe mit ihm.	I believed you would not have any trouble with him at all.

PERFECT.

Er sagt, daß ich sein Buch gehabt habe.	He says that I have had his book.
Er behauptet, daß du seine Tinte gehabt habest.	He maintains that thou hast had his ink.
Ist es wahr, daß er diesen Verlust gehabt habe?	Is it true that he has had this loss?
Ich glaube, wir haben den größten Verlust gehabt.	I believe we have had the greatest loss.
Ich hoffe, ihr habet kein Unglück gehabt.	I hope you may not have had a misfortune.

PLUPERFECT.

Es wäre besser gewesen, wenn ich keine Unkosten davon gehabt hätte.	It would have been better if I had not had any expenses with it.
Ich glaubte, du hättest keine Lust gehabt, es zu thun.	I thought that thou hadst no mind to do it.
Er hätte einen großen Verlust gehabt, wenn sein Vater nicht so vorsichtig gewesen wäre.	He would have met with a great loss if his father had not been so careful.
Wenn er nicht gekommen wäre, so hätten wir keine Gelegenheit gehabt, es zu verkaufen.	If he had not come, we might not have had an opportunity to sell it.
Es würde nicht hinreichend sein, daß ihr die Absicht gehabt hättet.	It would not be sufficient that you had had the intention.
Ich war erstaunt zu hören, daß sie in der großen Stube nicht Platz genug gehabt hätten.	I was astonished to hear that they had not had enough room in that large apartment.

FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

Ich glaube, ich werde einen sehr guten Platz haben.	I believe I shall have a very good place.
Ich hoffe, du werdest den allerbesten Platz nicht haben; aber er werde ihn haben.	I hope thou wilt not have the very best place, but that he will have it.
Angenommen, daß wir viel Vergnügen haben werden.	Suppose that we shall have much pleasure.
Ich glaube kaum, daß ihr die Dreistigkeit haben werdet.	I scarcely believe that you will have the boldness.
Man sagt, daß sie in diesem Jahre keine Ferien haben werden.	They are said to have no vacation (in) this year.
Ich wünsche, daß du das Vergnügen gehabt haben werdest, ehe er es gehabt haben wird.	I trust thou wilt have had the pleasure before he will have had it.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Wenn ich mehr Obstbäume hätte, würde ich mehr Obst haben.	If I had more fruit-trees, I should have more fruit.
Du würdest Geld genug haben, wenn du nicht so verschwenderisch wärest.	Thou wouldst have money enough, if thou wert not so prodigal.
Sie würde eben so viel Freude haben, wenn er nicht da wäre.	She would have just as much joy, if he were not here.
Würden wir nicht eben so viele Bücher haben, wenn wir so viel Geld hätten, wie er?	Should we not have just as many books, if we had as much money as he?
Ihr würdet eben so viele haben.	You would have just as many.
Sie würden aber nicht so viele haben, sie lesen nicht gern.	But they would not have as many, they are not fond of reading.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde acht Thaler gehabt haben, wenn ich nicht zwei verloren hätte.	I should have had eight dollars, if I had not lost two.
Würdest du sechs Ellen Tuch gehabt haben?	Wouldst thou have had eight yards of cloth?
Dieses Mädchen würde fünf Dutzend Hemden gehabt haben, wenn —	This girl would have had five dozen shirts, if —
Würden wir nicht dieselben Weitläufigkeiten gehabt haben, wenn er da gewesen wäre?	Should we not have had the same difficulties, if he had been here?
Nein, ihr würdet nicht dieselben Weitläufigkeiten gehabt haben.	No, you would not have had the same difficulties.
Würden Sie keine Geduld mit ihm gehabt haben?	Would they not have had patience with him?

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Habend, (or indem man hat,) *having.*

IMPERATIVE.

Er ist traurig, indem er kein Geld hat.	Having no money, he is sad.
Indem wir Vernunft haben, sind wir die edelsten Geschöpfe auf der Erde.	Having reason, we are the noblest creatures on the earth.
Laßt ihn das Messer haben.	Let him have the knife.
Laßt uns Muth haben.	Let us have courage.
Habet keinen Verdacht.	Do not have any suspicion.
Haben Sie keinen Kummer, mein theurer Onkel.	Have no care, my dear uncle.
Laßt sie ihren Theil haben.	Let them have their share.

Genug, *enough,* is better placed in German after the substantive.

Exercise. I wish that you may have much pleasure. Is it possible that she has not a single cent? In case that they are right. I doubted of her having a mind to do it. We wished you to have the kindness to call me. I heard that our relations had much property. They wish that we had had more time. Would it not be better if we had more patience? Is it (wäre es) possible that you should have so much trouble? Is it true that she has had my ink? We should have met with a great loss, if he had not been here. I do not believe him to have such an intention. Would you have had such an in-

tention? We scarcely believe that they would have had the boldness. Will he have had a badger, and two foxes? We should have more fruit if we had more fruit-trees. Should we have such difficulties? Having reason, we are the noblest creatures on the earth. Do not have any care. Do you believe that he has had two canary-birds? She is said to have four larks. She doubted of my mother's having fine goslings. Did you think he would have vacation every other month? I should have had several things. What do you think that he will have? I think he will have nothing good. Wouldst thou have no money if I had not given thee some? Nobody would have anything. Would they have so many dollars if they had not been so diligent? What wouldst thou have had with all thy care? Have patience, my dear brother. Let them not have the boldness. If they had become more sincere, they would speak the truth. He doubts of my becoming a glazier. He would have become an officer, if I had become a captain. What has become of him? Nothing good.

AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

Können, *can, to be able, to know, to be permitted, may.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich kann diese Arbeit machen.	I can do that work.
Kannst du dieselbe nicht machen?	Art thou not able to do it?
Gott kann Alles thun, was er will.	God can do all he pleases.
Sie kann es nicht thun.	She cannot do it.
Es kann sein.	It may be.
Können wir nicht Französisch?	Do we not know French?
Könnt ihr schreiben?	Do you know how to write?
Sie können nicht schreiben.	They don't know how to write.

IMPERFECT.

Ich konnte die Uebungen nicht machen.	I could not make the exercises.
Warum konntest du dieselben nicht machen?	Why couldst thou not make them?
Er konnte darüber nicht mehr sagen, als ich.	He was not able to say more about it than I.
Dieses konnte möglich sein, aber nicht jenes.	This might be possible, but not that.
Wir konnten gut antworten.	We were able to answer well.
Konntet ihr euer Gedicht nicht beginnen?	Did you not know how to begin your poem?
Sie konnten es nicht beginnen.	They did not know how to begin it.

PERFECT.

Past Participle, gekonnt, *been able, &c.*

Ich habe meine Aufgabe gekonnt.	I have been able to say my lesson.
Hast du sie gekonnt?	Didst thou know it?
Er hat Beides gekonnt.	He has known both.
Wir haben auch einmal das Reiten gekonnt.	We also once knew how to ride on horseback.
Habt ihr Französisch gekonnt?	Did you know French?
Sie haben nie Französisch gekonnt.	They never knew French.
Ich habe diesen Satz nicht verstehen können.	I was not (I have not been) able to understand that sentence.
Hast du nicht spielen können?	Hast thou not been permitted to play?
Sie hat die ganze Nacht arbeiten können, ohne müde zu werden.	She was able to work all the night without becoming tired.
Wir haben nicht reiten können.	We have not been able to ride on horseback.
Habt ihr rauchen und schnupfen können?	Were you permitted to smoke and snuff?
Nein, mein Herr, sie haben aber Tabak kauen können.	No, sir, but they were permitted to chew tobacco.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte das Tanzen gekonnt, ehe ich Tanzstunden hatte.	I knew (had known) how to dance before I took lessons in dancing.
Hattest du das Reiten schon gekonnt, ehe du nach Amerika kamst?	Didst thou know how to ride on horseback, before thou camest to America?
Ja, mein Herr, er hatte das Reiten schon gekonnt.	Yes, sir, he already knew how to ride.
Wir hatten es auch gekonnt, aber ihr hattet es nicht gekonnt.	We also knew how to do it, but they did not.
Hatten sie das Schreiben gekonnt, als sie sechs Jahre alt waren?	Did they know how to write when they were six years of age?
Hatte ich schreiben können, als ich sechs Jahre alt war?	Did I know how to write when I was six years of age?
Du hattest noch nicht schreiben können.	Thou didst not yet know how to write.
Hatte er es nicht lernen können?	Was he not able to learn it?
Wir hatten letzte Nacht nicht schlafen können.	We were not permitted to sleep last night.
Hattet ihr schlafen können?	Had you been permitted to sleep?

FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde im Laufe eines Jahres Deutsch können.	I shall know German in the course of a year.
Wirst du ihn bezahlen können?	Wilt thou be able to pay him?
Er wird es nicht erklären können.	He will not be able to explain it.
Werden wir das Zimmer heizen können?	Shall we be able to heat the room?
Ihr werdet es nicht heizen können.	You will not be able to heat it.
Sie werden ihn nicht überzeugen können.	They will not be able to convince him.
Wirst du deine Aufgabe gekonnt haben?	Wilt thou have been able to say thy lesson?
Ich werde sie gekonnt haben.	I shall have known it.

RULE. The perfect and pluperfect are formed by adding the past participle to the present and imperfect of **haben**, *to have*, but if **können** is preceded by another verb (infinitive), it keeps its original form.

Observation. This rule holds good in respect of all the following auxiliary verbs (of mood, defective verbs).

Exercise. I can read. Thou mayest eat. We are not able to work. Can you do that? They cannot do it, but they could do it. Did you know your lesson? I did know it (Perf. in Germ.). He could play and speak at the same time (zu gleicher Zeit). She could do it. They were able to write. We have not been able to perceive it. Have they been permitted to do it? I have not been permitted to do so. Have you been able to write a correct letter? Yes, sir, we have been able to do so. I shall be able to pay him to-morrow. Shall we not be permitted to see that camel? Will you know French in the course of a year? Wilt thou have been able to sprain his ancle? We shall not be able to nurse your mother. Will any body have known how to ride on horse-back, before he has taken riding-lessons?

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Er glaubt, ich könne meine Aufgabe.	He thinks I know my lesson.
Im Fall, daß du schweigen könnest.	In case thou shouldst be able to be silent.

Angenommen, er könne das nicht thun.	Suppose he is not able to do that.
Er hofft, daß ihr ihn besuchen könnet.	He hopes you will be able to visit him.

Observation. The first and third persons of the plural are like those of the indicative.

IMPERFECT.

Zweifelte er, daß ich dort sein könnte?	Did he doubt that I would be able to be there?
Er zweifelte, daß du dort sein könntest.	He doubted of thy being able to be there.
Könnte er es thun, wenn ich ihm helfen würde?	Would he be able to do it if I should help him?
Wir könnten es sicherlich thun.	We could, certainly, do it.
Ich hätte nicht geglaubt, daß ihr es thun könntet, aber ich hätte geglaubt, daß sie es thun könnten.	I would not have believed that you could do it, but I would have believed that they could do it.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Er sagt, ich habe das Tanzen gekonnt, aber du habest es nicht gekonnt.	He says that I have known how to dance, but that thou hast not.
Man sagt, er habe gut tanzen können.	He is said to have been able to dance well.
Ist es wahr, daß ihr nicht habet tanzen können?	Is it true that you have not been able to dance?
Wir hätten tanzen können, wenn wir dort gewesen wären.	We might have danced if we had been there.
Ihr hättet auf den Ball gehen können, wenn ihr eure Aufgaben gemacht hättet.	You might have gone to the ball if you had done your lessons.
Ich hätte die Thür nicht öffnen können, wenn er mir seinen Schlüssel nicht gegeben hätte.	I could not have opened the door if he had not given me his key.
Sie hätten nicht tanzen können, wenn sie keine Tanzstunden gehabt hätten.	They would not have been able to dance, if they had not had dancing lessons.

Observation. The compound tenses are to be formed by the learner himself, as the variation of the perfect and pluperfect, on account of number and person, are made in the auxiliary verb, **haben**, and those of the futures and conditionals only in the auxiliary verb, **werden**, *to become.*

Let the learner bear in mind, that the English *might* (or *could*) — *have*, is to be translated into German by **hätte — können.**

Exercise. Do you not believe that I can write? Yes, sir, I believe that thou canst write. Would he be able to do it, if —. Would she know how to read, if she had not had reading-lessons? No, sir, she would not be able to do so. That may be. It is the same to me. Would they have been able to write a letter, if they had not had any ink? I might have told (it) you. I believe I shall be able to go there, but I do not believe thou wilt be able to go there. Should we not be able to sleep, if they were not so noisy (lärmend)? He would not be able to heat the room, if he had no wood. We had not believed that they could do it, but we had believed that you could do it. Who knocks at the door? I should have had eighty dollars if I had not given him two. Should we not have had the same difficulties, if he had been here? It is the best you have ever had. What sort of fish do you sell, sea-fish, or fresh water-fish? He sells oysters. We should be richer than you if —. They pretend to have been my friends, yet they were my enemies. She says you were more arrogant than he.

Dürfen, *to dare, to be permitted, to be allowed, may.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich darf das Pferd nicht halten.	I am not permitted to hold the horse.
Darfst du es halten?	Art thou permitted to hold it?
Er darf den Versuch nicht machen.	He is not allowed to make the experiment.
Wir dürfen Alles thun, was wir können.	We may do all we are able (to do).
Ihr dürft es wissen.	You may know it.
Dürfen sie es wissen?	May they know it?

IMPERFECT.

Ich durfte auf den Ball gehen, aber ich konnte nicht, ich war krank.	I was allowed to go to the ball, but I was not able, I was sick.
Durftest du es unternehmen?	Wert thou allowed to undertake it?
Er durfte es nicht unternehmen.	He was not allowed to undertake it.
Wir durften es ihr nicht zeigen.	We were not permitted to show it to her.
Durftet ihr das euren Freunden nicht sagen?	Were you not permitted to tell (that) your friends?
Sie durften es nicht sagen.	They were not permitted to tell.

Past Participle, gedurft, *been permitted.*

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Hast du spielen dürfen?	Hast thou been permitted to play?
Ich habe gedurft.	I have been permitted to do so.
Ich habe spielen dürfen.	I have been permitted to play.
Habt ihr nicht sprechen dürfen?	Have you not been permitted to speak?
Nein, mein Herr, wir haben nicht gedurft.	No, sir, we had not been allowed to do so.
Hatten sie singen dürfen, als sie ihre Arbeit beendigt hatten?	Had they been allowed to sing when they had finished their work?
Ja wohl, sie hatten gedurft, und ich habe nicht singen dürfen; ist das recht?	Certainly, they had been allowed to do so, and I was not permitted to sing; is that right?
Werde ich meinen Vater fragen dürfen?	Shall I be allowed to ask my father?
Werdet ihr es ihm sagen dürfen, daß seine Mutter todt ist?	Will you be permitted to tell him that his mother is dead?
Ihr werdet es ihm nicht sagen dürfen; er ist selbst sehr krank.	You will not be permitted to tell him so; he is very sick himself.

Observation. The English *may*, expressing a permission, is to be translated into German by dürfen, and, expressing a possibility, by können.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Im Fall, daß ich hier bleiben dürfe, will ich dir es geben.	In case that I am permitted to stay here I will give it to thee.
Ist es möglich, daß du ihn nicht fragen dürfest?	Is it possible that thou art not allowed to ask him?
Angenommen, sie dürfe nicht auf den Ball gehen.	Suppose she is not permitted to go to the ball.
Glaubet ihr, daß ihr spielen dürfet? ihr dürft nicht spielen.	Do you believe that you may be permitted to play? you are not permitted to play.

Observation. The first and third persons plural are like those of the indicative.

IMPERFECT.

Wenn ich mit ihm sprechen dürfte, so würde ich es ihm sagen.	If I were permitted to speak to him, I should tell him so.
Was für ein Vergnügen es sein würde, wenn du hier bleiben dürftest.	What pleasure it would be, if thou wert allowed to stay here!

Es dürfte vielleicht wahr sein.	It might perhaps be true.
Dürften wir es thun, wenn sie da wären?	Might we do it, if they were here?
Ich glaubte, ihr dürftet es unter keiner Bedingung thun.	I believed you might not do so under any condition.
Ich habe vergeblich gehofft, daß sie mich besuchen dürften.	I have hoped in vain, that they would be permitted to pay me a visit.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Ich glaubte, er habe nicht mit Uhren handeln dürfen.	I thought that he was not permitted to deal in watches.
Kannst du mir sagen, ob sie dies haben thun dürfen?	Canst thou tell me, whether they have been permitted to do that?
Ich hörte, daß sie es nicht gedurft haben.	I heard they were not permitted to do so.
Hätte ich das Bild sehen dürfen?	Would I have been permitted to see the picture?
Du hättest es sehen dürfen, wenn du deine Pflicht erfüllt hättest.	Thou wouldst have been permitted to see it, if thou hadst fulfilled thy duty.
Hätte er gedurft?	Would he have been permitted to see it?
Denken Sie, ich werde auf die Jagd gehen dürfen?	Do you think I shall be allowed to go a hunting?
Deine Mutter sagte, du würdest nicht ohne deines Vaters Erlaubniß auf die Jagd gehen dürfen.	Thy mother said thou wouldst not be allowed to go a hunting without the permission of thy father.
Würden sie Wein trinken dürfen, wenn sie welchen hätten?	Would they be allowed to drink wine if they had any?
Er würde keinen trinken dürfen, er hat das Fieber.	He would not be allowed to drink any, he has a fever.

Exercise. I am not permitted to show him that picture. Are you allowed to pay me a visit? I am not allowed to do so. She is not permitted to tell me, but she is permitted to tell you. He was not allowed to come into her house. We are not allowed to show it to you, my mother will show it to you herself. Have you been permitted to write to us? They have not been permitted to do so. Hast thou not been permitted to lend me some money? I have not been permitted to do so. Wilt thou be permitted to stay here? We were not permitted to make that experiment. He may know it. Were you permitted to undertake such a work? Would you give it to him, if you were allowed to speak to him? We have hoped in vain that they might be permitted to visit us. In case that I am not permitted to stay here, I will tell you now.

I think thou art not allowed to read, thy eyes are too weak Suppose that he may not leave the room, who can bring us our stick and hat? May you stay here? Would we be allowed to drink beer, if we were in good health? You would be allowed to drink some. I believe he was permitted to drink champagne when he was sick. You are said to have been allowed to take that paper, but he had not been permitted to do so. Would they have been allowed to make such a noise, if you had been there? I should not be permitted to play, if my uncle were here. Wouldst thou be permitted to go to Charles, if thy father were not there?

Müssen, must, to be obliged, to be forced, to be compelled, to be under the necessity.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich muß heute arbeiten.	I must work to-day.
Du mußt nicht so laut sprechen.	Thou must not speak so loud.
Muß er es bezahlen?	Is he obliged to pay it?
Nein, sie muß es bezahlen.	No, she must pay it.
Wir müssen einen neuen Anzug haben.	We are in need of (must have) a new suit of clothes.
Müßt ihr die Stadt verlassen?	Are you obliged to leave the city?
Sie müssen ihre (Ihre) Reise aufschieben.	They (you) must delay their (your) journey.

IMPERFECT.

Ich mußte meine Eltern davon benachrichtigen.	I was obliged to inform my parents of it.
Mußtest du einen neuen Mantel haben?	Hadst thou occasion for a new cloak?
Er mußte das Zeugniß unterzeichnen.	It was necessary for him to sign the certificate.
Mußten wir nicht die ganze Sache erzählen?	Were we not forced to relate the whole of the matter?
Mußtet ihr es nicht suchen?	Were you not compelled to look for it?
Sie mußten die Sache untersuchen.	They were obliged to inquire into the matter.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Participle, gemußt, *been compelled, &c.*

Hast du ihn beschützen müssen?	Hast thou been obliged to protect him?

Ja, Madam, ich habe gemußt.	Yes, ma'am, I have been obliged to do so.
Habt ihr eure Arbeit beendigen müssen?	Have you been under the necessity of finishing your work?
Wir haben dieselbe beendigen müssen.	We have been compelled to finish it.
Hatten sie schweigen müssen, als ihr Vater kam?	Had they been compelled to be silent, when their father came?
Ja, mein Fräulein, sie hatten dann schweigen müssen.	Yes, ma'am, (miss,) they had then been compelled to be silent.
Hattest du mit ihr gehen müssen?	Hadst thou been compelled to go with her?
Ich hatte gemußt.	I had been compelled to do so.
Sie werden den Ochsen wieder verkaufen müssen.	They will be obliged to sell the ox again.
Mein Advokat wird meine Sache vertheidigen müssen.	My lawyer will be obliged to defend my cause.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Mein Lehrer sagt, ich müsse fleißiger sein.	My teacher says, I must be more diligent.
Ich sagte dir, daß du nicht so neugierig sein müssest.	I told thee that thou must not be so inquisitive.
Er fragt, wann er es beendigen müsse?	He asks when (at what time) he is to finish it?
Im Fall, daß wir noch einen Brief schreiben müssen, können Sie uns helfen.	In case we should be obliged to write one more letter, you may help us.
Ich glaubte, ihr müsset zu Hause bleiben.	I thought you were obliged to stay at home.
Müssen sie wirklich nach Hause gehen?	Are they, really, obliged to go home?

IMPERFECT.

Ich müßte es thun, wenn meine Tante da wäre.	I should be forced to do it if my aunt were here.
Müßtest du es thun?	Wouldst thou be obliged to do it?
Nein, mein Herr, mein Bedienter müßte es thun.	No, sir, my servant would be obliged to do it.
Müßten wir nicht die Stadt verlassen, wenn wir kein Geld hätten?	Would we not have to leave the city if we had no money?
Ihr müßtet die Stadt nicht verlassen, ihr habt ja Freunde hier.	You would not be compelled to leave the city, you have friends here.
Sie müßten nicht betteln gehen, wenn sie fleißig gewesen wären.	They would not be forced to go a begging, if they had been industrious.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Wenn sie fleißig gewesen wären, hätten sie nicht betteln müssen.	If they had been industrious they would not have been compelled to go a begging.
Glaubst du, daß er habe schweigen müssen?	Do you believe that he has been forced to be silent?
Sie fragte, wann sie es beendigt haben müsse?	She asked when she would be required to have finished it?
Ich glaube, wir werden es bis morgen beendigt haben müssen, or	I believe we shall be forced to have finished it by to-morrow, or
Ich glaube, wir müssen es bis morgen beendigt haben.	I believe we shall have to finish it by to-morrow.
Ich würde die Papiere unterzeichnen müssen, wenn ich dort wäre.	I should be obliged to sign the documents if I were there.
Würdet ihr nicht die ganze Nacht spielen müssen, wenn ihr spielen könntet?	Would you not be compelled to play all the night, if you were able to play?
Wir würden nicht die ganze Nacht spielen müssen.	We should not be compelled to play all the night.
Würde er nicht auf der Violine und sie auf dem Piano spielen müssen?	Would he not be obliged to play on the violin, and she on the piano?

Exercise. Must I work to-day? Thou must not work to-day, it is Sunday. Has she occasion for a new dress? Must we leave the room? You are not obliged to delay your journey. Wast thou forced to inform him of it? He was compelled to relate the whole story. Were we not compelled to inquire into the matter? They were obliged to look for their books. What have you been forced to do? I was forced to bring him an umbrella. Had they been forced to finish their work by three o'clock? Yes, ma'am, they had been forced to do so. He will be obliged to go with her. He would be compelled to be silent, if his uncle would be here. Will she have occasion for a new gown (das Kleid), if she will visit him? He said that I must not be so inquisitive. Thy aunt says, thou must be more attentive. Provided I must pay him a visit, you must stay here. Were I not compelled to do it, if my brother had not done it? Would you not have been forced to leave the city, if you had no friends? We should have been forced to do so. Thou wouldst be forced to work, if thou hadst no money. Suppose he should be forced to pay his debts, who will lend him money? We should be obliged to lend him some. She asked when she must have finished the work? Tell her that hers must be done by twelve o'clock. Would you have been allowed to see it, if you had

performed your duty? I thought they would not be allowed to do it on any condition (unter keiner Bedingung). Had they been permitted to sing when they had finished their work? He said that I had known how to dance, though I had had no dancing-lessons. I shall know German in the course of a year. I could not do my work, I was sick. Let him have patience. Having reason, we are the noblest creatures on the earth. This girl would have had many friends, if she had been more amiable.

Sollen, *shall, ought to, to be to, to be said, to be supposed, to be admitted.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Soll ich es thun, oder nicht?	Shall I do it or not?
Du sollst es nicht thun.	Thou shalt not do it.
Er soll Ihnen Gesellschaft leisten.	He is to bear you company.
Was soll das heißen?	What is the meaning of that?
Sie soll und muß gehorsam sein.	She shall and must be obedient.
Wir sollen besser schreiben.	We are to write better.
Ihr sollt Theologie studiren.	You are to study theology.
Sie sollen nach Boston gehen.	They are to go to Boston.

IMPERFECT.

Solltest du ein Gärtner werden?	Wert thou to be a gardener?
Nein, ich sollte Metzger werden.	No, I was to become a butcher.
Er sollte nicht um vier Uhr, sondern um drei Uhr dort sein.	He was not to be there at four o'clock, but at three o'clock.
Welches Buch sollten wir gestern lesen?	Which book were we to read yesterday?
Ihr solltet die Geschichte der amerikanischen Revolution lesen.	You were to read the history of the American revolution.
Sollten sie singen als ihr zu Hause waret?	Were they to sing when you were at home?

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Participle, gesollt, *been obliged, &c.*

Hast du das Glas zerbrechen sollen?	Wast thou to have broken the glass?
Ja, mein Herr, ich habe gesollt, aber ich habe es nicht gethan.	Yes, sir, I was to have done it, but I have not done it.
Hattet ihr arbeiten sollen?	Ought you to have been at work?
Nein, wir hatten nicht gesollt, aber wir haben gearbeitet.	No, we were not to do so, but we have worked.

Wirst du dieses Buch lesen sollen (or müssen)?	Wilt thou have to read this book?
Ich werde es lesen sollen, aber ich lese es nicht.	I shall be required to read it, but I (shall) not read it.
Was werden sie dort machen sollen?	What will they have to do there?

Observation. The English "*shall*" denoting necessity or obligation, must be translated into German by sollen, in other cases (denoting futurity) by werden.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Er sagt, ich solle mich in Acht nehmen.	He says, I shall take care of myself.
Ich hörte, du sollest ein guter Musiker sein.	I heard (that) thou art considered to be a good musician.
Schreibt ihm, er solle nicht auf mich warten.	Write to him (that) he needs not wait for me.
Sollen wir falsches Geld haben?	Are we supposed to have counterfeit money.
Ihr sollet sie gut pflegen.	You are said to nurse her well.
Sie sollen im Garten sein.	They are said to be in the garden.

IMPERFECT.

Ich sollte sie besser pflegen.	I ought to nurse her better.
Solltest du an der Reihe sein?	Should it be your turn?
Er sollte krank sein und war auf dem Balle.	He was said to be sick, and was at the ball.
Sollte sie etwa kommen, so sagen Sie ihr, ich sei nicht zu Hause.	Should she happen to come, tell her I am not at home.
Man sollte meinen, er könne zufrieden sein.	One should think he might be contented.
Sollten wir nicht zusammen speisen?	Were we not to dine together?
Er glaubt, ihr solltet einen Spaziergang mit ihm machen.	He thought you were to take a walk with him.
Wenn Sie ihm etwa begegnen sollten, so danken Sie ihm für seine Güte.	If you should happen to meet him, thank him for his kindness.
Wenn die Sachen so stehen sollten, so sind wir Alle verloren.	If the affairs should stand thus, we all are lost.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Ich hätte es ihm nicht sagen sollen.	I ought not to have told him so.
Der Doktor hätte euch zur Ader lassen sollen.	The doctor ought to have bled you (to bleed, zur Ader lassen).
Sie sollen Amerika verlassen haben.	They are said to have left America.
Warum hätten sie ihn bestrafen sollen?	Why should they have punished him?

Du hättest es nicht thun sollen.	Thou shouldst not have done it.
Wir hätten ihn nicht beleidigen sollen.	We ought not to have offended him.
Sie hätten vor mir da sein sollen.	They ought to have been here before me.
Ich hoffe nicht, daß ich sie werde bestrafen sollen.	I hope not that I shall have to punish her.

Let the learner bear in mind, that "*ought to have*" is to be translated into German by „hätte — sollen".

Exercise. Shall I warm thy feet? Thou mayest do so. She is to bear me company. What is the meaning of that? What shall he study? Shouldst thou become an optician? What story wast thou to relate? They were to feed my oxen, but they pretended that they were not allowed to do so. Ought we to spare him? He should take care of himself. Ought he to have smoked a segar? He ought not to have done it. Ought you to have laughed at her? I ought not to have done so. Wilt thou have to dress her? We were to follow him, but we had forgotten it. What are you to do there? He is said to be an excellent writer. If that should be so, you must leave my house. Am I to read? Thou art to play with her. It is said to be lost. What shall we do? Such people should be punished. One should think he was (were) stronger. If you should happen to see him, inform him of my arrival (die Ankunft). She was to stay with the children. We should not stay at home. You ought not to have left him to his fate. They ought to have praised such a man. You ought not to have offended him. I have occasion for a new suit of clothes. Will you be obliged to protect him? Art thou allowed to go to the theatre? You ought to be more careful. She is said to be sick. Why ought they to punish him? The physician ought to have bled them. If thou shouldst happen to meet him, present my compliments to him.

Wollen, *will, to be willing, to intend, to want (wish for), to be inclined, disposed, &c.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich will diesen Abend noch zwei französische Briefe schreiben.	I intend to write two more French letters this evening.

Was willst du?	What dost thou want?
Er will Birnen kaufen.	He wants to buy pears.
Wir wollen es nicht gewähren.	We are not willing to grant it.
Wollt ihr es selbst thun?	Do you intend to do it yourselves?
Wollen sie (Sie) den Punsch kosten?	Do they (you) wish to taste the punch?

IMPERFECT.

Ich wollte, ich könnte gut Deutsch sprechen.	I wish I could speak German well.
Wolltest du es heute beendigen?	Didst thou intend to finish it to-day?
Er wollte es fertig machen, aber er konnte nicht.	He wanted to finish it, but he was not able.
Wollten wir es ihr nicht schicken?	Did we not intend to send it to her?
Wolltet ihr es ihm sehen lassen?	Were you willing to let him see it?
Sie wollten soeben antworten.	They were going to answer.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Participle, **gewollt,** *been willing.*

Hast du deine Aufgabe machen wollen?	Hast thou been willing to prepare thy lesson?
Ich habe gewollt, aber ich habe nicht gekonnt.	I have been willing, but I have not been able.
Habt ihr mir den Gefallen thun wollen?	Have you been willing to do me that favor?
Wir haben gewollt, aber wir haben nicht gedurft.	We have been willing, but we have not been allowed.
Er hatte mich besuchen wollen, aber das Wetter war zu schlecht.	He (had) intended to visit me, but the weather was too bad.
Ich werde deinen Rock niemals haben wollen.	I shall never wish for thy coat.
Werden sie es uns erklären wollen?	Will they be willing to explain it to us?

Observation. The English *"will,"* expressing an intention, a desire, must be translated into German by **wollen,** in other cases (expressing future time) by **werden.**

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Er glaubt, ich wolle ihn schlagen.	He thinks I intend to beat him.
Ich hörte, du wollest nach Frankreich gehen; ist es wahr?	I heard (that) thou wast (art) willing to go to France; is it true?
Angenommen, daß er nach Frankreich gehen wolle, so müssen wir hier bleiben.	Supposing that he intends going to France, we shall be obliged to stay here.
Er fragte, ob ihr seine Pferde füttern wollet?	He asked whether you were willing to feed his horses.

The first and third persons plural of the present tenses, and also the imperfect, are formed like those of the indicative.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Sagen Sie ihm, daß ich ihn habe besuchen wollen.	Tell him that I (have) intended to visit him.
Wissen Sie, warum er es nicht habe thun wollen?	Do you know why he was not willing to do it?
Man sagt, er habe es nicht thun wollen, weil man ihn nicht hat bezahlen wollen.	He is said not to have intended to do it, because they were not willing to pay him.
Hättest du es unter dieser Bedingung thun wollen?	Wouldst thou have intended to do it upon those terms?
Ich hätte meinen Antheil geben wollen, wenn sie den ihrigen gegeben hätten.	I should have been willing to give my share, if they had given theirs.
Wir hätten unsern Antheil ebenfalls haben wollen, wenn ihr den eurigen erhalten hättet.	We should likewise have wished for our share, if you had received yours.
Wir wollen Geduld haben!	Let us have patience!

Exercise. Do you intend to visit me next summer? Yes, sir, I intend to visit you. We intend to taste the beer. What does he want to say? I was willing to tell him (of it), but he would not hear it. They intended to finish their work to-day. We were going to answer, when she became angry. He was going to begin her letter. Did she wish to go into the country? She wished it, but she was not allowed to do so. Did you wish for that book? I did not, (wish for it,) I have got it myself. Did you intend to learn French? Yes, ma'am, I (have) intended to do so. You may beat me, provided I am not willing to be obedient. You tell me that you will never flatter her. Is it possible that they intended to leave the city? Suppose we wish for fish, shall we get any? You may get many. I should be unhappy if he were not willing to do it. We would do so, if we were able. She would like to buy many things if she had money. Let us have courage. Is it true that thou wishest for some wine? I might have had wine if I had wished for some. Would you be allowed to drink much beer if you had a fever? Would we be permitted to do it if they were here? I could have heated the room if I had had wood. He thinks that I know my lesson. That may be. He requires us to be more economical. I should

have become a jeweller in thy place. Would it have become better under these circumstances? She doubts of your becoming a locksmith.

Mögen, *may, to like, to be inclined.*
Lieber mögen, *to like better, to prefer.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich mag kein Fleisch (essen).	I do not like (to eat) meat.
Magst du das Thier sehen?	Do you like to see the animal?
Er mag lachen oder weinen, ich verbiete es ihm.	He may laugh or weep, I forbid (it) him.
Sie mag so reich sein, als sie will, sie muß sterben.	Let her be ever so rich, she must die.
Wir mögen jetzt speisen.	We are inclined to dine now.
Mögt ihr den Punsch nicht kosten?	Are you not inclined to taste the punch?
Sie mögen ihn nicht kosten.	They are not inclined to taste it.

IMPERFECT.

Möchtest du keinen Spaziergang machen?	Didst thou not like to take a walk?
Nein, ich möchte lieber zu Hause bleiben, als einen Spaziergang machen.	No, I preferred to stay at home to taking a walk.
Was mochte er thun?	What was he inclined to do?
Wir mochten in's Theater gehen, aber wir haben nicht gedurft.	We were inclined to go to the theatre, but we were not allowed.
Mochtet ihr zu mir kommen?	Did you like to come to me?
Sie mochten nicht kommen.	They did not like to come.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Participle, gemocht, *been inclined.*

Hast du den Brief nicht schreiben mögen?	Hast thou not been inclined to write the letter?
Ich habe nicht gemocht.	I have not been inclined.
Hat er dich nicht bezahlen mögen?	Has he not been inclined to pay thee?
Haben sie nicht arbeiten mögen?	Did they not like to work?
Sie haben nicht gemocht, aber sie haben gemußt.	They did not like, but they were forced to do so.
Haben sie schlafen mögen, als du bei ihnen warst?	Have they been inclined to sleep when thou wert with them?

Was wird er hören mögen, sein Lob, oder seinen Tadel?	What will he like to hear, (his) praise, or censure?
Er wird weder sein Lob, noch seinen Tadel hören mögen; denn er kennt seine starken und schwachen Seiten.	He likes to hear neither praise nor censure, for he is sensible of his good and of his bad qualities.

Observation. The English *may*, or *can*, denoting liberty to do anything, is to be translated into German by mögen, when it denotes a permission by dürfen, and when it denotes a possibility, generally, by können.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Ist es wahr, daß du bei ihm bleiben mögest?	Is it true that thou wouldst stay with him?
Glauben Sie nicht, daß ich bei ihm bleiben möge.	Do not believe that I would stay with him.
Saget ihm, er möge es thun oder nicht, so bleiben wir Freunde.	Tell him, whether he do it, or not, we shall remain friends.
Angenommen, daß ihr arbeiten möget, so seid ihr mir willkommen.	Provided, you are inclined to work, you are welcome to me.

The first and third persons plural are like those of the indicative.

IMPERFECT.

Ich möchte wohl Etwas davon haben.	I should like to have something of it.
Möchtest du einen Schluck Wein nehmen?	Wouldst thou like to drink (take) a draught of wine?
Er möchte lieber in's Wirthshaus gehen.	He had rather go to an inn.
Möchtet ihr ihn nicht lieber besuchen, als zu Hause bleiben?	Had you not rather visit him than stay at home?
Wir möchten viel lieber zu Hause bleiben, als unsern Oheim besuchen.	We had much rather stay at home than visit our uncle.
Möchten sie lieber zu mir kommen, als zu ihm?	Would they rather come to me than to him?
Sie möchten lieber gar nicht kommen.	They would rather not come at all.

Observation. Let the learner bear in mind, that "*had rather*, or *would rather*," is to be translated into German by „möchte (st, n, t) — lieber."

Exercise. Let it be three or four o'clock, I must dine. Let him be ever so rich, he is a wicked fellow. You may be ever so polite, you are not polite enough. You may stay here or go to my father's, it is the same to me. They do not wish any more. Was he inclined to buy that dog? He liked to hear something new. Did you like to tell it him? Did she like to drink my tea? What didst thou like to see? I should have liked to see the president. Have you not been inclined to visit our old friend? I was not. Had they been inclined to speak to me before I was here? Yes, sir, they had, but they were not allowed to do so. He may speak if he will. I heard he did not like to go to school. Why do you think that I do not like to go to school? Do you never like to work? Washington's birth-day is on the 22d of February. What wouldst thou like to become? He would like to have many German books. He would rather have English books. We had rather be in Wisconsin than in Illinois. Wouldst thou rather work than be idle? He would rather play the gentleman than anything else. Had they rather be poor than rich? They had much rather be rich than poor. I had much rather be a merchant than a farmer. He does not like either to hear himself praised or blamed, for he is sensible of his good and of his bad qualities. Had you rather drink wine than water? You may laugh or weep, I forbid you this. Didst thou not like to take a walk? Are they willing to explain it to us? They were going to explain it to us. Should it be our turn? They ought to nurse us better. The physician ought to have bled her. He is admitted to be a good writer. He was said to be dead, and I saw him yesterday. They are to bear us company.

Lassen, *to let, to leave;* it is expressed in English in different ways, viz, by: *to allow to, to permit to, to suffer to; to order to, to command to, to cause to; to have, to get, to make.*

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich lasse ihn gehen (or in Ruhe).	I let (leave) him alone.
Warum lässest du deinen Bruder nicht schlafen?	Why dost thou not suffer thy brother to sleep?
Er lässt uns jeden Feiertag unsern Oheim besuchen.	He permits us to see our uncle every holy-day.
Lässt sie dich nicht spielen?	Does she not allow thee to play?

Das läßt sich nicht thun.	That cannot be done.
Es läßt sich Niemand hören, noch sehen.	There is nobody to be seen or heard.
Wir lassen den Kutscher anspannen.	We order the coachman to put the horses to.
Lassen Sie ihn schweigen.	Cause him to be silent.
Sie lassen sich rasiren.	They are getting shaved.

IMPERFECT.

Ich ließ mir die Haare schneiden.	I had my hair cut.
Ließest du es ihn zwei Mal schreiben?	Didst thou make him write it twice?
Er ließ sich einen Zahn ausziehen.	He had a tooth drawn.
Wir ließen unser Haus von Ihrem Sohne bauen.	We got our house built by your son
Ließet ihr den Arzt holen?	Did you send for the physician?
Sie ließen mir sagen, daß sie es nicht hätten thun können.	They sent me word that they were not able to do it.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Participle, gelassen, *left, &c.*

Habe ich nicht meinen Regenschirm bei dir gelassen?	Have I not left my umbrella with thee?
Du hast ihn nicht bei mir gelassen.	Thou hast not left it with me.
Er hat einen neuen Rock machen lassen.	He has had a new coat made.
Hat sie diese Strümpfe stricken lassen?	Has she had these stockings knit?
Sie hat sie nicht stricken lassen, sie hat dieselben selbst gestrickt.	She has not had them knit, she has knit them herself.
Wir haben ihn rufen lassen.	We have sent for him.
Hattest du es ihm sagen lassen, daß ich krank war?	Didst thou send him word that I was sick?
Ich hatte es ihm sagen lassen; aber er konnte nicht kommen, er war selbst krank.	I had sent him word, but he could not come, he was sick himself.
Er will seinen Fußboden malen lassen, und sie will den ihrigen mit Teppich belegen lassen.	He will get his floor painted, and she will get hers carpeted.
Wir werden es ihm schriftlich sagen lassen.	We shall write him word.
Werdet ihr die Möbeln verkaufen lassen?	Will you have the furniture sold?
Sie werden dieselben nicht verkaufen lassen.	They will not have it sold.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Is formed like that of the indicative, but a is not changed into ä in the second and third persons singular; du lassest and er lasse, instead of du lässest, er läßt.

IMPERFECT.

Er glaubte, ich ließe ihn arretiren.	He believed I should have him arrested.
Ließest du mich jetzt spielen, wenn ich hernach arbeiten würde?	Wouldst thou permit me to play now, if I should work afterwards?
Er ließe uns gehen, wenn wir ihn in Ruhe ließen.	He would leave us alone, if we would leave him alone.
Ließet ihr ihn arbeiten, wenn er wollte?	Would you permit him to work, if he were willing?
Sie ließen sich die Zähne nicht von mir ausziehen.	They would not have their teeth drawn by me.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Ist es möglich, daß du ihn habest arretiren lassen?	Is it possible that thou hast had him arrested?
Ich glaube, ich habe ihn nicht arretiren lassen.	I believe I have not had him arrested.
Ich sagte nicht, daß er es gethan habe, sondern daß er es habe thun lassen.	I did not say that he had (has) done it, but that he had (has) had it done.
Hättet ihr ihn gehen lassen, wenn ich bei euch gewesen wäre?	Would you have left him alone if I had been with you?
Wir hätten ihn sicherlich in Ruhe gelassen, wenn Sie bei uns gewesen wären.	We would surely have left him alone if you had been with us.
Hätten Sie das Pferd nicht beschlagen lassen, wenn ein Hufschmied da gewesen wäre?	Would you not have had the horse shod, if a farrier had been here?
Ich hätte es beschlagen lassen.	I should have had it shod.
Würde der Richter den Verbrecher hinrichten lassen, wenn er die Macht hätte?	Would the judge cause the criminal to be executed, if he had the power?
Er würde ihn hinrichten lassen.	He would have him executed.
Würdet ihr euch die Haare von mir schneiden lassen?	Would you have your hair cut by me?
Würdest du ihren Sohn bestrafen lassen, wenn er ungehorsam wäre?	Wouldst thou have their son punished if he were disobedient?
Ich würde ihn bestrafen lassen.	I would have him punished.

Exercise. I do not send for the physician. Dost thou let him alone? He makes him read aloud. That cannot be done. There was nobody to be seen or heard. I order the landlord to bring a bottle of wine. Do you get it written? Yes, sir, we get it written. Do not suffer him to play. The general ordered the enemies to be killed. I left him alone. He sent me word that you have looked for me. Did you get your pantaloons made? They got shaved, and she had a tooth drawn. I left my handkerchief with you. Did you allow him to play all the day? He has ordered the coachman to put the horses to. I have had my books bound (binden, to bind). We have made him wait a long time. Have you had your hair cut? They have not allowed him to see it. Will you not have your floor carpeted? Has he had the criminal arrested? He says that I do not let him alone. Is it true that the judge causes the criminal to be executed? They are said to have caused him to be executed. We would have them act in this manner, and not in that manner. Would you allow her to go to the theatre if she were industrious? He said that we had not done it, but that we had had it done. I am to write a letter. Shall I lend it to him? We should treat him as our own child. I am not allowed to pay him a visit. I might have told you of it. That may be the case. You will be obliged to sell it again. Let them not make such a noise. We ought not to have informed her of it. I should not have sent my sister, I should have sent my mother. The president is said to be here. She was to stay at home. The servant may go. Did the dyer intend to do it himself? Does he know French? We will have our house built by your son. Our optician is admitted to be a good musician. Can it be your turn? If you should happen to meet him, tell him that I shall visit him next Wednesday, the fourth of this month.

INFINITIVE OF THE REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS (INSEPARABLE).

Ich will es dir zeigen.	I will show it to thee.
Er mag mich loben oder tadeln.	He may praise, or censure me.
Kann er nicht lesen?	Does he not know how to read?
Er kann lesen, schreiben und rechnen.	He knows how to read, write, and cipher.
Er hat das Pferd füttern müssen.	He was obliged to feed the horse.

Soll der Schneider deinen Rock ändern?	Shall the tailor alter thy coat?
Ließet ihr ihn so lange warten?	Did you make him wait so long?
Ich fühle meinen Puls schlagen.	I feel my pulse beat.
Er hat ihn kratzen fühlen.	He has felt him scratch (or scratching).
Wir heißen dich nicht gehen.	We do not desire thee to go.
Freunde, haben wir ihn lügen heißen?	Friends, have we bid him lie?
Wo sind Ihre Kinder?	Where are your children?
Sie helfen dem alten Manne das Holz tragen.	They help the old man carry the wood.
Habt ihr ihm arbeiten helfen?	Have you helped him work (*or*, did you assist him at his work)?
Wen höre ich singen?	Whom do I hear sing (*or* singing?)
Du hast meine Schwester singen hören.	Thou hast heard my sister sing.
Ich lehre ihn schreiben.	I teach him to write.
Er wird den Taubstummen sprechen lehren.	He will teach the deaf and dumb to speak.
Wollen Sie Italienisch schreiben und sprechen lernen?	Will you learn to write and speak Italian?
Wir sehen ihn nicht kommen.	We do not see him come.
Habt ihr ihn fallen sehen?	Have you seen him fall?
Sie bleibt liegen, sitzen, stehen.	She continues lying, sitting, standing.
Wir fahren heute nicht spazieren.	We do not take an airing to-day (in a carriage).
Wir fanden ihn im Bette liegen.	We found him lying in bed.
Werdet ihr ihn schlafen finden?	Will you find him asleep?
Ich gehe jeden Abend spazieren.	I take a walk every evening.
Er geht betteln.	He goes a begging.
Ihr habt gut sprechen.	It is easy talking for you.
Wir legen uns schlafen.	We lay ourselves down to sleep (*or* we go to rest).
Sie machen mich lachen.	You make me laugh.
Ich reite spazieren.	I take a ride on horseback.
Sie thut den ganzen Tag Nichts, als essen und trinken.	She does nothing but eat and drink the whole day.
Ich hatte die Ehre, ihn zu sprechen.	I had the honor of speaking to him.
Er hat Lust, einen Spaziergang zu machen.	He has a mind to take a walk.
Werden wir das Vergnügen haben, Sie morgen bei uns zu sehen?	Shall we have the pleasure of seeing you with us to-morrow?
Ich hatte die Ehre, ihm einen guten Morgen zu wünschen.	I had the honor to wish him a good morning.

Ich hoffe, Sie wohl zu finden.	I hope to see (find) you well.
Ich bin erfreut, Sie wohl zu sehen.	I am glad to see you well.
Sei so gut die Thüre zu öffnen.	Be (thou) kind enough to open the door.
Ich kam bloß, um mich nach Ihrem Befinden zu erkundigen.	I merely came to inquire after your health.
Es ist Zeit zu Bette zu gehen.	It is time to retire.
Sie hat ein Zimmer zu vermiethen.	She has a room to let.
Carl ist fähig zu studiren.	Charles is able to study.
Liebet die Tugend, um glücklich zu sein.	Love virtue in order to be happy (or: that you may be happy).
Ich habe Ihnen Etwas zu sagen.	I have something to tell you.
Er wünscht zu essen, zu trinken und zu schlafen.	He wishes to eat, drink, and to sleep.
Dieses Pferd ist nicht zu bändigen; or das nicht zu bändigende Pferd.	This horse is not to be tamed.
Die Gesundheit ist nicht mit Gold zu bezahlen, or die nicht mit Gold zu bezahlende Gesundheit.	Health is not to be bought (paid) with gold.
Das Kind ist zu bestrafen; or das zu bestrafende Kind.	The child is to be punished (corrected).
Eine reichliche Erndte ist zu hoffen; or die zu hoffende reichliche Erndte.	A plentiful harvest is to be hoped for.
Geben ist seliger, als Nehmen.	It is more blessed to give than to receive.
Rathen ist oft leichter, als Helfen.	It is often easier to advise than to assist.
Gott fürchten ist besser, als alles Wissen.	To fear God is better than all knowledge.
Ich bin des Wartens müde.	I am tired of waiting.
Sie findet kein Vergnügen am Tanzen.	She does not take pleasure in dancing.
Ein solcher Tölpel ist zum Studiren unfähig.	Such a booby is incapable of studying.

Rule 1st., The infinitive of all German verbs, both regular and irregular, terminates in **n**, and generally in **en**; but in a few instances in **eln** and **ern**.

2d., The German infinitive is to be placed at the end of a phrase, whether preceded by **zu** or *not*, and consequently the infinitive, preceding the past participle in English, follows it in German.

3d., When two or more infinitives, depending on each other, follow one another, the last in English is the first in German.

4th., The infinitive is never preceded by zu, if accompanied by one of the seven auxiliary verbs of mood, or by one of the following verbs, viz.:

fühlen, *to feel.*	lehren, *to teach.*
heißen, *to desire, to bid.*	lernen, *to learn.*
helfen, *to help, assist.*	sehen, *to see;*
hören, *to hear.*	

they retain, like the auxiliary verbs of mood, the form of the infinitive in the compound tenses, if preceded by another infinitive.

The infinitive also rejects the „zu", if accompanied by one of the following verbs, in particular phrases —but they take the past participle in the compound tenses—viz.:

bleiben, *to remain, to continue.*	haben, *to have*
fahren, *to drive (in a carriage).*	legen, *to lay.*
finden, *to find.*	liegen, *to lie.*
gehen, *to go.*	machen, *to make, to do.*
	reiten, *to ride (on horseback).*
	thun, *to do.*

5th., In all other cases „zu" precedes the infinitive, and may, if relating to a noun, be formed into an adjective by adding d (de), *to it.* (See p. 133, Rule 3.)

6th., All the infinitives of the German language may be employed as substantives (of the neuter gender); in the English language the participle present is generally used for it.

Exercise. Will you lend my brother twenty-five dollars? I am not able to lend him so much. Sir, may I ask you where Mr. Turner lives? Are we allowed to pay him a visit? I saw him weep. Has she seen him go to church? We have not seen him go to church, we have seen him go to the theatre. He teaches his children to read. We do not learn to read and write Italian, we learn to speak German. Have you learned to wait? They do not assist him in writing, but they have assisted him in ciphering. I hear my father speak. Has he heard the president speak? I bid him go. Do you desire him to come? We shall remain in bed to-day. He may continue to remain here. Will you take an airing to-day? I will not take an airing, but I

will take a walk. He found his purse lying under the chair. You have easy laughing. She always makes me laugh. They do nothing but talk (schwatzen) the whole day. I have the honor to wish you a good morning, a good day, a good evening, a good night. What have you to drink? I have nothing to drink. Have you a glass to drink your wine? What have you to do at home? Have you time to make me a coat? They have occasion for a new suit of clothes. She has a mind to go to the ball. I am glad to see you well. Has he a mind to break my knife? That pen cannot be used. He is tired of sitting. She never becomes tired of dancing. It is more blessed to give than to receive. Walking and working is healthy. To do good is the duty of every man. He takes pleasure in studying, and they take pleasure in hunting. To fear the Lord is better than all knowledge. I wish to know her and to speak to her.

THE CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Ich wohne in der vierten Straße.	I live, or I am living in Fourth-street.
Ich wohne ja in der vierten Straße.	I do live in Fourth-street.
Wohnst du in der Bowery?	Dost thou live in the Bowery?
Du lehrst ihm nichts Gutes.	Thou teachest him nothing good.
Ich glaube an Gott.	I believe in God.
Mache ich es falsch?	Do I make it wrong?
Du machst es richtig.	Thou makest it right.
Er wohnt nicht in New-York, er wohnt in Brooklyn	He does not live in New-York, he lives in Brooklyn.
Er hört nicht gut.	He does not hear well.
Braucht er das Geld?	Does he want the money?
Braucht er das Geld nicht?	Is he not in want of the money
Sie strickt.	She is knitting.
Sie folgt mir nicht.	She does not obey me.
Glaubt sie dir nicht?	Does she not believe thee?
Das Kind fragt nach seinem Vater.	The child asks for its father
Es braucht ein Buch.	It is in want of a book.
Man fühlt die Kälte.	One feels the cold.
Sagt man so?	Do people say so?
Ich füttere mein Pferd.	I feed my horse.
Fütterst du das deinige nicht?	Dost thou not feed thine?

Ich zweifele nicht daran. / Ich bezweifele es nicht.	I do not doubt it.
Zweifelt er daran?	Does he doubt it?
Ich folgere so, und du folgerst so.	I conclude thus, and thou concludest thus.
Aendert der Schneider unsere Weste?	Does the tailor alter our waistcoat?
Nein, ich ändere sie.	No, I alter it.
Athmet er noch?	Is he still breathing?
O, Freund! leider athmest du zum letzten Male.	O, friend! alas, thou breathest for the last time! (or, thou art breathing thy last).
Du rechnest sehr gut, und ich rechne schlecht.	Thou cipherest very well, and I cipher badly.
Ich schade deinem Bruder nicht, aber du schadest ihm.	I do thy brother no injury, but thou dost.
Schadet es dir zu arbeiten?	Does it hurt thee to work?
Was redest du?	What art thou speaking?
Er redet sehr wenig.	He speaks very little.
Warum achtest du unsere Tante nicht?	Why dost thou not esteem our aunt?
Ich achte sie ja!	I do esteem her!
Antwortest du auf diesen Brief? or beantwortest du diesen Brief?	Dost thou answer that letter?
Sie antwortet nicht darauf. / Sie beantwortet ihn nicht.	She does not answer it.
Miethest du dieses oder jenes Haus?	Dost thou hire this house, or that?
Ich miethe dieses.	I hire this one.
Unser Vetter vermiethet jenes nicht.	Our cousin does not let that one.
Du hustest (husten) sehr stark.	Thou coughest very violently.
Ich huste nicht, sie hustet.	I am not coughing, she is coughing.
Er verwüstet Alles.	He destroys every thing.

PLURAL.

Wir wohnen auf dem Lande.	We are living in the country.
Schaden wir ihm dadurch?	Do we injure him by it?
Wir antworten ihm nicht.	We do not answer him.
Ihr buchstabirt sehr gut.	You spell very well.
Warum redet ihr so wenig?	Why do you speak so little?
Wohnt ihr nicht in jenem Hause?	Are you not living in that house?
Sie verleugnen es.	They deny it.
Tadeln sie (Sie) ihren (Ihren) Bruder?	Do they (you) censure their (your) brother?
Nein, sie (Sie) rechtfertigen ihn.	No, they (you) justify him.
Sie arbeiten nicht, sie spielen.	They are not working, they are playing.

RULE 1st., The first person singular is formed by dropping the final **n** of the infinitive of all those regular verbs which do not end in **eln** or **ern**; the latter change this **n** into **e**.—The second and third persons singular are formed by changing the final **en** of the infinitive, or the final **n** of those verbs ending in **eln, ern, men,** or **nen** into **ſt** and **t**. The same is done in the case of those verbs, the root of which ends in **d, t, th, ſt.** The first and third persons plural are like the infinitive, and the second person plural like the third person singular.

2d., The Germans do not use an auxiliary in the negative or interrogative form of the verb. Let the learner bear in mind, that the three forms in English, *I live, I do live, I am living, he teaches, he does teach, he is teaching, &c.*, have the same form in German, **ich wohne, er lehrt.** For the "*do*" in the second form, „**ja**" is sometimes used.

Exercise. I do not believe thee. I do tell him the truth. I am playing, and he is learning. I do doubt it. Dost thou follow him? Thou dost not answer well. Thou dost teach him nothing good. Why dost thou flatter him? He asks me. He does not hurt you. Does the tailor alter thy coat? He feed shis horse. Is your daughter spelling? She is not spelling, she is dancing. Do you hear anything? We do not hear anything. We doubt it. What do you send him? Do you not smoke (räuchern) the meat? We do not smoke the meat. Do they smoke (rauchen) tobacco? They do not smoke, but they chew tobacco. They do not deny their being here.

IMPERFECT.

Ich arbeitete bis neun Uhr.	I worked until nine o'clock.
Räucherte ich das Fleiſch nicht?	Did I not smoke the meat?
Ich zweifelte an der Wahrheit dieſer Erzählung, als ich ſie hörte.	I doubted the truth of that narration when I heard it.
Du drohteſt ihm ſehr ernſthaft.	Thou threatenest him very seriously.
Kauftest du das Pferd von ihm?	Didst thou buy that horse of him?
Verſpielte er all' ſein Geld.	Did he lose all his money in playing?
Sie verſetzte ihr letztes Bett.	She pawned her last bed.

Es dauerte nur eine halbe Stunde.	It lasted only half an hour.
Man bemerkte es nicht gleich.	One did not perceive it immediately (or: It was not immediately perceived).
Blutete ihre Nase?	Was her nose bleeding?
Wir beteten zu Gott, dem Allmächtigen, und er beschützte uns.	We prayed to God, the Almighty and he protected us.
Beantworteten wir seinen Brief nicht, als wir bei Ihnen waren?	Did we not answer his letter when we were with you?
Bezahltet ihr eure Schulden, als ihr Geld hattet?	Did you pay your debts when you had money?
Sie verleugneten Alles.	They denied every thing.
Sie reizten uns gar nicht.	They did not provoke us at all.
Versetzten sie ihre Kleider?	Did they pawn their clothes?

RULE. The imperfect is formed by changing the **en** of the infinitive, or **n** in the case of those verbs which end in **eln, ern, men,** or **nen,** and of those the root of which ends in **d, t, th,** or **st** into **te,** for the first and third persons singular, and into **ten,** for the first and third persons plural; the second person singular is formed by adding **st,** and the second person plural by adding **t** to the first person singular.

Exercise. I did not pawn my pantaloons. Did I provoke you? You did not provoke me. Did he deny it? He denied it. We perceived the danger (die Gefahr). His nose was bleeding. They worked last evening until nine o'clock. She was snuffing (schnupfen) when I came into his room, and he was smoking. How long did it last? It lasted two hours. Did you threaten to kill me? At what time did you expect him? They expected him at seven o'clock. Did the tailor alter our coat? He did not alter it. He ciphered very well when he was at my school. I wished him a good night. It is more blessed to give than to receive. I am tired of waiting. A plentiful harvest is to be hoped for, i. e., there is reason to expect a plentiful harvest. Love virtue that you may be happy. I am glad to see you well.

PERFECT.

Ich habe es gehört.	I have heard it.
Hast du es nicht gehört?	Hast thou not heard it (didst thou, &c.)?

Ich habe nicht auf seinen Brief geantwortet.	I have not answered his letter.
Er hat mir ohne Zeugnisse getraut.	He has trusted me without witnesses.
Hat er in Brooklyn gewohnt?	Has he lived in Brooklyn?
Hat sie es geglaubt?	Did she believe it?
Sie hat nicht gestrickt, sie hat gespielt.	She was not knitting, she was playing.
Man hat ihr die Wahrheit gesagt.	She has been told the truth.
Hat dein Vater einen Ochsen geschlachtet?	Has thy father killed an ox?
Wir haben gewünscht, daß er kommen möge.	We have wished that he might come.
Habt ihr dem Fremden die Batterie gezeigt?	Did you show the stranger the battery?
Sie haben ihm dieselbe nicht gezeigt.	They have not shown it to him.
Unsere Brüder haben nicht mit goldenen Uhren gehandelt.	Our brothers did not deal in gold watches.
Hast du den Brief beantwortet?	Hast thou answered the letter?
Ich habe seinen Brief beantwortet und meine Schulden bezahlt.	I have answered his letter, and paid my debts.
Hast du meinen Entschluß bezweifelt?	Didst thou doubt my resolution?
Er hat dich nicht entehrt.	He has not dishonored you.
Wir haben den Feind entwaffnet.	We have disarmed the enemy.
Wo habt ihr ihm ein Denkmal errichtet?	Where did you erect him a monument?
Die Tochter der Herodias hat das Haupt Johannes, des Täufers, ertanzt.	The daughter of Herodias won the head of John the Baptist by dancing.
Dieser Bauplatz hat mir gehört.	This lot has belonged to me (this lot was mine).
Haben Sie nicht getraut (getrauen), ihn zu besuchen?	Did you not venture to visit him?
Nun ist es Nacht, und ihr habt eure Zeit vertändelt.	Now it is night, and you have trifled away your time.
Haben unsere Verwandten ihre Gärten verschönert?	Have our relations embellished their gardens?
Die Sterne sind über den ganzen Himmel zerstreut.	The stars are scattered over the whole heaven.
Haben Sie Theologie studirt?	Have you studied theology?
Nein, mein Herr, ich habe Astronomie studirt.	No, sir, I have studied astronomy.
Ist der Verbrecher arretirt?	Is the criminal arrested?

Rule 1st., The perfect is formed by adding the past participle to the present tense of **haben**, *to have* (or **sein**, *to be*); and the past participle of the regular verbs is

formed by prefixing the syllable **ge** to the third person singular of the present; but those verbs which begin with one of the inseparable particles (**be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer** or **wider**), and those ending in **iren**, do not admit of the prefix **ge**.

2d., The perfect is to be used in German if there is no relation between the action expressed, and another.

Exercise. I have shown you my purse, I have no money with me. I have planted (pflanzen) my trees to-day, and he (has) planted his yesterday. The watchman (der Wächter) dispersed the mob (der Pöbel). One has filled the glass to the brim (bis an den Rand füllen). Have you finished your work? They have not arrested the criminal. Why have you trifled away your time in this manner? She has gained a gold ring by dancing. He ventured to pay us a visit. What I said to you, is true. Have you waited a long time for me? How long have they lived in Broadway? She knitted me a pair of stockings. Have we not erected a beautiful monument to him? You have dishonored my old father. How much did they pay for that coat? They (have) paid twenty-five dollars for it. Did you threaten to punish him?

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte grade meinen Vorrath erschöpft, als eine neue Ladung ankam.	I had just exhausted my stock when a new cargo arrived.
Wir waren Alle erschöpft.	We were all exhausted.
Wie viel hattest du den Monat verdient, ehe du Gesell wurdest?	How much hadst thou earned a month before thou becamest a journeyman?
Hatte er seinen Unwillen nicht geäußert (äußern), ehe er uns bemerkte?	Had he not expressed his displeasure before he perceived us?
Ich hatte meine Meinung noch nicht erklärt, als sie ankamen.	I had not yet declared my opinion when they arrived.
Du hattest deinen Freund nicht vertheidigt, ehe ich ihn vertheidigte.	Thou hadst not defended thy friend before I defended him.
Er hatte das Licht noch nicht geputzt, als es auslöschte.	He had not yet snuffed the candle when it went out.
Hatten Sie Ihren Ruf in New-York begründet?	Had you established your reputation in New-York?
Sie hatten meine Kleider nicht gereinigt, sie hatten dieselben nur gewärmt.	They had not cleaned my clothes, they had only warmed them.

Hattet ihr noch daran gezweifelt, als es euch zeigte?	Did you still doubt it, when I showed it to you?

RULE. The pluperfect is formed by adding the past participle to the imperfect of haben or (sein).

Exercise. He had already established his reputation when I visited him in the year 1844. Hadst thou warmed my coat before I wanted it? He had not cleaned it. He was exhausted. We had expressed our joy, before we saw her. The soldiers had bravely defended the city. How much had you earned at the end of this week? We had earned only six dollars. Hadst thou embellished thy garden before last spring? When you had done blaming her, she laughed again. She had pawned her bed, and even her stockings. Had he expressed his displeasure before he saw you? The daughter of Herodias won the head of John the Baptist by dancing. Whose lot is that? It is mine. God can do every thing. You may know it. If we were permitted to speak to him, we should tell him of it. As we grow older, we become more experienced. Something is more than nothing, but less than all. What news does he relate? The hand-writing of this scholar is handsomer than that of the other.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde euch morgen das schöne Bild zeigen.	I shall show you the fine picture to-morrow.
Ich werde keine Bekanntschaft mit diesem gottlosen Manne machen.	I shall not make (any) acquaintance with this wicked man.
Wirst du mich begünstigen?	Wilt thou favor me?
Wirst du deine Meinung nicht erklären?	Wilt thou not declare thy opinion?
Er wird euch nicht entschuldigen.	He will not excuse you.
Die Freiheit wird dich begeistern.	Liberty will fill thee with enthusiasm.
Wir werden euch nicht vor den Richter fordern.	We shall not summon you before the judge.
Werden wir morgen diese Bäume verpflanzen?	Shall we transplant these trees to-morrow?
Werdet ihr nicht die ganze Flasche leeren?	Will you not empty the whole bottle?
Sie werden ihre Bemühungen verdoppeln.	They will redouble their efforts.
Werdet ihr das Glas bis an den Rand füllen?	Will you fill the glass to the brim

RULE. The first future is formed by adding the infinitive to the present tense of **werden**, *to become.*

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde seinen Brief beantwortet haben, wann Sie wieder kommen.	I shall have answered his letter when you come again.
Wirst du bis morgen früh deine Aufgabe gelernt haben?	Wilt thou have learned thy lesson by to-morrow morning?
Ich werde sie nicht gelernt haben.	I shall not have learned it.
Wirst du deine Arbeit bis heute Abend nicht beendigt haben?	Wilt thou not have finished thy work by this evening?
Er wird sie nicht beendigt haben.	He will not have finished it.
Wird sie es nicht geglaubt haben?	Will she not have believed it?
Sie wird es nicht geglaubt haben.	She will not have believed it.
Dieses Vergnügen wird am längsten gedauert haben.	That pleasure will have had its day the longest.
Wir werden deinen Vater gefragt haben, ehe du ihn fragst.	We shall have asked thy father before thou askest him.
Werdet ihr bis acht Uhr die Kühe gefüttert haben?	Will you have fed the cows by eight o'clock?
Bis wann werden sie die Strümpfe gestrickt haben?	By what time will they have done knitting the stockings?
Sie werden dieselben bis morgen Abend gestrickt haben.	They will have done knitting them by to-morrow evening.
Werden Sie diese Aufgabe gelehrt und gelernt haben, ehe ich sie lerne?	Will you have taught and learned this lesson before I learn it?

RULE. The second future is formed by adding the past participle with **haben** (infinitive) to the present tense of **werden**, to become; let the learner bear in mind, that the infinitive is preceded in German by the past participle.

Exercise. When will you kill the ox? I will kill it to morrow. Wilt thou not redouble thy efforts? He will not redouble them. Will she show him the museum? She will not show it to him, but the child will (show it to him). Will they summon our aunt before the judge? They will not summon her before the judge. Hast thou emptied the bottle? No, sir, but I shall empty it. We shall not excuse your impertinence (**die Unverschämtheit**). She will not tell my uncle, she will tell my mother. Will they deny it? They will not believe that I am here. It will last until to-morrow morning. They will not alter our waistcoat. When will you have done

planting the trees? Will they have heard the secret? No, sir, they will not have heard it. What will she have said to her mother? She will not have said anything to her. I shall not have lost my money by play before thou playest. I shall have paid for the cow before thou comest to my house. Will he have excused us? Will the watchman have dispersed the mob so that you can go home? That is to be blamed. He will not have done his work, when thou sendest him the money. Will they have fetched their tools (das Werkzeug) by this evening?

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Sagen Sie ihm, daß ich es nicht glaube.	Tell him that I do not believe it.
Er glaubte, ich mache seine Arbeit umsonst.	He thought I was doing his work gratis.
Angenommen, du bezahlest ihn nicht, so wird er dich verklagen.	Suppose thou dost not pay him, he will prosecute thee.
Er zweifelte nicht, daß du deine Pflicht erfüllest.	He did not doubt of thy fulfilling thy duty.
Ich wünsche, daß der Stallknecht die Pferde füttere.	I wish the groom to feed the horses.
Man glaubte, es dauere länger.	It was thought it would last longer.
Ist es wahr, daß wir nicht wagen, es ihm zu sagen?	Is it true that we do not venture to tell him of it?
Verdienen sie nicht, daß wir sie achten?	Do they not deserve that we should esteem them?
Er behauptete, ihr wohnet in diesem Hause.	He maintained that you were living in that house.
Vorausgesetzt, ihr brauchet Geld, so will ich euch welches leihen.	Provided you are in want of money, I will lend you some.
Meine Eltern wünschen, daß ihre Kinder Italienisch lernen.	My parents wish their children to learn Italian.

RULE. The subjunctive present of the regular verbs is formed in German like the indicative present; but the third person singular is like the first person singular, and the second person singular and plural never drop the **e** before the **st** and **t**.

Let the learner revise the rules on the subjunctive Page 83.

IMPERFECT AND FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Würden Sie mich loben, wenn ich meine Aufgabe lernte?	Would you praise me, if I should learn my lesson?

Ich würde euch nicht loben, es ist eure Pflicht sie zu lernen.	I should not praise you, it is your duty to learn it.
Ich tadelte euch, wenn ihr sie nicht lerntet.	I might censure you if you did not learn it.
Würdest du uns tadeln, wenn wir spielten?	Wouldst thou censure us if we were to play?
Ich glaube, dein Vater tadelte uns nicht, als wir spielten.	I believe thy father did not censure us when we were playing.
Ist es möglich, daß sie alle ihre Kleider versetzte?	Is it possible that she pawned all her clothes?
Wir leugneten es nicht (or wir würden es nicht leugnen), wenn er es nicht verleugnete.	We should not deny it, if he would not deny it.
Er glaubte, daß ihr Theologie studirtet, als ihr auf der Universität waret.	He thought you were studying theology when you were at the university.
Im Fall, daß sie auf diese Weise folgerten (or folgern würden), sagen Sie ihnen, daß ich ebenfalls so gefolgert und falsch gefolgert habe.	In case that they should thus infer, tell them that I have made the same inference, and that I have inferred wrong

RULE. The imperfect subjunctive of the regular verbs is like the imperfect indicative, and the first conditional is formed by adding the infinitive to the imperfect subjunctive of **werden (ich würde ꝛc.).**

PLUPERFECT AND SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Wollte Gott, daß ich ihn nicht gereizt hätte.	Would to God I had not provoked him!
Du hättest ihn nicht gereizt (or du würdest ihn nicht gereizt haben), wenn er dich nicht gereizt hätte.	Thou wouldst not have provoked him, if he had not provoked thee.
Er hätte ihr sein Geschenk gezeigt (or er würde ihr sein Geschenk gezeigt haben), wenn sie ihm das ihrige gezeigt hätte.	He would have shown her his present, if she had shown hers to him.
Er behauptet, wir hätten gestern nicht gearbeitet.	He asserts that we had not worked yesterday.
Fragen Sie ihn, ob es möglich wäre, daß wir so viel Geld verdient hätten, wenn wir nicht gearbeitet hätten?	Ask him whether it would be possible that we should have earned so much money, if we had not worked?
Ihr würdet eben so viel verdient haben, wenn ihr gearbeitet hättet.	You would have earned just as much, if you had worked.
Würden sie (Sie) es gehört haben, wenn ich nicht so laut geredet hätte?	Would they (you) have heard it, if I had not spoken so loud?

Sie hätten es nicht gehört, wenn du nicht so laut geredet hättest.	They would not have heard it, if you had not spoken so loud.

RULE. The pluperfect is formed by adding the past participle to the imperfect subjunctive of haben; and the second conditional by adding the past participle with haben (infinitive) to the imperfect subjunctive of werden.—Let the learner bear in mind, that the infinitive in German is preceded by the past participle.

Observation. As the perfect, and first and second future of the subjunctive mood, are like those of the indicative, merely changing the indicative of haben, and werden, into the subjunctive, we present, at once, the following exercises, without giving any examples.

Exercise. He thinks I speak ill (übel) of him, when I tell you a story. Who said that I am not working? I cannot say that thou art working, if thou art playing. Is it possible that he wants more iron? He is said not to believe it. She is said to censure every body. I hoped he might love me, but he does not love me. I heard that your father expected you. Provided you will not transplant my flowers, I will assist you in transplanting yours. Our friends are said to defend us. If he were more honest, I should trust (in) him. Our groom was thought to be feeding our horses when he pawned his coat. Wouldst thou not believe it, if I should tell you? She would believe it, she is convinced that I speak nothing but the truth. I believe thy father killed the calf when I was there. What do you think we have earned a month? Would you not admire him, if he were to finish that work? Would they not punish me, if I should betray his secret? If I were to betray it, they would punish me. I thought that thou hadst lost no money in playing, and that he had lost one dollar. Is it true that the soldiers have bravely defended the city? I heard that he had waited for me, is it true? Provided you have earned ten dollars, you may give me two. I should have exhausted my stock, if I had sold all these goods. Wouldst thou not have laughed at him, if he had sold them so cheap to you? We should have expressed our displeasure if you had expressed yours. If I had expressed mine, would you have expressed yours? They would not summon me before the judge, if I had not sum-

moned them before the judge. He believes I shall not guess (errathen) it, and I have already guessed it, but it is possible that thou wilt not guess it. Tell him that our friends will not regard his commands. Will you have done it when I shall be here again? I believe they will not have done it. I wish he may have answered that letter before next Wednesday. Say your lesson, that we may hear whether you have learned it or not. If he were here, I should tell him. If they had answered, we should have heard it. Would our teacher praise us, if we made our lessons without (any) mistakes? He would praise us, for he does not like to censure; he would rather praise. Ask him, whether it would be possible that we should have earned so much money, if we had not worked?

IMPERATIVE MOOD AND PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ehre Vater und Mutter.	Honor thy father and thy mother.
Rede stets die Wahrheit.	Speak (thou) always the truth.
Laßt ihn auf mich warten. / Er soll auf mich warten.	Let him wait for me.
Laßt sie ihre Arbeit erst vollenden.	Let her first finish her work.
Das Kind soll sich in Acht nehmen, ihn zu beleidigen.	Let the child take care not to offend him.
Laßt uns lernen. / Wir wollen lernen.	Let us learn.
Laßt uns ihn nicht reizen. / Wir wollen ihn nicht reizen.	Let us not provoke him.
Arbeitet fleißiger.	Labor more diligently (*plur.*).
Bezahlt nicht Alles.	Do not pay for every thing.
Arbeiten Sie nicht so sehr.	Do not work so hard (*sing.*).
Trauen Sie ihm.	Trust in him.
Laßt sie den Rock ändern. / Sie sollen (or mögen) den Rock ändern.	Let them alter the coat.
Laßt sie nicht lügen. / Sie sollen nicht lügen.	Let them not lie.
Dem Wind und Wetter trotzend, arbeitete er in der freien Luft.	Defying wind and rain, he worked in the open air.
Weinend sagte er, daß mein Freund todt sei.	With tears in his eyes (weeping) he said that my friend was dead.
Die Alles belebende Sonne erleuchtet und erwärmt nicht nur die Erde, sondern viele Himmelskörper.	The sun, animating every thing, lightens and warms not only the earth, but many heavenly (celestial) bodies.
Die mir bevorstehende Gefahr ängstigt mich.	The danger that threatens me alarms me.

Diese Last ist drückend.	This burden is oppressive.
Auf diesem Berge ist eine bezaubernde Aussicht.	On that mountain there is a charming view.
Dieses ist der Lehrende, und jenes der Lernende.	This is the teacher (teaching one), and that is the learner (learning one).
Der Befehlende ist mein Vater und der Gehorchende ist mein Bruder.	He who commands is my father, and he who obeys is my brother.
Indem man arbeitet, wird man stärker.	By working we grow stronger.
Wir werden klüger, indem wir studiren.	By studying we become better informed.

Rule 1st., The imperative of the second person singular of the regular verbs is like the first person singular of the present tense, and the second person plural is like that of the second person plural in the present tense; the learner must bear in mind that, in addressing an individual, the second person plural is formed with Sie, *you*, in German, as it is in the third person plural of the present tense. All other persons keep the final n of the infinitive, as they are formed with auxiliary verbs of mood.

2d., The present participle is formed by adding d to the infinitive, and is generally used adjectively, as the Germans use the infinitive substantively for the English participle present. The present participle in German is only used substantively to denote a person performing the action expressed by the verb (like adjectives).

3d., All words relating to an attributive adjective are placed before it in German.

Exercise. Do not lie. Honor thy parents. Let him do that work. Let us pay our debts. Do not pawn your clothes. Let them not perceive it. Let her not hear it. Do not transplant these trees. Defend your brother. By flattering his mother he obtained his object (der Zweck). The roaring (brüllen) lion. My sister shall learn dancing and singing. He who preaches (predigen) in that church is the uncle of my friend. The rain, refreshing (erfrischen) every thing, also delights men. The burden is oppressive. On that mountain there is a charming view. He who com-

mands is my father, and he who obeys is my brother Defying wind and storm, we worked in the open air. Do not provoke him. Speak always the truth. He would not have denied it, if you had not denied it. I wish him to buy a penknife. He thought thou wast working for him gratis. That pleasure will have lasted its longest. They had not cleaned my boots. He had not yet done snuffing the candle when it went out. We did not perceive it immediately. We defied wind and storm. I have a mind to take a walk, have you a desire to take an airing? We have the pleasure to wish you a happy new year. They found us asleep. They go a begging.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.

Ich fange einen Vogel.	I am catching a bird.
Was fängst du?	What dost thou catch?
Die Katze fängt Mäuse.	The cat catches mice.
Ich verlasse dich nicht.	I do not forsake thee.
Verlässest du deinen alten Vater?	Dost thou forsake thy old father?
Er verläßt ihn nicht.	He does not forsake him.
Das Kalb saugt.	The calf is sucking.
Du schnaubst, wie ein Pferd.	Thou art puffing like a horse.
Du läufst (laufen) nicht so schnell, als er.	Thou dost not run as fast as he.
Ich esse heute nicht.	I do not eat to-day.
Was issest du Gutes?	What dost thou eat that is good?
Er ißt Rindsbraten.	He is eating roast beef.
Was siehst (sehen) du dort?	What dost thou see there?
Er sieht eine große Klapperschlange.	He sees a large rattlesnake.
Gibst du ihm Etwas?	Dost thou give him anything?
Er gibt ihm Nichts.	He does not give him anything.
Gehst du nach Hause?	Art thou going home?
Er geht nicht nach Hause.	He does not go home.
Ich weiß (wissen) Alles.	I know every thing.
Du weißt Nichts.	Thou dost not know anything.
Er weiß, wie man das Fleisch brät (braten).	He knows how to roast the meat.
Kennst du meinen Bruder?	Dost thou know my brother?
Ich kenne ihn nicht.	I do not know him.
Kennt er den Weizen?	Does he know wheat?
Sie kennt die Gerste nicht.	She does not know barley.
Wir fangen keine Tauben.	We do not catch doves.
Was tragt ihr da?	What are you carrying here?
Backt ihr heute kein Brod?	Do you not bake bread to-day?

Warum geben Sie ihm sein Messer nicht?	Why do you not give him his knife?
Wir bleiben heute nicht hier.	We do not remain here to-day.
Ich mag keinen Umgang mit ihnen haben, sie lügen und trügen.	I do not like to have intercourse with them, they lie and deceive.
Sie bekommen das Geschenk nicht, er bekommt es.	They do not get the present, he gets it.

Rule. The present tense of the irregular verbs has the same final letters in the corresponding persons as the regular verbs (excepted are the first six auxiliary verbs of mood; **sein**, *to be;* and **wissen**, *to know*), but the **a** in the radical syllable is changed into **ä** in the second and third persons singular; the following verbs do not admit that change, viz.:

mahlen, *to grind.*
schaffen, *to create.*
schallen, *to sound*, and
erschallen, *to resound;*

and **e** is changed in the persons above mentioned into **i** (or **ie**); the following verbs retain the **e**, viz.:

genesen, *to recover.*
brennen, *to burn.*
denken, *to think.*
nennen, *to name.*
stehen, *to stand.*
senden, *to send.*
gehen, *to go.*
beklemmen, *to harass with anxiety.*
bewegen, *to move.*
heben, *to heave, to lift.*
pflegen, *to be accustomed, to be wont, to cultivate;* it is regular in the sense of "to nurse".

Au (**au**) is changed into **äu** only in **laufen**, *to run*, and **saufen**, *to drink to excess*, also used in speaking of animals.

Observation. To know is to be translated by **kennen**, if it conveys the idea of "being acquainted with"; in other cases by **wissen**.

Exercise. He runs very fast. He will not get another cent (*pres.* in Germ.). Your child lies. He carries the basket (**der Korb**). He does not give me my book. Dost thou remain here? Do you know that lady? I know her. Do you know any thing new? We do not know any thing new. Do they go to the theatre? God forsakes not the honest man. They do not deceive you. Does the fire burn? The miller

grinds the wheat. That bell (die Glocke) does not sound loud at all. I am standing under a tree, where are you standing? I cannot move this lump (der Klumpen) of iron, can you lift it? She nurses my sick mother very well. I am accustomed to visit him every day. We cultivate his intercourse. They find nothing but stones there. What are you doing? I am pouring (gießen) water into the glass.

IMPERFECT.

(OF THE FIRST CLASS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.)

Was empfingst (empfangen) du von ihm?	What didst thou receive from him?
Ich empfing ein seidenes Kleid von ihm. Sie erhielt Nichts.	I received a silk dress from him. She received nothing.
Wir riethen (rathen) euch, es nicht zu thun.	We advised you not to do it.
Gott schuf Himmel und Erde; die Menschen erfanden (erfinden) Manches, aber sie schufen Nichts.	God created (the) heaven and (the) earth; men invented many things, but they did not create anything.
Das Bier gohr (gähren) gestern schon.	The beer fermented yesterday already.
Sie wogen den Zucker, als ich aß.	They were weighing the sugar when I was eating.
Was lasen Sie diesen Morgen in der Zeitung?	What did you read in the newspaper this morning?
Wir befahlen (befehlen) ihnen zu arbeiten.	We commanded them to work.
Sie dungen (dingen) ein Kindermädchen.	They hired a nursery girl.
Ich rief (rufen) dich nicht.	I did not call thee.
Wir erkohren (erkühren) ihn zum General.	We elected him general.
Sie gingen nicht in's Theater.	They did not go to the theatre.

IMPERFECT.

(OF THE SECOND CLASS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.)

Das Feuer brannte nicht lang.	The fire did not burn a long time.
Was brachtest (bringen) du ihm?	What didst thou bring him?
Ich dachte nicht daran.	I did not think of it.
Wir dachten, du würdest uns besuchen.	We thought thou wouldst visit us.
Kannten Sie diesen Herrn schon, ehe Sie nach Amerika kamen?	Were you already acquainted with that gentleman before you came to America?
Ich kannte ihn nicht.	I was not acquainted with him.
Sie nannten mich Carl.	They named me Charles.

Rannte das Pferd schneller, als ein Vogel fliegt?	Did the horse run faster than a bird flies?
Es rannte nicht so schnell.	It did not run so fast.
Wie viele Thaler sandtest du ihm das letzte Mal?	How many dollars didst thou send him the last time?
Sie wandten das Heu.	They turned the hay.
Wußten sie noch, was ich ihnen gesagt hatte?	Did they still know what I had told them?
Sie wußten es nicht mehr, aber ich wußte es noch.	They knew it no more, but I knew it yet.

Rule. There are two classes of irregular verbs, the different characteristics of which are to be observed in their manner of forming the imperfect and past participle. The first class forms the imperfect by changing the radical vowel, and the second class by also changing the radical vowel and taking the final syllable of the imperfect of the regular verbs (te, ꝛc.). To the second class belong, besides the first six auxiliary verbs of mood, and haben, only the nine verbs above mentioned.

If the learner knows how to form the first person singular, it is easy for him to form the other persons, as the third person singular is like the first person singular, and the third person plural like the first person plural, being formed by adding n or en to the first person singular; the second person singular is formed by adding st or est, and the second person plural by adding t or et to the first person singular.

Observation. In order to enable the student more easily to acquire a knowledge of the formation of the first person of the imperfect (and of the past participle), the irregular verbs are classified in the annexed table according as they correspond in the formation of these two parts.

Exercise. I did not hire a nursery girl, I hired a groom. At what time did you call me? He did not command her to send him the money. I did not read a novel, I read the history of Germany. What wast thou weighing, iron or brass? Was the wine not fermenting, when you were in the cellar (der Keller)? Berthold Schwarz invented gun-powder. What did you advise him to do? She advised me to go home. I eceived a present from my godfather. At what o'clock do you think he will come (*pres.* in Germ.)? I thought he would

come yesterday, but I did not see him. They did not know that I was here. Did the fire burn when you were in the room? It was burning. I brought thee such a beautiful flower, and what hast thou brought for me (*imperf.* in Germ.)? He turned his head towards me, but I did not know him. Something harasses me with anxiety.

PERFECT.

(FIRST CLASS).

Ich habe letzte Nacht sehr gut geschlafen.	I (have) slept very well last night.
Hast du auch Gold gegraben?	Didst thou also dig for gold?
Hat sie meine Hemden nicht gewaschen?	Has she not washed my shirts?
Ich habe noch nicht gegessen.	I have not yet eaten.
Er hat den ganzen Morgen gelesen.	He has read all the morning.
Was hat er euch befohlen?	What did he command you?
Wir haben eure Spielsachen nicht genommen.	We have not taken your toys.
Welches Stück habt ihr gesungen?	Which piece did you sing?
Wo haben sie den Thaler gefunden?	Where did they find the dollar?
Sie haben ihn nicht gefunden, sie haben ihn gestohlen.	They have not found it, they have stolen it.
Haben Sie ihn gezwungen (zwingen) den Brief zu schreiben?	Have you forced him to write the letter?
Wir haben ihn verziehen (verzeihen).	We pardoned him.

PERFECT.

(SECOND CLASS).

Ich habe mich gebrannt.	I have burnt myself.
Er hat uns keine Blumen, aber einige Aepfel gebracht.	He has brought us no flowers, but some apples.
Jetzt hat er deinen Namen genannt.	Now he has mentioned thy name.
Was haben Sie so eben gedacht?	What have you been thinking just now?
Haben Sie meinen Oheim schon in Deutschland gekannt?	Did you already know my uncle in Germany?
Ich habe ihn nicht gekannt, ich habe gar nicht gewußt, daß Sie einen Oheim haben.	I did not know him, I did not know at all that you had an uncle.
Was haben sie dir gesandt?	What have they sent to you?
Wer hat das Heu gewandt?	Who has turned the hay?
Wir haben es gewandt.	We have turned it.

Rule. The past participle of the first class of the irregular verbs is formed by prefixing the syllable **ge** to the infinitive, when it does not commence with an inseparable particle, and by changing the radical vowel. Yet it must be observed that verbs with **a** in their radical syllable, and a few more, do not change this letter. Exceptions: **schallen, geschollen, erschallen, erschollen**; look at the irregular verbs in the annexed table. The second class forms its past participle by dropping the final **e** of the first person singular of the imperfect, and prefixing **ge**.

Observation. The other tenses of the irregular verbs do not require to be illustrated by examples, but are left for the learner to form in the following exercises, as they are made like those of the regular verbs.

Exercise. What has he stolen? She has sung two beautiful pieces. The child has taken all the apples. How didst thou sleep last night? Have they eaten all the cake? We had not read the news. I had brought him some apples before he died (**starb**, of **sterben**). Did the wood which I have given you burn well? We knew them as boys of six years, but we did not know that they were relations of ours. I will compel him to do it. These trees will not grow (**wachsen**) any more. Will you pardon him? They will never forget (**vergessen**) it? Has he forgotten it? He will write me a long letter. I shall not have sung until you come again. He will not have done that work before ten o'clock, but he will have written his exercises. Will she have washed my shirts and stockings before Wednesday? How did you sleep last night? Have they commanded you to go home? They have not taken our toys, and they will not take them. Is he eating roast veal? I did not forsake my friend, I protected him with all my power. Hast thou caught a bird? Honor thy father and thy mother. Finish your work. He maintains that you live in the country. I wish the groom to feed my horses. Hast thou cultivated his society? Has he nursed his lady well? We shall have asked thy father before thou wilt have asked him.

SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

It is formed like that of the regular verbs, the radical vowel is not changed.

IMPERFECT AND FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich glaubte, ich empfinge ein Geschenk, aber ich empfing Nichts.	I thought I was receiving a present, but I received nothing.
Ist es möglich, daß du Nichts erhieltest?	Is it possible that thou didst not receive anything?
Man sagt, was er erfände, würde nicht von Bedeutung sein.	People say that what he would invent would not be of importance.
Sie äße (or sie würde essen), wenn sie was hätte.	She would eat, if she had anything.
Trüget ihr das Eisen nach Wilhelmsburg (or würdet ihr das Eisen nach — tragen), wenn ihr es bezahlt bekämet?	Would you carry the iron to Williamsburg, if you should get paid for doing it?
Sie höben den Klumpen Blei nicht, und wenn sie noch so stark wären.	They would not lift the lump of lead, if they were ever so strong.
Ich bliebe gern hier, aber ich kann nicht.	I should like to remain here, but I cannot.
Er riebe den Stein noch (or er würde den Stein noch reiben), wenn ich ihm nicht geholfen hätte.	He would be still rubbing the stone, if I had not assisted him.
Wir dachten nicht, daß das Feuer brennte, als Sie in die Stube traten.	We did not think the fire was burning when you entered the room.
Ich war der Meinung, daß ich ihn früher schon kennte, aber ich kannte ihn nicht.	I was of opinion that I knew him in former times, but I did not know him.
Ich nennte ihn (or ich würde ihn nennen), wenn ich seinen Namen nicht vergessen hätte.	I should name him if I had not forgotten his name.
Ist es möglich, daß dieses Pferd in einer Meile sechs Meilen rennte?	Is it possible that this horse ran six miles in one mile?
Ich glaubte, du sendetest ihm kein Geld, wenn ich dir keins senden würde.	I believed thou wouldst not send him any money if I did not send you any.
Er ist so ärgerlich über mich, daß er sich nach der rechten Seite wendete, wenn er mich auf der linken bemerkte.	He is so angry at me, that he would turn to his right if he were to perceive me on his left.

Rule. The imperfect subjunctive of all irregular verbs is formed by adding **e** to the imperfect indicative, and changing **a, o, u** into **ä, ö, ü.** Excepted are **brennte, kennte, nennte, rennte, sendete,** and **wendete.**

Observation. The remaining tenses are formed like those of the regular verbs.

Exercise. In case that he should call me, tell him I am not at home. I do not believe that he lies; he is very honest. I wish her to drink that wine. They think that you know every thing, and you do not know any thing of it. I will give you the meat, provided you (will) eat it. I should catch the bird if I knew that it would sing. What would you do under those circumstances? I should not send him any money. You are said to have pardoned him. I should have pardoned him if I had not been so angry at him, but I will pardon him. I thought he had accused (zeihen) us of theft. You are wrong if you think they have lent me their carriage (die Kutsche). Would you have read the letter in my place? If I had seen it, I should have read it. Will you stay here until I have done my work? I should stay here, but I have not time. I cannot help you, but I suppose my brother will help you. Wouldst thou measure (messen) the cloth if thou hadst time? I should have measured it already, but I was engaged (beschäftigen, *reg.*). He would have drunk if he had had any water. Where do you like to sit? I should have taken a seat (der Platz) if I had not been in such a hurry (die Eile).

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. IMPERATIVE.

Nach einem Vogel laufend, brach er sein Bein.	While running after a bird, he broke his leg.
Indem er Blut sah, fiel er in Ohnmacht.	When he saw blood, he fainted.
Der Blinde hat es bemerkt, und der Sehende hat es nicht bemerkt.	The blind man has observed it, and the seeing one has not observed it.
Das nach mir schreiende Kind gehört meinem Nachbar.	The child that cries for me is my neighbor's.
Backe das Brod.	Bake (thou) the bread.
Lüge nicht. / Du sollst nicht lügen.	Do not lie.
Laßt ihn nicht entrinnen.	Do not let him escape.
Wir wollen es errathen.	Let us guess it.
Laßt uns schlafen.	Let us sleep.
Singt lauter.	Sing louder (*plur.*).
Sägt das Holz nicht, spaltet es.	Do not saw the wood, split it (*plur.*).
Kneifen Sie ihn.	Pinch him (*sing.*).
Pfeifen Sie nicht.	Do not whistle.
Sie mögen den Stock biegen.	Let them bend the stick.

Befiehl ihm zu antworten.	Command (thou) him to answer.
Drisch das Getreide.	Thrash (thou) the corn.
Laßt sie dreschen.	Let them thrash.
Erschrick nicht.	Do (thou) not be frightened.
Hilf ihm arbeiten.	Assist (thou) him in his work.
Helfen Sie ihm arbeiten.	Assist him in his work.
Schilt nicht. / Du sollst nicht schelten.	Do not scold.

RULE. The present participle of the irregular verbs is formed and used like that of the regular verbs; the imperative of the irregular is also formed like that of the regular verbs, with this exception, that those verbs which have the radical vowel **e**, and change this letter into **i** (or **ie**) in the second and third persons singular of the present tense — form the second person singular (of the imperative) from the third person singular of the present tense by dropping the final **t**; **tritt**, from **treten**, and **schilt**, from **schelten**, retain the final **t**.

Observation. Let the learner study the irregular verbs in the annexed table.

Exercise. When he saw (*present part. in G.*) his father, he wept for (vor) joy. She left the room singing. They stood mourning at the tomb (das Grab). The boy who shows (weisen) me the way, is very sincere. The all-knowing being (das Wesen) is God. Let him not drink any punch. Do not forsake me, my friend. Pardon him. Let her not spin (spinnen). Let us speak the truth. Let him not whistle so loud. Do not scold him. Thou shalt not escape. Call him. Be silent. Do not shear (scheren) the sheep. Let it happen (geschehen). Let them not forget it. Fire, burn! Do not be frightened. Do not thrash the corn. Do not tread upon the rattle-snake. Let us not pinch him. Do not deceive me. The boy that cries for me is my neighbor's. Seeing blood, she fainted. We did not accuse him of theft. Were you engaged last night? He is in a (the) hurry. We have the honor to wish you a good evening, sir.

ON THE COMPOUND VERBS.

INFINITIVE.

Haben Sie Lust, ihm zu widersprechen?	Have you a mind to contradict him?
Wollen Sie ihm widersprechen?	Are you inclined to contradict him?
Es ist deine Pflicht, die Sache zu untersuchen und ihn zu rechtfertigen.	It is thy duty to inquire into the affair, and to justify him.
Sie hatten Unrecht, meinen Freund zu hintergehen.	You were wrong to deceive my friend.
Ich war gezwungen, hier zu übernachten.	I was forced to pass the night here.
Ist es Ihnen befohlen, den Befehl zu vollziehen?	Are you ordered to execute the command?
Ihr müßt vorsichtig sein, ihn nicht zu mißhandeln.	You must be cautious not to treat him ill.
Habe die Güte, die Thür zuzumachen.	Have the kindness to shut the door.
Wir haben Nichts zu wiederholen.	We have nothing to repeat.
Werden Sie die Güte haben, meinen Stock wiederzuholen?	Will you have the kindness to fetch my cane?
Wollen Sie nach dem Parke gehen?	Will you go to the park?
Ich habe keine Lust hinzugehen.	I have no mind to go thither.
Ist er geneigt, herzukommen?	Is he inclined to come hither?
Haben Sie jetzt keine Zeit, diesen Satz zu übersetzen?	Have you no time at present to translate this sentence?
Ich habe weder Zeit, den Satz zu übersetzen, noch Lust, über den Graben zu setzen.	I have neither time to translate this sentence, nor a mind to jump over the ditch.
Haben Sie Lust überzusetzen?	Have you a desire to jump over?
Ich hatte das Vergnügen, jenes Fräulein zu unterhalten.	I had the pleasure of conversing with that young lady.
Wollen Sie die Güte haben, diesen Krug unter jenes Faß zu halten?	Will you have the kindness to hold this pitcher under that barrel?
Ich bin nicht geneigt, ihn unterzuhalten.	I am not inclined to hold it under.
Er hat den Muth nicht, diesen Befehl auszuführen.	He has not the courage to execute this order.
Die Sonne ist im Begriff unterzugehen.	The sun is going to set.

RULE. Verbs are compounded in German with two classes of particles, the separable, and the inseparable. The former are words which make sense by themselves,

and are, in independent sentences, placed at the end. When connected with the verb, they, commonly, take the accent, and the sign of the infinitive (zu) is placed between them and the verb with which they are compounded. The inseparable particles, except **unter** and **wider**, have no meaning by themselves, and the verbs with which they are compounded are treated in the same manner as simple verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE COMPOUND VERBS SEPARABLE.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Gehst du heute aus (ausgehen)?	Dost thou go out to-day?
Ich gehe nicht aus.	I do not go out.
Um wie viel Uhr steht er auf?	At what o'clock does he rise?
Er steht gewöhnlich um sechs Uhr auf.	He commonly gets up at six o'clock.
Die Sonne ging gestern um fünf Uhr unter (untergehen) und der Mond ging um sieben Uhr auf.	The sun set yesterday at five o'clock, and the moon rose at seven o'clock.
Wie sprechen Sie dieses Wort aus? (aussprechen.)	How do you pronounce that word?
Wir ziehen das Wasser dem Weine vor (vorziehen).	We prefer water to wine.
Ziehen Sie vor, hier zu bleiben?	Do you prefer staying here?
Die Richter sprachen ihn los (lossprechen), aber er mußte versprechen, das Land zu verlassen.	The judges acquitted him, but he was forced to promise that he would leave the country.
Ich mißhandelte ihn nicht.	I did not treat him ill.
Uebersetztest du deine Uebungen?	Didst thou translate thy exercises?

Rule. In independent sentences the separable part of a compound verb is, in the present and imperfect, placed at the end of the phrase, or after the verb; and we may now say, compound verbs, placing their first member at the end of the phrase or after the verb, in the present and imperfect, take the „zu" of the infinitive between their two members.

Exercise. I have no mind to get up. Do you intend to start (abreisen) to-day? These words you have to learn by heart (auswendig lernen). I do not find words to express (ausdrücken) it. We do not imitate (nachahmen) your flattery.

The sun is setting and the moon is rising. I have not the courage to pronounce that phrase (der Satz). Is it difficult to pronounce it? No sir, it is not difficult, I have already pronounced (*Imperf.*) it. Has she a mind to contradict me? No, ma'am, she will not contradict you. We had not the power to acquit the criminal. I went thither, did you go thither too? I cannot go thither. I am to learn my lesson by heart. When did you learn yours by heart? What do they prefer, wine or beer? Yesterday they preferred wine to beer. We got up at four o'clock this morning, and intend to get up at four o'clock every day. He held the pitcher under the chair and not under the barrel. They were translating their exercises when we were jumping over the ditch. Did you converse with these ladies? No, sir, I was learning my lesson by heart. I started from New-York the twelfth of July, one thousand eight hundred and forty-five. Did he imitate your gait (der Gang)?

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Man hat die Dichtkunst der Alten häufig nachgeahmt.	They have (one has) frequently imitated the poetry of the ancients.
Ich habe ihm aufmerksam zugehört (zuhören).	I have attentively listened to him.
Hat der Schuhmacher meine Stiefel ausgebessert?	Has the shoemaker mended my boots?
Was hat sie aufgehoben (aufheben)?	What did she lift up?
Wir haben alle unsere Röcke abgetragen.	We have worn out all our coats.
Sie haben mir mein Messer nicht wiedergegeben.	They have not given back my knife
Ehe sie das erste Wort ausgesprochen hatten, hatte ich vier Worte ausgesprochen.	Before they had pronounced the first word, I had pronounced four words.
Werden Sie mir zuhören?	Will they listen to me?
Wird der Schneider deine Weste nicht ausbessern?	Will not the tailor mend thy waistcoat?
Wir werden heute nicht ausgehen.	We shall not go out to-day.
Ich werde meine zwei Röcke abgetragen haben, ehe Sie den Ihrigen abgetragen haben.	I shall have worn out both my coats, before you will have worn out yours.
Werden wir unser Gedicht in einer Stunde auswendig gelernt haben?	Shall we have committed our lesson to memory in one hour?
Ich habe Ihren Stock sorgfältig aufbewahrt.	I have carefully preserved your cane.

Ich hatte ihm Alles anvertraut.	I had entrusted every thing to him.
Sie hat fünf Kinder auferzogen (auferziehen).	She has brought up five children.
Er hatte seine Uhr wiedererlangt, ehe ich dir es sagen ließ.	He had recovered his watch before I sent thee word.
Er hat mich mit keinem Worte gerechtfertigt.	He has not said one word to justify me.
Ich habe ihn nicht gemißhandelt.	I have not treated him ill.
Sie haben mir nichts Gutes geweissagt.	They have not prophesied me anything good.
Wir haben uns einander geliebkost.	We have caressed one another.
Sie hatten den Befehl vollzogen, ehe ich sie besuchte.	They had executed the order before I visited them.
Wo haben sie übernachtet?	Where have you passed the night?
Du hast mich mit all meiner Vorsicht hintergangen.	Thou hast deceived me, with all my precaution.
Warum hat er ihm widersprochen?	Why has he contradicted him?
Ich hatte ihm allen Umgang mit diesen Knaben untersagt, aber er hört nicht, er muß fühlen.	I had forbidden him all intercourse with these boys, but he does not hear; he must feel.

Rule 1st., Those compound verbs which take the „zu" of the infinitive between their two members, take also the „ge" of the past participle between these two parts, if the second part (the radical verb) does not commence with a particle, in which case they do not accept the „ge" at all.

2d., The rest of the compound verbs (which do not separate their first part in the present and imperfect), take the ge of the past participle, if their first member is emphasized, but reject it, if the second member has the emphasis.

Exercise. I have not imitated these manners (die Sitte) and shall not imitate them. Has the tailor mended my coat? He has not mended it, but he will mend it. Have you listened to that orator? Have our children already worn out their clothes? They have not yet worn them out, our poor neighbor's children may wear them out. They had not taken care of my umbrella, I found it at the door. What had you prophesied to my uncle? Did he contradict you when you prophesied it to him? He has never contradicted me. Has your father denied you this pleasure? Why did you not justify him, when they condemned (verurtheilen, *reg.*) him? I

undertook to justify him, but I was not able to convince his enemies of his innocence. They have never preferred wine to water. When they had pronounced that phrase, they fainted. Did you lift up my friend when he fainted? Have you lifted up the clothes? Yes, sir, I have lifted them up. When will you return my carriage? I shall have returned it before you (will) want it, sir. How many apples has he preserved, if he has preserved seven times eight of them? Will he pass the next night with me?

SUBJUNCTIVE (AND INDICATIVE). PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Er glaubt, ich bewahre seinen Mantel auf; or, er glaubt, daß ich seinen Mantel aufbewahre.	He thinks I am keeping his cloak for him.
Er glaubte, ich bewahrte seinen Mantel auf; or, er glaubte, daß ich seinen Mantel aufbewahrte.	He thought I was keeping his cloak for him.
Der Schuhmacher, welcher unsere Schuhe ausbesserte, ist todt.	The shoemaker who mended our shoes is dead.
Wann die Sonne um sechs Uhr des Morgens in Europa aufgeht, so ist es entweder Frühlings- oder Herbst-Tag- und Nachtgleiche.	When the sun rises at six o'clock in the morning in Europe, it is either vernal or autumnal equinox.
Trotzdem die Sonne unterging, so war es doch noch sehr warm.	Notwithstanding the sun had set, it was still very warm.
Er blieb hier, obgleich ich ausging.	He remained here, although I went out.
Die Worte, welche wir aussprachen, lernten wir gestern auswendig.	The words which we pronounced we learned by heart yesterday.
Ist es möglich, daß sie alle ihre Kleider abtrugen?	Is it possible that they wore out all their clothes?
Wir trugen dieselben nicht ab, wir schenkten dieselben unsern armen Verwandten.	We did not wear them out, we presented them to our poor relations.
Wie lange müssen wir bei einem Punkte innehalten?	How long must we stop at a period?
Ich halte noch einmal so lange inne, als bei einem Doppelpunkte.	I stop as long again as at a colon.
Unser Lehrer sagte, daß wir bei einem Punkte nicht lange genug innehielten.	Our teacher said we did not stop long enough at a period.

RULE. When a sentence begins with a relative pronoun, or any other word requiring the verb in its simple tenses, or, in the case of compound tenses, the

auxiliary, to be placed at the end of the phrase, or sentence, the separable particle remains connected with the verb, both in the indicative and the subjunctive mood.

Observation. The rules given on the subjunctive, 129, 130, 131, and 140, are applicable to that of the compound verbs—whether the second member be a regular or irregular verb.

Exercise. The tailor is said to mend our waistcoat. Is it true that he did not return our cloak? No, sir, he returned it. How long do you stop at a colon? I stop as long again as at a comma. Suppose, thou didst not pronounce these words, certainly thou didst not pronounce them correctly. Will you be kind enough to take care of my purse for me? I understood he would take care of it, but my mother heard that he did not. At what o'clock is it sunset to-day? Though I was going out, he remained at my house. Did she listen to you? We do not believe that she listened to us. She seemed to be thinking of something else. We heard that the judges did not acquit your friend, is it true? They would acquit him, if he were not guilty. Would they have treated him ill, if he had not deserved it? Provided they have deceived him, they are culpable (ſtrafbar). I think I shall prefer wine to water. Are they culpable, if they have imitated the poetry of the Ancients? He would have picked up the purse, if I had desired him to do so. I believe he has received his gold ring. Had you forbidden him to have intercourse with these boys? It is either vernal or autumnal equinox, when the sun is rising at six o'clock in the morning. I thought you had worn out all your clothes. He is so angry with me, that he would turn to the left if he were to perceive me on his right.

IMPERATIVE OF THE COMPOUND VERBS.

Ahme dieſe Sitten nicht nach. Du ſollſt dieſe Sitten nicht nachahmen.	Do not imitate these manners.
Halte inne.	Stop (thou)!
Laßt ihn aufſtehen!	Let him get up.
Sprich ihn nicht los.	Do (thou) not acquit him.
Laßt ſie dieſes Wort ausſprechen.	Let her pronounce that word.
Laßt uns fortgehen. Wir wollen fortgehen.	Let us go away.

Hebt die Feder auf!	Pick up the pen. (*plur.*)
Sprecht dieses Wort deutlich aus.	Pronounce that word distinctly (*plur.*)
Sprechen Sie das Wort deutlich aus.	Pronounce that word distinctly (*sing.*)
Liebkosen Sie ihn nicht.	Do not caress him. (*sing.*)
Laßt uns den Mantel aufbewahren.	Let us preserve the cloak.

RULE. The same rules given on the imperative, pages 133 and 142, are also applicable to the imperative of the compound verbs, but the first member of the compound verbs separable is placed at the end of the phrase.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Ich werde von meinem Lehrer gelobt, aber meine Schwester wird von dem ihrigen getadelt.	I am praised by my teacher, but my sister is censured by hers.
Wirst du von deinen Feinden gehaßt?	Art thou hated by thy enemies?
Der Weise wird nicht immer geschätzt und geehrt.	The wise man is not always esteemed and honored.
Die Summe muß durch sechs getheilt werden.	The sum must be divided by six.
Wird das Tuch gemessen?	Is the cloth to be measured?
Warum werden wir verachtet, haben wir Unrecht gehandelt?	Why are we despised, have we acted wrong?
Ihr werdet verachtet, ihr habt eure Pflichten vernachlässigt.	You are despised, you have neglected your duties.
Sie werden von ihren Kindern beweint.	They are deplored by their children.
Ich wurde (or ward) unschuldigerweise eingekerkert.	I was innocently imprisoned.
Wurdest du von unsern Freunden nicht unterstützt?	Wast thou not supported by our friends?
Eure Tochter wurde vernachlässigt und deshalb verkrüppelt.	Your daughter was neglected, and therefore crippled.
Wir wurden gezwungen es zu thun.	We were forced to do it.
Ihr wurdet nicht vergessen, man wird euch morgen euren Theil schicken.	You were not forgotten, they will send you your share to-morrow
Wurden Sie von ihm gemißhandelt?	Were you ill-treated by him?
Wurden unsere Schuhe ausgebessert?	Were our shoes mended?

RULE. The present and imperfect of the passive voice is formed in German by adding the past participle to the present and imperfect of **werden**, *to become*. Let the learner not confound the present of the passive voice with the first future of the active voice, which is formed with the present of **werden** and the infinitive.

Exercise. I am not forced to do it, but I am going to do it. Are all parents deplored by their children? Meat is eaten, and wine is drunk. We were innocently punished. They were not seen by the watchman. Was your neck washed this morning? It was not washed, it is very dirty. Wast thou acquitted by the judges? I was not acquitted, but ill-treated. This poor man is mocked (at) by those boys. Your name was just now mentioned. Is the cloth to be measured? The horse is not to be shod. He is esteemed and honored by every body. You are honored by some, and hated by others. He supported all the poor of his village. Whom do you deplore? Our teacher said, we should stop at a period as long again as at a colon. Is the corn to be thrashed? She remained here, although I went out. While running after a bird, he broke his leg. I shall get up. Will you come hither? Gold is found in California. Mice are caught by cats. He was killed last night. Is the ox to be killed? We were very kindly received (empfangen). Was not thy name mentioned? He was summoned before the judge.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Bin ich gerufen worden?	Have I been called?
Von wem bist du geschnitten worden?	By whom hast thou been cut?
Er ist von dem geschnitten worden, der mich gerufen hat.	He has been cut by him who has called me.
Sie ist von ihrer Freundin gereizt worden.	She has been provoked by her friend.
Wir sind von unserm Lehrer nicht gelobt worden, seid ihr getadelt worden?	We have not been praised by our teacher, have you been censured?
Alle unsere Gläubiger sind bezahlt worden, wir haben nicht Bankerott gemacht.	All our creditors have been paid, we have not failed.
Sind sie von einander getrennt worden?	Have they been separated from each other?

War das Mädchen schon gedungen worden?	Had the girl been already hired?
Das Goldstück (der Adler) war gewechselt und ausgegeben worden, ehe eine Stunde verging.	The eagle had been changed, and expended, before an hour passed by.
Diese Männer waren geschossen worden, ehe es Tag wurde.	These men had been shot before it became day.
Was ist aus dem Fündling geworden?	What has become of the foundling?
Er ist ein Taugenichts geworden.	He has become a good-for-nothing fellow.

RULE. The perfect and pluperfect of the passive voice is formed by adding the past participle to the perfect and pluperfect of **werden.** The learner, however, must bear in mind that the past participle of **werden, geworden,** rejects the particle **ge,** when used as an auxiliary, and that of two past participles following and depending on each other, the last in English is the first in German.

Exercise. They have been separated from me, I do not know where they are. He had been informed of my arrival long ago, but he did not visit me. Had the dollar been changed already? It had not been changed at eleven o'clock, I saw it yet at that time. His daughter has been cut by a friend of hers. Had she been treated ill when you left her? All the cheese had been eaten up; they had been compelled to send for more. Have we been seen? Have all the horses been sold? No, sir, one of them has been sold. Have you not been indemnified (entschädigen) for your loss? Yes, sir, but they have given me only a small sum of money. I have not been offended by him. Had this bill (die Rechnung) been paid by him before I came? I have burnt myself. What have they sent to you? Did you hire a nursery girl? Do you know her? I do not know her. They would not lift up that lump of lead. It is your duty to inquire into the affair, and to justify him. Have you not justified my sister? Has he been acquitted of theft? Have not your boots been mended? Are you hated or loved by your enemies? I was hated by them, but now they see that I was honest, and they love me.

FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

Ich weiß, ich werde von ihm betrogen werden, aber ich wage es.	I know I shall be deceived by him, but I shall venture it.

Wirst du von der Ankunft des Präsidenten benachrichtigt werden?	Wilt thou be informed of the arrival of the president?
Er wird von seinen Freunden nicht gut aufgenommen werden.	He will not be well received by his friends.
Die Stadt wird mit Sturm genommen werden.	The city will be taken by assault.
Wir werden hier in unserer Unterhaltung nicht gestört werden.	We shall not be disturbed here in our conversation.
Ihr werdet niemals aus dem Gefängnisse befreit werden.	You will never be delivered from prison.
Die Guten werden belohnt und die Bösen werden bestraft werden.	The good will be rewarded, and the wicked will be punished.
Der Ochs wird gekauft und geschlachtet worden sein, wann Sie wieder kommen.	The ox will have been bought and killed when you come again.
Wir werden gegen vier Uhr angehört und losgesprochen worden sein.	We shall have been heard and acquitted about four o'clock.

Rule 1st., The first and second future of the passive voice are formed by adding the past participle to the first and second future of **werden** — the past participle of **werden, geworden,** changes into **worden,** for the reason stated.

2d., The subjunctive of the passive voice is formed by changing the indicative of **werden** into its subjunctive.

Exercise. My uncle will have been informed of these circumstances by seven o'clock. How many oxen will be killed to-morrow? When will those letters be sealed (versiegeln)? I wish to be well received by him. Is the horse to be shod? I thought that dollar was to be changed. I shall get it changed. Is it true that our ambassador will be sent away to-day? Would he have been censured, if he had fulfilled his duty? They would not have been punished, if they had not been culpable. You are said to be justified. I do not believe that the documents will be written. That wise man is said to be esteemed and honored. I have heard that this child had been neglected. It is possible that this work will (may) be finished by four o'clock. I hope I shall be well received. I should not have been well received, if I had not been innocent. Would he have been punished, if he had broken that glass? I believe we should not have been acquitted, if Mr. N. had not defended us. Be (thou) punished, thou rogue! Let him be

punished, but let not us be punished. Be despised. Let them not be indemnified. Suppose thou wilt be indemnified, what wilt thou do with the money? We hoped he would be praised, but he was censured. Did you think we would be punished? It is possible that you will be supported by him.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES.

With werden and sein.

Der Ochs wird geschlachtet. (Man schlachtet den Ochsen.)	The ox is being killed.
Der Ochs ist geschlachtet.	The ox is killed.
Das Pferd wird beschlagen. (Man beschlägt das Pferd.)	The horse is being shod.
Das Pferd ist beschlagen.	The horse is shod.
Wir werden verachtet. (Man verachtet uns.)	We are despised.
Wir sind verachtet.	We are despised.
Die Räuber werden hingerichtet. (Man richtet die Räuber hin.)	The robbers are being executed.
Die Räuber sind hingerichtet.	The robbers have been (are) executed.
Ich wurde unschuldigerweise eingekerkert. (Man kerkerte mich unschuldigerweise ein.) Ich war unschuldigerweise eingekerkert.	I was innocently imprisoned.
Sie wurden erschossen und begraben, als wir hinkamen. (Man erschoß und begrub sie, als wir hinkamen.) Sie waren erschossen und begraben, als wir hinkamen.	They were shot and buried when we came thither.
Sind die Dokumente unterschrieben worden? (Hat man die Dokumente unterschrieben?) Sind die Dokumente unterschrieben gewesen?	Have the documents been signed?
Mein Geld ist gestohlen worden. (Man hat mein Geld gestohlen.) Mein Geld ist gestohlen gewesen.	My money has been stolen.
Ihr Rock wird bis Montag gemacht werden. (Man wird Ihren Rock bis Montag machen.) Ihr Rock wird bis Montag gemacht sein.	Your coat will be made by (next) Monday

Die Stadt würde mit Sturm genommen werden, wenn wir genug Soldaten hätten. (Man würde die Stadt mit Sturm nehmen, wenn wir ꝛc.) Die Stadt würde mit Sturm genommen sein, wenn wir genug Soldaten hatten.	The town would be taken by assault, if we had soldiers enough.

RULE. The foregoing examples show, that the past participle may be connected with **werden** and **sein** in German — *to be* in English, — and that if connected with **werden**, it forms the passive voice, and if connected with **sein**, it qualifies the subject (like an adjective). As the passive voice expresses passivity, and passivity only takes place where there is an active agent, the learner may, in cases of uncertainty, change the phrase into the active voice of the same tense; and if in this voice the sense is the same, it is the passive voice, and the English *to be*, must be translated by **werden**; but if the same sense does not result by this change, the past participle qualifies the subject, and the English *to be* must be translated by **sein** in German.

Exercise. Your coat is being made. Is your coat made? Are the documents signed? They are not signed. Were your brothers buried when you arrived? They are not yet buried. The horse has not been shod. Whose oxen are killed? Mine are killed, and his are being killed. When have they been delivered from prison? What cloth has been sold? The black (one). We shall be well received by our friends. Have you received your letter? I have not yet received it. Shall we be released from the punishment? They are dead and forgotten. Will the boots be mended by to-morrow? They will not be mended before to-morrow evening. Would the handkerchiefs have been mended, if I had not desired it? I thought that work was done. You are very lazy. Nobody will contradict you. Who will go thither? I shall not go thither, I must go to my brother's. Will you pardon me, sir? Has he been obliged to pawn his clothes? I heard he had been obliged to pawn them, and several other persons are said to be obliged to pawn theirs also. I hope I shall never be in such circumstances.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES.

With sein and haben.

Wann ist Ihr Herr Vater angekommen?	At what time did your father arrive (*perfect in German*)?
Er ist noch nicht angekommen.	He has not yet arrived.
Ich bin nicht bei ihm eingekehrt.	I have not called on him.
Meine Verwandten sind um drei Uhr abgereis't.	My relations (have) started at three o'clock.
Ich bin ihm gefolgt.	I have followed him.
Ich habe ihm gefolgt.	I have obeyed him.
Wir sind ausgestiegen (aussteigen) und haben ein Glas Wein getrunken.	We (have) alighted from our carriage, and drank a glass of wine.
Er war abgestiegen, um einen Trunk frischen Wassers zu nehmen.	He had alighted, in order to take a draught of fresh water.
Werden eure Freunde angekommen sein?	Will your friends have arrived?
Ich hörte, daß sie genesen und gekommen seien.	I heard that they had recovered, and arrived.
Waren sie eingeschlafen, als sie gegessen hatten?	Had they fallen asleep when they had eaten?
Die schöne Abendröthe wird verschwunden (verschwinden) sein, ehe Sie kommen.	The beautiful evening-red will have vanished before you arrive.
Ist es möglich, daß er gestorben (sterben) sei?	Is it possible that he (has) died (is dead)?
Was ist geschehen?	What has happened?
Um wie viel Uhr ist er aufgewacht?	At what o'clock did he awake?
Das Gras ist während der Dürre gar nicht gewachsen.	The grass has not grown at all during the drought.

RULE. Those verbs which express a motion to, or from a place, and those which express a change from one condition to another, are conjugated in German with sein—in English commonly with *to have*. All other verbs form their compound tenses in both languages with the same auxiliary verbs.

Exercise. At what time did you get up this morning? I believe I got up at five o'clock. Has your father gone out already? No, sir, he has not yet arrived. On what day did your father die? Has your friend been imprisoned? What has happened? Nothing at all has happened, we are all very well. Now those stars have vanished. We shall have returned before you have done eating. Has he alighted from his horse

(in order) to pay you a visit? He has alighted from his horse, but they did not alight from their carriage. They have not followed me, but him. I should have called on you, but the weather was too bad. They have fallen asleep, they have been very tired. They have frequently imitated the poetry of the Ancients. Why has he contradicted him? I had forbidden him all intercourse with these boys, but he who does not hear, must feel.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.

Ich freue mich darüber.	I am glad of it.
Freust du dich, deinen Liebling wohl zu finden?	Dost thou rejoice to see thy favorite well?
Er kleidet sich nicht an, er bleibt zu Hause.	He does not dress himself, he will stay at home.
Sie bemüht sich, seiner los zu werden.	She endeavors to get rid of him.
Dieses Kind hält sich für sehr geschickt.	That child thinks himself very clever.
Wir wenden uns an unsere Verwandten, an wen wollt ihr euch wenden?	We (shall) address ourselves to our relations, to whom will you apply?
Schämen sie sich, sich so betragen zu haben?	Are they ashamed at having behaved thus?

IMPERFECT.

Ich verließ mich auf sein Wort, und er betrog mich.	I relied on his word, and he deceived me.
Ist es wahr, daß du dich entschlossest nach Californien zu gehen?	Is it true that thou hast resolved on going to California?
Er bildete sich ein, Präsident zu werden.	He imagined that he would become president.
Sie ärgerte sich sehr über dein gemeines Betragen.	She was very much vexed at your mean behavior.
Wir erfrischten uns mit einem Trunke guten Wassers.	We refreshed ourselves with a draught of good water.
Schnitten Sie sich in den Finger?	Did you cut your finger?
Befindet ihr euch wohl?	Do you find yourselves well?
Sie wunderten sich, wie das möglich gewesen ist.	They wondered how that was possible.

Regard the rules, given on the reflective pronouns, page 33.

There are some verbs which are reflective in German, and not in English, and those are principally employed in this chapter.

Of two infinitives, depending on each other, the last in English is the first in German.

Here follows the general rule, viz: of two or more infinitives, of two past participles, or of one or two past participles, and an infinitive, following and depending on each other, the last in English is the first in German.

Exercise. I am rejoicing at the fine present which I have received from my godfather. Does she dress herself? She is putting on (anziehen, *separ.*) her shoes? Did he put on his coat. I shall put on my new suit of clothes to-morrow. We cannot get rid of her. Do they endeavor to finish their work? He thinks himself a learned man. They thought themselves very prudent, but they see now that they were silly (altern). You must not rely on his word: we relied upon it, and were deceived. Where did you refresh yourself? How did your father do, when you paid him a visit? We resolved on going to France. We applied to our neighbor, but he advised us not to do it. He imagined that he was the master of the house. Were they vexed at seeing us? He had alighted from his horse, and they had alighted from their carriage, before the rain came. Had they recovered from their sickness? They will not obey me. Your waistcoat will be made by next Saturday. They had been imprisoned, before he was delivered from prison. The robbers have been caught.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Ich habe mich nicht geirrt (sich irren), mein Herr.	I have not been mistaken, sir.
Du hast dich nicht verirrt, du bist auf dem rechten Wege.	Thou hast not missed the way, thou art in the right way.
Ich kann kaum glauben, daß er sich gerühmt habe, in Paris gewesen zu sein.	I can hardly believe that he has boasted of his having been in Paris.
Wir haben uns nicht an sie gekehrt (sich kehren an).	We did not mind them.
Habt ihr euch um euer Geld bekümmert (sich kümmern um)?	Have you cared for your money?

Sie haben sich nicht nach der Vorschrift des Arztes gerichtet (sich richten nach).	They have not conformed (themselves) to the prescription of the physician.
Ich hätte mich nicht zu ihm herabgelassen, wenn ich seinen schlechten Character gekannt hätte.	I should not have condescended to him, if I had known his bad character.
Würdest du dich getraut haben, das Werk zu unternehmen, wenn ich dir meinen Beistand nicht versprochen hätte?	Wouldst thou have ventured to undertake that work, if I had not promised you my assistance?
Er hatte sich gefürchtet, ehe ich bei ihm war.	He had been afraid before I was with him.
Wir hatten uns sehr nach dir gesehnt, theurer Vater (sich sehnen).	We had very much longed for you, dear father.
Obgleich sie sich nicht mit ihm abgegeben hatten, so schlug er sie doch (sich abgeben).	Though they did not meddle with him, yet he struck them.
Ihr müßt euch des Weines enthalten.	You must abstain from wine.

Observation. The English "*much*, or *very much*" qualifying a past participle, is to be translated into German by sehr.

Exercise. I was mistaken, excuse (entschuldigen, *reg.*) me, sir. I am sure that I was not mistaken. They have missed the way in the forest. He must learn to behave better. I cared for you, but I did not care for myself. We should have conformed ourselves to him, if he had conformed himself to us. Conform (yourselves) to the customs (die Gebräuche) of the country in which you live. We have relied on his assistance. I do not meddle with him, do you meddle with his children? We have not meddled with them; they are very naughty (ungezogen). She longs for the arrival of her husband. What I have longed for (wonach ich ꝛc.) I have received. We had resolved on staying here, but we shall go out. I endeavor to do my work well. I do not venture to get up. Did he venture to begin such a work? Yes, sir, he ventured to do so. He who cannot refrain from laughing must not go thither. Do not mind it. He boasts of his knowledge. Would he have boasted of his knowledge, if you had not boasted of yours? Has she been ashamed of having done such an action? How did your father do? Has she been dressing herself? Now the beautiful evening-red is vanished. At what time did your father arrive (*perf.* in Germ.)? At what o'clock did he get up (*perf.*)? We were innocently inprisoned. Are they despised? You are a little rogue. The corn is being thrashed.

FIRST AND SECOND FUTURES.

Werde ich mich verirren, wenn ich auf diesem Wege fortgehe?	Shall I miss the way, if I follow that path?
Wirst du dich auf seinen letzten Brief beziehen?	Wilt thou refer to his last letter?
Er wird sich dessen nicht erinnern.	He will not remember it.
Wir werden uns von den Geschäften zurückziehen.	We shall retire from business.
Werdet ihr euch entschließen, euer Haus ausbessern zu lassen?	Shall you resolve on getting your house repaired?
Wo werden sich jetzt die Diebe aufhalten?	Where will the thieves now reside?
Ich werde mich unterworfen haben, ehe Sie wieder kommen.	I shall have submitted before you come back.
Er wird sich umgedreht haben, ehe du es glaubst.	He will have turned round sooner than thou thinkest.
Wir würden uns übergeben haben, wenn wir nicht aus dem Hause gegangen wären (sich übergeben).	We should have vomited, if we had not gone out of the house.
Würdet ihr euch seiner bemächtigen, wenn ich ihm nicht beistände?	Would you get him in your power, if I did not assist him?
Sie können sich seiner nicht bemächtigen.	They cannot get him in their power, (or, get the better of him).

Exercise. He will vomit, if he takes the medicine. We shall endeavor to get rid of him. He will think himself very clever. Will they be ashamed to have behaved in this way? I should have behaved better. Are you afraid of me? They will get him in their power. They will have vomited before they come home. Did you vomit? The rider turned about and threatened me with his whip (die Peitsche). I submit to your command, but he will not submit to it. Where does he reside? We shall reside in the city until next month. I retired from business, but he will never retire from it. What do you refer to? I refer to your last letter. What did he refer to? Will you remember him, if you see his writing? Wilt thou meddle with him? I should not have condescended to him, if I had known his bad character. If I had not promised you my assistance, would you have ventured to undertake such a work? He does not conform (himself) to the customs of our country. Whom shall we apply to? We shall apply to nobody. This pleasure will have lasted its longest. Suppose, thou dost not pay him, he will sue thee at law. He pretended that we had not been here yesterday. The sun which ani-

mates every thing, (the every thing animating sun) lightens and warms not only the earth, but many celestial bodies.

THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Es hungert mich or mich hungert.	I am hungry.
Dürstet es dich?	Art thou thirsty?
Es thut meiner Mutter sehr leid, daß Sie gedenken abzureisen.	My mother is very sorry that you intend to depart.
Es ist uns lieb, daß er fortgeht.	We are glad that he is going away.
Warum ist es euch bange?	Why are you afraid?
Gefällt Ihnen das Tuch nicht?	Do you not like this cloth?
Es gefällt mir sehr.	I like it very much.
Es donnerte und blitzte die ganze Nacht.	It thundered and lightened all the night.
Es wunderte ihn (or er wunderte sich), mich am Leben zu finden.	He was surprised to find me alive.
Ich glaubte, es regnete, aber es hagelte gestern Nachmittag.	I thought it rained yesterday afternoon, but it hailed.
Angenommen, daß es Ihnen gelinge, jenes Werk zu vollenden, so werden Sie vortheilhafterweise bekannt.	Suppose you succeed in finishing that work, you will become advantageously known.
Es gelang mir nicht, ihn von meiner Rechtschaffenheit zu überzeugen.	I did not succeed in convincing him of my integrity.

RULE. The case governed by the impersonal verb may be placed before the verb, the *„es"* *is, then,* to be suppressed; this omittance, however, does not take place in an interrogative sentence. Let the learner pay especially regard to those impersonal verbs which are not impersonal in English.

Exercise. Are you hungry? No, sir, I am not hungry, I am thirsty. I am sleepy. Are you cold? We do not succeed in convincing him of the truth of this affair. They were very sleepy, they fell asleep during the conversation. Was it raining or hailing, when you entered the house? It neither rained nor hailed, it was very fine weather. He is surprised to see me well. We were afraid of going thither, but we know now that the way is easily to be found. How do you like that dog? I was very sorry that I was not able to assist you. You must refrain from drinking

beer and smoking tobacco. We longed very much for you, dear mother. We referred to his letter of the fifteenth of this month. Where do the thieves reside? Is he ashamed of being in such bad company. He imagined that he was a learned man. We refreshed ourselves with a draught of old wine. He thought himself a clever fellow.

ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

Es hat seit vierzehn Tagen nicht geregnet.	It has not rained this fortnight.
Dieses Haus hat mir nie gefallen.	I never liked this house.
Jenes Tuch hat mir so lange gefallen, als ich dieses nicht sah.	I liked that cloth as long as I did not see this one.
Ich glaube, es hätte ihn befremdet, euch dort zu finden, wenn ich nicht bei euch gewesen wäre.	I believe it would have appeared strange to him to find you there, if I had not been with you.
Glauben Sie, daß es noch mehr blitzen wird?	Do you believe there will be more lightning?
Mir würden noch hundert Thaler fehlen, wenn mein Freund mir dieselben nicht geliehen hätte.	I should still want one hundred dollars more, if my friend had not lent them to me.
Es wird ihm nicht reuen, mir diesen Gefallen gethan zu haben.	He will not repent of having done me this favor.
Es würde uns nicht geschläfert haben, wenn wir am Tage nicht so gearbeitet hätten.	We should not have been sleepy, if we had not worked so hard in the day-time.

Exercise. I do not think that it will rain to-morrow, I believe we shall have a fine day. We hope so, we will take an airing to morrow. He repents of having communicated (mittheilen, *separ.*) that secret to his brother. How do you like this pleasure? I think we shall like it. They will not repent of having come to America. I only want two more dollars. We do not want anything, we have all that we desire (was wir wünschen). You would have been surprised to see my uncle in such a condition. I hope he will succeed in getting out of this dilemma (die Noth, die Klemme). They departed at five o'clock. They had alighted from their carriage in order to get a glass of fresh water. What has happened? Had they fallen asleep when they were drinking? That beautiful evening-red will have vanished before seven o'clock. We relied on his word, and he deceived us. We have refreshed ourselves. Did you cut your finger? I am very sorry that you have cut your finger.

ADVERBS.

Das Wetter ist heute schön.	The weather is beautiful to-day.
Es ist nirgends zu finden.	He is no where to be found.
Ich suchte ihn allenthalben.	I looked for him every where.
Mein Bruder schreibt schön, aber meine Schwester schreibt schöner.	My brother writes well, but my sister writes better.
Sind Sie gewiß, daß es schon regnet?	Are you sure that it rains already?
Ich glaube, daß er des Tags nur drei Stunden arbeitet.	I believe that he works but three hours a day.
Wir hörten, daß du des Morgens der Letzte seiest, der anfängt, und des Abends der Erste, der aufhört zu arbeiten.	We heard that thou wast the last to begin work in the morning, and the first to cease in the evening.
Ich habe das Vertrauen zu ihm, daß er mich am wenigsten betrügt.	I am confident that he will deceive me the least.
Der Herr, mit welchem ich die vergangene Woche über deinen Oheim sprach, ist heute gestorben.	The gentleman with whom I spoke last week about thy uncle, died to-day.

RULE. The adverb follows the verb in simple tenses, but precedes it if the sentence commences with one of those words (relative pronouns, &c.) which require the verb to be placed at the end of the phrase.

Observation 1st., Many adjectives may be employed adverbially, without requiring any change of termination, except to denote the degrees of comparison.

2d., Adverbs of time, indicating that something takes place at determinate intervals, statedly, or habitually, are put in the genitive case in German.

Ich werde bald ausgehen.	I shall soon go out.
Wir werden dich häufig besuchen.	We shall visit you frequently.
Er sagte, es würde übermorgen regnen.	He said, it would rain the day after to-morrow.
Ich werde hier auf- und abgehen, bis mein Vater kommt.	I shall walk up and down here until my father comes.
Willst du deinen Plan mit Gewalt durchsetzen?	Wilt thou carry thy plan through by force?
Er ist sehr spät gekommen.	He has come very late.
Wir waren so eben abgereis't, als ihr uns den Brief schicktet.	We had just started when you sent us the letter.
Wir glauben, daß er es gänzlich verdorben (verderben) hat.	We think he has entirely spoilt it.

Er soll heute bei Zeiten aufgestanden sein.	He is said to have got up betimes to-day.
Sein Wein soll außerordentlich gut sein.	His wine is said to be uncommonly good.
Wir haben ihn zufällig getroffen.	We met him by chance, or we happened to meet him.
Ich würde ihn in jedem Falle bezahlt haben, wenn ich ihn gesehen hätte.	I should have paid him at all events, if I had seen him.

RULE. In compound tenses the adverbs precede the infinitive, or the past participle, and if the latter is accompanied by an infinitive, the adverbs are also placed first.

Ihr Zögling hat gestern seine Aufgabe im Garten sehr gut gelernt. Ihr Zögling hat seine Aufgabe gestern im Garten sehr gut gelernt. Ihr Zögling hat seine Aufgabe sehr gut gestern im Garten gelernt.	Your pupil learned his lesson very well in the garden yesterday.
Gestern hat Ihr Zögling seine Aufgabe sehr gut im Garten gelernt. Gestern im Garten hat ihr Zögling seine Aufgabe sehr gut gelernt.	Yesterday your pupil learned his lesson very well in the garden.
Sehr gut hat ihr Zögling seine Aufgabe gestern im Garten gelernt. Sehr gut hat Ihr Zögling gestern seine Aufgabe im Garten gelernt.	Very well your pupil has yesterday learned his lesson in the garden.

(*This construction is given in order to illustrate the German.*)

Allerdings werde ich ihn loben.	Most certainly I shall praise him.
Wir sind äußerst erfreut darüber.	We are exceedingly glad of it.
Er hat uns neulich gesehen.	He has seen us lately.
Ich bin seit acht Tagen drei Mal bei ihm eingekehrt.	I have called on him three times this fortnight.
Wir haben lange Zeit bei Ihrem Bruder in Frankreich gewohnt.	We lived a long time with your brother in France.
Er hat auf immer Abschied von ihnen genommen.	He has taken leave of them for ever.

Ich werde ohne Zweifel (or ohne Zweifel werde ich) eine große Belohnung bekommen.	I shall without doubt get a great reward.
Nach und nach werden wir Herr einer Sprache.	By degrees we become master of a language.

Rule. There are, as the learner may have observed, three kinds of adverbs, viz.: *adverbs of time*, *adverbs of place*, and *adverbs denoting manner* (*quality*) — **Umstandswörter der Weise** —. The *adverbs of time* precede the *adverbs of place*, and the *adverbs of quality* either precede or follow the other ones.

The *adverbs of time* precede the object, but if the latter is expressed by a pronoun, the adverbs of time — as the other two kinds of adverbs always do — follow the object; unless it be governed by a preposition, in which case the object is preceded by the adverb.

We must add, that the position of the adverbs depends chiefly on the importance and prominence which the speaker wishes to give them, and that they (the adverbs, and also other parts of the sentence) are placed nearer the beginning of the sentence in proportion to the degree of emphasis belonging to them, and that the subject is always placed after the verb in simple tenses, or after the auxiliary in compound tenses, if the phrase commences, either with an adverb, or some other word in the phrase.

ON THE NEGATIVE.

„Nicht," *not.*

Ich habe ihn nicht gesehen.	I have not seen him.
Ich habe ihn seit vierzehn Tagen nicht gesehen.	I have not seen him this fortnight.
Haben Sie meinen Bruder in der Stube gefunden?	Did you find my brother in the room?
Ich habe ihn nicht dort gefunden.	I did not find him there.
Ich glaube, daß er heute Nacht nicht kommen wird.	I believe he will not come to-night.
Ist er gestern früh nicht hier gewesen?	Was he not here yesterday morning?
Man muß heut' zu Tage nicht so albern handeln, wie du.	One must not act so silly now-a-days as you do.

Greife ihn nicht von vorn, sondern von hinten an.	Do not seize him in front, but from behind.
Ich habe nicht seine Trägheit, sondern seine Gleichgültigkeit getadelt.	I have not censured his indolence, but his indifference.
Ich freue mich nicht über seine Gelehrsamkeit, aber über seine Unerschrockenheit.	I do not rejoice at his learning, but at his intrepidity.
Wir freuen uns über seine Unerschrockenheit, aber sie freut sich über seine Gelehrsamkeit.	We rejoice at his intrepidity, but she rejoices at his learning.
Haben sie ihre Arbeit noch nicht vollendet?	Have they not yet finished their work?
Sie haben dieselbe noch nicht vollendet.	They have not yet finished it.

Rule. For the negative, "nicht," *not*, we add to the rules already given, which are also applicable to it; that it follows the adverbs of time, but precedes the other adverbs, and that it precedes the object if the negative sentence is followed by an affirmative one having the same subject—the English *but* is then translated either by sondern or aber; but it must be translated by aber, if the first sentence is also affirmative.

Exercise. He was very friendly. If you should happen to meet Mr. X., tell him that I shall come to-morrow. We had been unusally merry. I breakfast at eight o'clock in the morning. He answers sometimes well, at other times (sometimes) badly. We now have uncommonly bad weather. We should certainly have seen him if he had been there. He generally comes to us at ten o'clock in the evening. We must get up betimes to-morrow. I saw him by chance. At what time did he come? It was very late, it was ten o'clock. I think your brother knows the least. Does it rain already? He was walking up and down here (for) an hour. I was compelled to take my knife by force. He has written his exercises pretty well (ziemlich gut). We paid all at once. If he is not here, he must be there. That is more easily said than done. That was well done. She was uncommonly kind. Have you not yet sent off that letter? They were exceedingly afraid to speak to him. He will most certainly accompany his uncle. Whither is he going? How many times did you sleep in that hotel? I have often slept there. To-night he

will stay at home, and to-morrow evening he will go to the theatre. Where will you go to-morrow morning? His strength diminished (abnehmen, *separ.*) more and more (immer mehr). The weather grew warmer and warmer. His wife seems to become prouder and prouder. I never find you at home. There was not one of my friends. Have you sweet apples? Mine are not sweet apples. Who is it? It is I. We have not answered your letter, that is true, but we have answered your brother's. Now-a-days one must be cautious. Did you not see my brother yesterday morning? He will become known by degrees. The boy who had been so industrious the day before yesterday, is very lazy to-day. I cannot praise him. I do not praise him, but his sister praises him. We did not stay long at Mr. Turner's. Where are you coming from? I am coming from my father's. My aunt becomes weaker and weaker, and my uncle becomes stronger and stronger. That wine makes me sick. Why is that man ashamed? He does his work very soon. Do you wish to undertake that work to-day? Does he love you more than me? He promises to his father to be very industrious. I have not less courage than your friend has. Shall you resolve on getting your house repaired? He will not remember it. He will have turned round sooner, you think. Would he get them in his power, if we did not assist him? Yesterday your pupil learned his lesson very well in the garden.

PREPOSITIONS.

Wir werden statt (or anstatt) unseres Handelsgenossen nach England reisen.	We shall go to England instead of our partner.
Er spielte anstatt zu studiren, und sie machte einen Spaziergang anstatt zu sticken.	He was playing instead of studying, and she took a walk instead of embroidering.
Sie wollen uns an Kindes Statt annehmen.	They are willing to adopt us.
Die Feinde waren vor einer Stunde noch außerhalb der Stadt, aber jetzt sind sie innerhalb derselben.	The enemies were yet without the city an hour ago, but now they are within it.
Es soll innerhalb weniger Minuten Statt finden.	They say it will take place within a few minutes.

Wir sahen ihn nicht oberhalb des Sees, sondern unterhalb desselben.	We did not see him on the upper side of the lake, but on the lower side of it.
Wir waren diesseit des Flusses, und sie waren jenseit des Flusses.	We were on this side of the river, and they were on that side of the river.
Bemerkten Sie den Hasen diesseit der Hecke oder jenseit der Hecke?	Did you notice the hare on this side of the hedge, or on that side?
Kraft seines Amtes ließ er den Verbrecher enthaupten.	By virtue of his office, he caused the criminal to be beheaded.
Kraft des von meinem Advokaten erhaltenen Auftrages, fordere ich die Papiere von Ihnen.	By virtue of the charge received from my lawyer, I demand the documents of you.
Carl hat sich vermöge seines Fleißes und seiner guten Anlagen diese Kenntnisse erworben.	Charles has acquired this knowledge by dint of his diligence and talents.
Laut des Befehles ließ der General den Verbrecher hinrichten.	According to the order, the general had the criminal executed.
Laut der Urkunde kann er keinen Anspruch auf dieses Gut machen.	He can lay no claim to this estate conformably with the document.
Unser Vater hat dieses Ansehn mittels (or mittelst) seiner Rechtschaffenheit und Treue erlangt.	Our father has acquired this consideration by means of his integrity and fidelity.
Vermittelst des Einflusses seiner reichen Tante hat er diese Stelle erhalten.	He has obtained this situation by means of the influence of his rich aunt.
Die Schlacht von Bunker's Hügel hat unweit Boston stattgefunden.	The battle of Bunker's hill took place not far from Boston.
Unweit der Stadt Prag wurde im Jahre 1620 eine große Schlacht geliefert.	A great battle was fought not far from the city of Prague, in the year 1620.
Während seiner Abwesenheit mußte ich tüchtig arbeiten.	During his absence I was obliged to work hard.
Wo war er während des Krieges?	Where was he during the war?
Wir belustigten uns, während er unsere Uebungen verbesserte.	We amused ourselves whilst he was correcting our exercises.
Ich begleite Sie der Gesellschaft halben.	I accompany you for the sake of (your) company.
Freundschaft halber hat er mir diesen Gefallen gethan.	He did me that favor out of friendship.
Meinethalben magst du es thun.	So far as I am concerned, thou mayest do it.

Ich höre des Kranken halben auf zu singen und nicht eurethalben.	I stop singing on account of the sick man, and not on your account.
Weßhalb (wessenthalb) wollen Sie aufbrechen?	On what account (or, for what reason) do you wish to depart?
Ich würde deßhalb nicht fortgehen.	I would not go away on that account.
Ich tadelte ihn wegen seines schlechten Betragens (or seines schlechten Betragens wegen).	I censured him for his bad conduct.
Meinetwegen mögen Sie singen oder pfeifen, Sie ärgern mich nicht.	For aught I care, you may sing or whistle, you do not annoy me.
Weßwegen fragen Sie mich denn, Sie wissen es ja.	What do you ask me for? you, surely, know it.
Ich weiß es nicht; deßwegen frage ich Sie, mein Herr.	I do not know it, for that reason I ask you, sir.
Er bemerkte es ungeachtet seiner Kurzsichtigkeit, (or seiner Kurzsichtigkeit ungeachtet).	He perceived it, notwithstanding, his short-sightedness.
Dessen ungeachtet ist er belohnt worden.	Notwithstanding that, (nevertheless), he has been rewarded.
Um Gottes willen helfen Sie mir, ich bin sonst verloren.	For God's sake, relieve me, or I shall be lost.
Um des Friedens willen will ich nachgeben.	I will yield to it for the sake of peace.
Wollen Sie es nicht meines alten Vaters willen thun?	Will you not do it for my old father's sake?
Ich werde es um seinetwillen und um meiner Ehre willen thun.	I shall do it for his sake, and for the sake of my honor.
Um eines leeren Titels willen opferte er das Glück seiner Familie auf.	For the sake of an empty title, he sacrificed the happiness of his family.

RULE. Of the prepositions which govern the genitive, the following are placed before the noun, viz:

anstatt, statt, *instead of.*	kraft, *by virtue of.*
außerhalb, *without.*	vermöge, *by dint of.*
innerhalb, *within.*	laut, *according to.*
oberhalb, *on the upper side.*	mittels, *by means of.*
unterhalb, *on the lower side.*	unweit, *not far from.*
diesseit, *on this side.*	während, *during, whilst;*
jenseit, *on that side.*	

there is only one, viz, halben, *on account of*, that must follow the noun; its final n is changed into r, if the preceding noun is without any article or pronoun;

wegen, *for, because of*, and **ungeachtet**, *notwithstanding*, may be placed either before or after the noun; and **um — willen**, *for the sake of*, takes the noun between its two parts.

Observation. The genitive of the personal pronouns is joined to **halben**, **wegen**, and **um — willen**, and it then changes the final **r** into **t**.

Exercise. Where is your brother? He is within the house. No, sir, I have looked for him every where, and did not find him. Perhaps, he is playing instead of studying. Have you ever been on the upper side of this lake? Will you continue standing without the house? No, madam, I will take a walk on this side of the river, whilst you are conversing with that gentleman. Do you see the Frenchman on the other side of the road? Yes, sir, I perceive him by means of my spectacles (die Brille). Are you near-sighted? I am, but I can perceive our friend on the lower side of the river. He thinks that I do it on account of the money. Why will you do it? I shall do it for my friend's sake. Will they not keep their promise for their honor's sake? According to the report (der Bericht) he has acted wrong, and I desire him, by virtue of the order received, to be executed. He has acquired the knowledge of the German language by dint of his diligence and attention. For God's sake, let me alone, thou robber! What do you spoil your book for? He censured me notwithstanding my love for him. Many poor creatures live in New-York, nevertheless it is a very rich city.

PREPOSITIONS,

that govern the Dative.

Dieser Rock ist aus der Mode.	This coat is out of fashion.
Gehen Sie mir aus dem Wege.	Go out of my way.
Aus seinem Briefe ersehen wir, daß er Neu-Orleans verlassen hat.	We see from his letter that he has left New-Orleans.
Sie thaten es aus eigenem Willen (or Antriebe).	They did it of their own accord.
Ich weiß es aus Erfahrung.	I know it by experience.
Wir sahen sie nie aus dem Hause gehen.	We never saw her go out of the house.

Sie ist noch nicht außer Gefahr.	She is not yet out of danger.
Du mußt nicht so laufen, sonst wirst du ganz außer Athem sein, wann du dort ankommst.	Thou must not run so, otherwise thou wilt be quite out of breath when thou arrivest there.
Sie ist außer sich vor Freude.	She is beside herself for joy.
Die Gesellschaft bestand, außer Ihrem Herrn Vater, aus sieben Personen.	The party consisted of seven persons, beside your father.
Er hält sich außer Landes auf (*genitive*).	He resides abroad.
Ich sitze bei meinem Oheim.	I am sitting with my uncle.
Wir ergriffen ihn bei den Haaren.	We took hold of him by his hair.
Haben Sie Geld bei sich?	Have you money with you?
Ich habe nur einige Cents bei mir.	I have but a few cents with me.
Er steht bei dem Präsidenten in Gunst.	He is in favor with the president.
Ich bin bei meinen Freunden gewesen.	I have been with my friends.
Fanden Sie ihn bei der Arbeit?	Did you find him at his work?
Sie wohnt nahe bei.	She lives near by.
Bei meiner Ehre, ich habe dich nicht betrogen.	On my honor, I did not deceive thee.
Es ist bei Todesstrafe verboten.	It is forbidden on pain of death.
Das Heilmittel hat Nichts bei ihr genützt.	This remedy was of no avail with her.
Ist Ihr Herr Vater bei guter Gesundheit?	Is your father in good health?
Er wurde krank und starb binnen vierzehn Tagen.	He fell sick and died within a fortnight.
Es wird sich binnen einigen Minuten ereignen.	It will happen within a few minutes.
Er versicherte mir mit Thränen in den Augen, daß er unschuldig sei.	He assured me with tears in his eyes that he was innocent.
Wir sind mit ihm zufrieden.	We are satisfied with him.
Wie steht es mit ihr?	How is it with her?
Meine Geschwister werden nicht mit euch gehen.	My brothers and sisters will not go along with you.
Er hatte vier Kinder mit seiner ersten Frau.	He had four children by his first wife.
Was wollen Sie mit diesen Worten sagen?	What do you mean by these words?
Ich habe heute sechs Briefe mit der Post bekommen.	I have received six letters by the mail to-day.
Thut er es mit Fleiß (or mit Absicht)?	Does he do it on purpose?
Wir wollen Gutes mit Gutem vergelten, und nicht Gutes mit Bösem.	We will do good to those who do us good, and not return evil for good.

Nach der Mittagsmahlzeit werde ich einen Spaziergang machen.	After dinner I shall take a walk.
Er ist nach der neuesten Mode gekleidet.	He is dressed in the newest fashion
Sie leben nach der Weise der Amerikaner.	They live after the manner of the Americans.
Laßt sie der Reihe nach sprechen.	Let them speak by turns.
Haben Sie nach dem Doktor geschickt?	Have you sent for the doctor?
Ich habe nach seinem Namen gefragt.	I have asked for his name.
Die Brühe schmeckt nach Knoblauch.	The gravy tastes of garlic.
Wonach riecht es hier?	What does it smell of here?
Er schlägt nach mir.	He strikes at me.
Urtheilen Sie nicht dem Scheine nach.	Do not judge from appearances (the appearance).
Er sitzt nächst meinem Vater.	He is sitting next to my father.
Wir kommen nächst ihm.	We come next to him.
Herr N. nebst seiner ganzen Familie besuchte mich gestern.	Mr. N. with all his family paid me a visit yesterday.
Nebst Schiller's Werken besitzt er auch Göthe's Werke.	Besides the works of Schiller, he also possesses the works of Gœthe.
Ich habe ihn seit einem Jahre nicht gesehen.	It is a year since I have seen him.
Es ist seit dem Tode seines Vaters, daß ich ihn nicht gesehen habe.	I have not seen him since the death of his father. (It is since the death of his father that I have (not) seen him).
Er ist eben von Amsterdam angekommen.	He has just arrived from Amsterdam.
Der Mensch ist selten ganz vom Aberglauben frei.	Man seldom is quite free from superstition.
Diese Kette ist von Gold.	That chain is of gold.
Diese Sache ist von großer Bedeutung.	That affair is of great importance.
Er spricht von der Unsterblichkeit der Seele.	He speaks of the immortality of the soul.
Ich bin ein Deutscher von Geburt.	I am by birth a German.
Er ist von Profession ein Goldschmied.	He is a goldsmith by trade.
Sie leben von trockenem Brode und Wasser.	They live on dry bread and water.
Er wurde von ihr geschlagen.	He was beaten by her.

Wir gehen zu dem Bruder unseres Freundes.	We are going to the brother of our friend.
Wo gehen Sie hin?	Where are you going to?
Wollen Sie mir die Waaren zu Land oder zu Wasser schicken?	Will you send me the goods by land, or by water?
Ich werde Ihnen dieselben zu Wasser schicken.	I shall send them to you by water.
Ist euer Vetter zu Fuß oder zu Pferd angekommen?	Has your cousin arrived on foot, or on horseback?
Sie werden sich zu Tode essen.	You will kill yourself by eating too much.
Er sieht zum Fenster hinaus.	He is looking out of the window.
Er ist meinem Vorhaben entgegen, (or gegen mein Vorhaben.)	He opposes (is against) my design.
Ich werde meinem Vater entgegen gehen.	I shall go to meet my father.
Der Hund lief mir freudig entgegen.	The dog ran joyfully to meet me.
Der englische Gesandte wohnt gegenüber.	The English ambassador lives over the way (opposite).
Sie finden den erwähnten Laden gerade meinem Hause gegenüber.	You (will) find the store mentioned directly opposite my house.
Er lebt den Vorschriften des Arztes gemäß.	He lives according to the prescription of the physician.
Ich thue es nicht gern, aber ich thue es meinem Versprechen gemäß.	I am not fond of doing so, but I (shall) do it according to my promise.
Ist es nicht der Vernunft zuwider?	Is it not contrary to reason?
Es ist nicht der Vernunft zuwider, ein einfaches Leben zu führen.	It is not contrary to reason to lead a frugal life.
Diese Speise ist mir sehr zuwider.	I have a great dislike to that dish.
Die Soldaten standen längs dem Ufer, (or längs des Ufers).	The soldiers were standing along the coast.
Sie pflanzten Kirschbäume längs der Mauer.	They planted cherry-trees along the wall.
Er unternahm dieses Geschäft trotz aller Vorstellungen und Einwendungen.	He undertook that business in spite of all remonstrances and objections.
Er ißt trotz (or gleich) einem Drescher.	He eats like a thrasher (day-laborer).
Ihrem Auftrage zufolge (or zufolge Ihres Auftrages) habe ich diese Füllen gekauft.	In accordance with (consequence of) your commission I have bought these colts.

RULE. The following prepositions, governing the dative, are placed before the noun, viz.:

aus, *out of, from, of.*
außer, *out of, beside.*
bei, *by, at.*
binnen, *within.*
mit, *with.*
nach, *after.*
nächst, *next.*
nebst, *with, besides.*
seit, *since.*
von, *of, from, by.*
zu, *to, at.*

Nach, *after*, is sometimes placed after the noun.

The following prepositions are placed after the noun, viz.:

entgegen, *against.*
gegenüber, *opposite.*
gemäß, *according to.*
zuwider, *against.*

The three following may govern either the genitive, or dative, viz.: längs, *along;* trotz, *in spite of;* and zufolge, *in consequence of.*

Exercise. I do it of my own accord. Is the waistcoat out of fashion now? The traveller knows by experience that living (das Leben) is dear in cities. He has run so fast that he is out of breath. We saw him from our window. They were beside themselves for joy. I have taken him by his hand, and not by his hair. Have you been with my cousin? he has asked for you. I did not find him at work, he was asleep. That action is forbidden on pain of death. Are they not satisfied with my conduct? What did he mean by these words? I hope thou didst not break my knife on purpose. After nine o'clock my mother will have gone out, I hope you will then be with me. His scholars are reading by turns. Do they not read by turns? What does the gravy taste of? Beside this dollar, I have not a single cent with me. She is always sad since the death of her husband. Is your handkerchief of wool, or of silk? It is (of) neither (es ist Keines von Beiden). What is he speaking of? He is speaking of the weather. Is he an American, or an Englishman, by birth? I do not know, but I have heard that he is a watchmaker by trade. Where are you going to? I am going either to England, or to my cousin in France. Has your uncle come on horseback? Has he a sound judgment? His behavior is contrary to (a) sound judgment. I have sent for a physician.

Mr. N. punished her in spite of all remonstrances. He speaks like a learned man. Mr. N. paid me a visit with all his children the day before yesterday. I shall send you the goods by water. He did it in spite of all objections. I shall deliver him from prison according to my promise. For God's sake, do not kill him. My father has gained his authority by means of integrity and fidelity.

PREPOSITIONS,

that govern the accusative.

Wir gingen gestern durch Ihren Garten.	We walked through your garden yesterday.
Reis'ten Sie durch Italien?	Did you travel through Italy?
Wir waren die ganze Nacht durch (or hindurch) munter.	We were awake all the night (through).
Wo hast du dich das ganze Jahr durch (or hindurch) aufgehalten?	Where have you resided all the year (through)?
Er sprach durch's Sprachrohr zu uns.	He spoke to us through the speaking trumpet.
Er wurde durch Reisen arm.	He became poor by travelling.
Er erlangte es durch Schmeichelei.	He obtained it by flattery.
Diese Geschichte ist durch ganz Amerika bekannt.	That affair is known throughout America.
Was für den Einen nützlich ist, ist oft für den Andern schädlich.	What is useful (advantageous) to one, is often disadvantageous to another.
Ich danke Ihnen für Ihre Güte.	I thank you for your kindness.
Für wen siehst du mich an?	Whom do you take me for?
Ich nehme es für Spaß auf.	I take it to be a jest.
Er ist Tag für Tag betrunken.	He is drunk every day (day by day.)
Sie sind Alle gegen uns.	They all are against us.
Er kann nicht gegen den Strom schwimmen.	He cannot swim against the stream.
Es ist unangenehm gegen den Wind zu gehen.	It is disagreeable to go against the wind.
Sie sind sehr gütig gegen mich.	They are very kind to (wards) me.
Wir werden gegen das Ende der Woche abreisen.	We shall set out towards the end of the week.
Er kam gegen vier Uhr an.	He arrived toward four o'clock.
Seine Stimme ist Nichts gegen die seines Bruders.	His voice is nothing compared with his brother's.
Er ist Nichts gegen ihn.	He is nothing compared with him.
Es ist eins gegen zehn, daß er gewinnen wird.	It is one to ten that he will gain.
Er brachte die ganze Nacht ohne Schlaf zu.	He passed the whole night without sleep.

Ich werde nicht ohne einen Führer durch den Wald reisen.	I shall not go through the forest without a guide.
Er that es, ohne daran zu denken.	He did so without thinking of it.
Sie saßen Alle um den Tisch.	They all were sitting round the table.
Alle um sie waren lustig, und sie weinte.	All around her were merry, and she was weeping.
Sie fiel ihm um den Hals.	She fell upon his neck.
Es war sehr spät, es war um Mitternacht.	It was very late, it was about midnight.
Ich gehe einen um den andern Tag aus.	I go out every other day.
Spielt ihr um Geld?	Do you play for money?
Wir spielen um Nichts.	We play for a trifle.
Sie ist nicht sehr um ihn besorgt.	She does not care much for him.
Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung.	I beg your pardon.
Dieser Tisch ist um drei Zoll länger, als jener.	This table is about three inches longer than that.
Wirf es nicht wider (gegen) die Wand.	Do not throw it against the wall.
Wer nicht für mich ist, der ist gegen mich.	He that is not with me, is against me.

The prepositions, governing the accusative are:

durch, *through, by.* — ohne, *without.*
für, *for.* — um, *about, around.*
gegen, *against, towards.* — wider, *against;*
sonder, *without,* is obsolete, and ohne is used for *it.*

Exercise. The boy threw a stone through the window. Did you travel through Switzerland? He has recovered by fasting (das Fasten). Many a one has made himself sick by intemperance. The revolution was felt throughout Europe. He thinks himself a learned man. I take it for a speaking-trumpet. Will you be kind enough to copy (abschreiben, *separ.*) this letter for me? Yes, madam, with all my heart (von ganzem Herzen). He lives within the walls of the city. Notwithstanding your description (die Beschreibung), I did not find him. I heard every word you said. (I have heard word for word that you said). Do you travel towards the south or towards the north? He defends me against my enemies. It is twenty to one that you will not receive that present. He thinks all men fools in comparison with him. It is beyond doubt that he is imprisoned. I walked through the forest without a guide. They were sitting round the tree, and were playing. The earth moves (sich bewegen) round the sun.

I do not care for her. I beg your pardon, if I have offended you, sir. What did they play for? They played for a trifle. He that is not with me, is against me.

PREPOSITIONS,

that govern the dative and accusative.

Meine Mütze hängt an jenem Nagel.	My cap hangs on that nail.
Hänge meine Mütze an jenen Nagel.	Hang my cap on that nail.
Ist Alles an seinem rechten Platz?	Is every thing in its proper place?
Ich lege Alles an seinen rechten Platz.	I put every thing in its proper place
Ich arbeite an meiner Sprachlehre.	I am working at my grammar.
Findest du Vergnügen am Jagen?	Do you take pleasure in hunting?
Wir glauben an Einen Gott.	We believe in one God.
Es geschah am siebenten Juli.	It happened on the seventh of July
Er richtete seine Rede an seinen Vater.	He directed his discourse to his father.
Er füllte das Glas bis an den Rand.	He filled the glass to the brim.
Alles an ihr ist neu.	Every thing about her is new.
Wir gingen an Ihrem Landgute vorbei.	We passed by your farm.
Wir kennen dich an deinem Gange.	We know thee by thy gait.
Sie starb am gelben Fieber.	She died of the yellow fever.
Die Suppe ist auf dem Tische.	The soup is on the table.
Bringe die Suppe auf den Tisch.	Bring the soup on the table.
Er ging auf dem Eise.	He was walking on the ice.
Er ging auf das Eis.	He went upon the ice.
Das ganze Hauswesen ruht auf mir.	All the domestic affairs rest upon me.
Sie müssen alle ihre Gedanken auf das Hauswesen richten.	You must turn all your thoughts upon the domestic affairs.
Die Soldaten bestraften den Verbrecher auf den Befehl ihres Generals.	The soldiers punished the criminal, by (the) order of their general.
Wir thaten es auf seine Kosten.	We did it at his expense.
Wir warteten eine Stunde auf ihn.	We waited an hour for him.
Sie haben uns auf der That ertappt.	They have taken us in the act.
Unsere Kinder sind auf dem Lande, und wir werden nächsten Montag auf's Land gehen.	Our children are in the country, and we shall go into the country next Monday.
Schreiben Sie auf diese Weise oder auf jene Weise?	Do you write in this manner, or in that (manner)?
Unsere Fenster gehen auf die Straße und nicht auf den Hof.	Our windows overlook the street, and not the yard.
Sie ist sehr stolz auf ihre Kinder.	She is very proud of her children.

Er sitzt hinter dem Ofen.	He is sitting behind the stove.
Er setzt sich hinter den Ofen.	He is going to sit down behind the stove.
Er ist in der Kirche, in der Schule.	He is at church, at school.
Er geht in die Kirche, in die Schule.	He is going to church, to school.
Er lebt in den Tag hinein.	He lives at random.
Rußland ist mit Deutschland im Kriege.	Russia is at war with Germany.
Das Geld, welches ich Ihnen in den Kauf gab, gab ich Ihnen in die Hand.	The money which I gave you into the bargain, I gave into your hand.
Der Stuhl steht neben dem Tische.	The chair is (standing) beside the table.
Stelle den Stuhl neben den Tisch.	Put the chair beside the table.
Ich bin glücklich, neben Ihnen sitzen zu können.	I am happy in being permitted to sit beside you.
Ich bin glücklich, mich neben Sie setzen zu können.	I am happy in being permitted to take a seat by your side.
Unsere Stube ist über der Ihrigen.	Our room is above yours.
Wir werden über den Fluß marschiren.	We shall march across the river.
Er sitzt über mir.	He is sitting above me.
Er setzt sich über Alles weg, er ist sehr leichtfertig.	He does not mind anything, he is very inconsiderate.
Es ist Freude im Himmel über einen Sünder, der Buße thut.	There is joy in heaven over one sinner who repents.
Meine Uhr hängt über dem Bilde.	My watch is hanging above the picture.
Das ging weit über seine Einbildungskraft, or über seine Begriffe.	That was far above his imagination *or* above his comprehension.
Wir haben große Gewalt über ihn.	We have much influence over him.
Ich reis'te über Bremen nach Amerika.	I travelled by the way of Bremen to America.
Er schlief unter jenem Baume.	He slept under yonder tree.
Die Schlange kroch (kriechen) unter diesen Baum.	The snake crept under this tree.
Alles unter der Sonne ist dem Tode ausgesetzt.	Every thing under the sun is exposed to death.
Es wurde unter sie vertheilt.	It was distributed among them.
Ich befand mich nicht unter ihnen.	I was not among them.
Er vergaß unter andern Dingen auch seine Uhr.	He forgot among other things also his watch.
Sie will nicht unter ihrem Range heirathen.	She will not marry beneath her rank.
Es ist unter seiner Würde, so zu handeln.	It is beneath his dignity to act thus *or* he is above acting thus.

Wir kennen keinen Herrn unter diesen Namen.	We do not know a gentleman of that name.
Er arbeitete unter der Kirche, unter der Predigt.	He was working during the (divine) service, during the sermon.
Er steht vor der Thür.	He is standing before the door.
Er warf den Sack vor die Thür.	He threw the bag before the door.
Ich fürchte mich nicht vor diesem Menschen.	I am not afraid of this man.
Es ist kein Ansehn der Person vor Gott.	There is no respect of person with God.
Sie war außer sich vor Freude.	She was beside herself for joy.
Er wollte mich vor neun Uhr besuchen, aber er kam nicht.	He intended to visit me before nine o'clock, but he did not come.
Er lebte lange Zeit zwischen Furcht und Hoffnung.	He was a long time betwixt fear and hope.
Zwischen mir und dir soll kein Geheimniß sein.	There shall be no secret between thee and me.
Er warf mich zwischen zwei Feuer.	He threw me between two fires.

RULE. The following prepositions, viz.

an, *at, on.*	**über**, *over, above.*
auf, *on, upon.*	**unter**, *under, among, in the midst of.*
hinter, *behind.*	**vor**, *before, of.*
in, *in, into.*	**zwischen**, *between;*
neben, *at the side of.*	

govern the dative, when they convey the idea of rest in, or motion within a place; and the accusative, when they convey the idea of motion towards a place.

Ich bin am sieben und zwanzigsten Juni geboren	I am born on the twenty-seventh of June.
Wir glauben an's Wort Gottes.	We believe in the word of God.
Haben Sie unsere Schwester im Zimmer gesehen?	Have you seen our sister in the room?
Wir gingen letzte Woche nicht in's Theater.	We did not go to the theatre last week.
Er wurde vom Morde freigesprochen.	He was acquitted from murder.
Wie viel will er vom Preise ablassen?	How much will he abate of the price?
Er ging auf's Eis.	He went upon the ice.
Er steht beim Präsidenten in Gunst.	He is in favor with the president.
Sie sprach durch's Sprachrohr zu uns.	She spoke to us through the speaking-trumpet.

Das Kind sitzt hinterm Bette.	The child is sitting behind the bed.
Das Kind setzt sich hinter's Bett.	The child is going to sit down behind the bed.
Wir werden gegen's Ende der Woche abreisen.	We shall set out towards the end of the week.
Der Hund ist nicht unter dem Stuhle, er ist unterm Tische.	The dog is not under the chair, he is under the table.
Legen Sie gefälligst meinen Antheil untern Tisch.	Put my part under the table, if you please.
Meine Uhr hängt überm Spiegel.	My watch is hanging above the looking-glass.
Ueber's Jahr werde ich nach Deutschland reisen.	I shall go to Germany next year.
Er sieht zum Fenster hinaus.	He is looking out of the window.

RULE. The article is frequently contracted with the preceding preposition into one word, by dropping the last letter of the preposition, and substituting in its place the last letter of the dative case of the article. When the preposition governs the accusative case, the last letter of the neuter article, 's, is added to the preposition.—When the preposition governing the dative does not terminate in n, the final letter of the article must be subjoined to it.

Exercise. Do you believe that report? Whose hat is hanging on this nail? Do you take pleasure in dancing? What (has) happened on the twenty-second of February? Whom do you apply to? We passed by your house, but we did not see you at the window. She died of a sore (bösen) throat. Every thing depends on him. Do not rely upon him, he is an impostor. How long did you wait for me? I hope to take him in the act. A truly learned man is not proud of his learning. Do your windows overlook the street? He does not go to the concert, he was in the theatre. You must not live at random. He will lend me that book for two weeks. He hears our conversation, he is behind the door, let us go behind the house. I put the documents beside the purse on the table. He dwells above me. He does not see the danger that hovers over his head. Can you leap (springen) over this brook? He is above such an action. (Eine solche — ist unter seiner Würde.) Socrates was the wisest man among the Greeks. The dog is under the table. She does not mind any thing. That is above his comprehension. I travelled to Phi-

ladelphia by the way of Elizabeth-town. How many dollars have you distributed among them? Are you afraid of cats? There is no respect of person with God. My shop (die Werkstatt) is between his two houses. Are you happy in our midst? (Do you find yourself well among us?) There is a great difference (der Unterschied) between *for* and *before*. I visit him every other day. He that is not with me, is against me. He became rich by travelling. Can you speak through the speaking-trumpet? What do you take it for? Are you an American by birth? They live on bread and butter. He had only one son by his first wife. The German ambassador has been with us to-day. They know it by experience that he is a wicked fellow. You are not in my way, madam.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Among the following conjunctions, we have given a number of words, which are properly adverbs; they are presented here, because they have the same connective character and use as the conjunctions.

Als er seine Vorlesungen beendigt hatte, verließ er den Saal.	When he had finished his lectures, he left the saloon (the room).
Als die Sonne aufging, reis'te unser Vater ab.	When the sun was rising, our father was setting out.
Es kommt mir vor, als hätte er unrecht gehandelt.	It appears to me as (if) he had acted wrong.
Da Sie mein Freund sind, so will ich Sie auch als einen Freund behandeln.	As you are my friend, I will treat you as a friend.

Observation. The English *as*, denoting a cause or reason, must be translated into German by da.

Er will nicht aufhören zu lernen, bis er seine Aufgabe auswendig kann.	He will not cease learning *until he* knows his lesson by heart.
Ehe (or bevor) du nach Brooklyn kommst, bin ich zweimal dort gewesen.	*Before* thou wilt come to Brooklyn I shall have been there twice.
Rufen Sie mich, falls (or dafern) mein Freund bei mir einsprechen sollte.	Call me in case my friend should happen to call on me.

Daß du dich gut aufführen wirst, setze ich voraus.	That thou wilt behave well, I take for granted.
Ich bestehe darauf, daß er sie um Verzeihung bittet.	I insist upon his begging her pardon
Der Glaser muß einen Diamant haben, damit (or auf daß) er das Glas entzwei schneide.	The glazier must have a diamond in order that he may (to) cut (asunder) the glass.
Er verschloß seine Thür und verriegelte sie, damit er nicht beraubt würde.	He locked his door and bolted it, lest he should be robbed.
Nachdem ich mein Morgengebet verrichtet hatte, ging ich an meine Arbeit.	After having offered (performed) my morning-prayer, I went to work.
Sie werden belohnt, je nachdem sie fleißig sind.	They are rewarded in proportion (according) as they are industrious.
Ob es morgen schönes oder schlechtes Wetter sein wird, das weiß ich nicht.	Whether it will be pleasant or disagreeable weather to-morrow, I do not know.
Er that es, obgleich (or ungeachtet) ich es ihm verboten hatte.	He did it, although I had forbidden him to do so.
Wenn mich meine Schuldner bezahlten, so würde ich gleich meine Gläubiger bezahlen.	If my debtors would pay me, I should immediately pay my creditors.
Es hat das Ansehn, als wenn (or als ob) es regnen wollte.	It appears as if it were going to rain.
Ich traue ihm zum zweiten Male, wenn er mich gleich das erste Mal betrogen hat.	I trust him for the second time, though he has deceived me in our very first business-transaction.

RULE 1st., In a compound sentence, commencing with a conjunction, the nominative of the second member is placed in German after the verb in simple tenses, or after the auxiliary in compound tenses.

2d., The following conjunctions, most of which have been employed in the foregoing lesson, require, as well as the relative pronouns, the verb in simple tenses, or the auxiliary in compound tenses, to be placed at the end of the sentence, viz.:

als, *as, when.*
bevor, ehe, *before.*
bis, *until.*
da, *as, since.*
dafern, falls, wofern, *in case that.*
daß, *that.*
auf daß, damit, *in order that.*
damit nicht, *lest.*
indem, *whilst, since.*
nachdem, *after.*
je nachdem, *according as.*
ob, *whether.*

obschon, obgleich, obwohl, ungeachtet, *though, although.*
wenn, *if.*
wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, *although.*
seitdem, *since, from that time.*
während, *during the time that, while.*
weil (dieweil is obsolete), *because.*
wie, *as, how.*
wie auch, *however.*
wiewohl, *although.*

Exercise. If he had more books, he would spend all his time in (mit) reading. He is as rich as I. *When* I arrived in America it was very warm. I must have finished my work *before* you return. He turned his face to my wife whilst speaking to my brother, was that polite? It shall be done as you wish it. I shall set out whether the weather be fine, or unpleasant. I will take it if you will give it me. I see that you know *how* to read. Take care that you do not fall (down). He had locked his door and bolted it, lest he should be robbed. I must pay that price, since it is not to be had cheaper. Though he has a bad appearance, he is a very innocent man. He looks (aussehen, *separ.*) as if he were a little foolish. If he were not foolish he would not act thus. After having heard this, I instantly went to you in order to inform you of it. I shall inform my father of it (in order) that he may be aware of your bad behavior. I shall accept your offer in case I should be in want of money. He did not cease beating your horse until he saw me. He appears to me to be a wicked fellow. I have been on the roof (das Dach) in order to see the fire. Where has he been? He was at church. His children were with us. We rise at six o'clock in the morning. To-day I awoke when the sun was rising.

SECOND CLASS OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Ich habe ihm einen neuen Anzug machen lassen, und außerdem habe ich ihm noch Geld angeboten.	I have had him a new dress made, and have offered him money besides.
Sie hat so eben die traurige Nachricht gehört, und ist daher sehr betrübt (or daher ist sie sehr betrübt).	She has just now heard the sad news, and is, therefore, much afflicted.

Der Hund hat sie gebissen, darum läßt sie ihn in Ruhe (or — sie läßt ihn deßhalb, (deßwegen, darum) in Ruhe.	The dog has bitten her, for that reason (therefore) she leaves him alone.
Erst arbeite ich, dann spiele ich.	First I work, then I play.
Er ist sehr listig, dennoch (dessenungeachtet, nichts destoweniger) wurde er betrogen.	He is very cunning; nevertheless, he was deceived.
Je mehr ich spiele, desto mehr wünschen sie, daß ich spiele.	The more I play, the more they wish me to play.
Je eher ihr es thut, desto vortheilhafter ist es.	The sooner you do it, the more advantageous it (is) will be.

Observation. Je affects the structure of a sentence like the first class of conjunctions, but as it generally occurs with desto (je — desto, *the* — *the*), and as desto affects the structure of a sentence like the second class of conjunctions, we included it here.

Herr N. ist einerseits ein Schmeichler, und anderseits ist er ein Betrüger.	Mr. N., on the one side, is a flatterer; and on the other side, he is an impostor.
Endlich habe ich meine Arbeit vollendet, or ich habe endlich meine Arbeit vollendet.	At length I have finished my work.
Ferner rieth er mir, die Sache aufzugeben, or er rieth mir ferner, die Sache aufzugeben.	Moreover, he advised me to relinquish the cause.
Er ist ein Neger, folglich (mithin, also) kann er keine weiße Farbe haben, or — er kann folglich (mithin, also) keine weiße Farbe haben.	He is a negro, consequently he cannot have a white color.
Anfangs (zuerst) wollte er die Wahrheit nicht sagen, aber nachher that er es.	At first he would not speak the truth, but he did so afterwards.
Wir können es jetzt nicht betrachten, hernach werden wir hingehen.	We cannot look at it at present, we shall go thither afterwards.

Observation. Nachher denotes future time with reference to another event, but hernach denotes future time without reference to another event.

Ich billige deine Freigebigkeit, in so fern sie dir und deiner Familie nicht nachtheilig ist.	I approve of thy liberality, as far as it is not disadvantageous to thee and thy family.
In wie fern ist das zu billigen?	How far is that to be approved of!

Kaum hatte er diese Arbeit vollbracht, als er jene unternahm, or er hatte kaum diese Arbeit vollbracht, als er jene ꝛc.	He had no sooner accomplished this work than he undertook that one.
Ich kann kaum athmen, or kaum kann ich athmen.	I can scarcely breathe.
Er ist erst angekommen.	He has just (but) arrived.
Ich habe nur einen Apfel gegessen.	I have eaten but one apple.

But is translated by erst, if relating to time, and in other instances (relating to quantity) by nur.

Ich habe ihn bei dir gesehen, sonst kenne ich ihn nicht, or ich kenne ihn sonst nicht.	I have seen him with thee, otherwise I do not know him.
Wissen Sie sonst nichts von ihm?	Do you not know anything else of him?
Ich habe sonst nirgends Umgang mit ihm gehabt.	I have nowhere else had intercourse with him.
Sie haben ihr Geld theils ausgegeben, theils haben sie es verloren, or theils haben sie ihr Geld ausgegeben, theils haben sie ꝛc.	Partly they have expended their money, and partly they have lost it.
Ich bezahlte ihm seinen vierteljährigen Lohn, und überdies habe ich ihm noch zwanzig Thaler versprochen.	I paid him his quarterly wages, and have promised him twenty more dollars besides.
Er ist zwar ehrlich, aber faul, or zwar ist er ehrlich, allein er ist faul.	He is, indeed, honest, but he is idle.
Hat er es wirklich gesagt?	Has he said it, indeed?

The English "*indeed*" is to be translated by zwar, if followed by *but* (aber or allein), and in other cases by wirklich.

Rule. The conjunctions of the second class are treated like adverbs, and, therefore, when they begin a sentence (or a member of a compound sentence) they require the subject to be placed after the verb in simple, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses,

Such conjunctions are:

außerdem, überdies, *besides.*
daher, *therefore.*
dann, *then.*
darum, deßhalb, deßwegen, *on that account, for that reason.*
dennoch, dessenungeachtet, nichts destoweniger, *nevertheless, notwithstanding.*
deßgleichen, ingleichen, *likewise.*
einerseits, *on the one side.*

anderseits, *on the other side.*
endlich, *at length.*
ferner, *moreover, further.*
folglich, mithin, also, *consequently.*
gleichwohl, indessen, *nevertheless.*
hernach, nachher, *afterwards.*
jedoch, *yet, however.*
indessen, indeß, *nevertheless, in the mean time, however.*
in so fern, in so weit, *so far as.*
in wie fern, in wie weit, *how far.*
kaum, *scarcely, no sooner.*
noch, *nor* (weder–noch, *neither –nor*).
entweder, *either.*
nur, *but, only.*
erst, *but, first.*
sonst, *else, otherwise.*
theils – theils, *partly–partly.*
übrigens, *as for the rest, however.*
vielmehr, eher, *rather.*
wohl, *indeed, perhaps.*
zwar, *indeed, it is true.*

Exercise. I have bought a house for him, and have given him four hundred dollars besides. I have to pay my creditors, you, therefore, must give me my money. The sun shines, therefore it is warm. I will eat now, then I will go out. When you have finished your work, what will you do then? What is that man angry for? You have taken his purse, for that reason he is angry. The sooner you do it, the more advantageous it is. The more I write, the more he wishes me to write. He has shot her, moreover he has robbed her. That is more easily said than done. Among other things, I told him that my brother has arrived. I do not like to meddle with him, he is, on the one side, a flatterer, and on the other side, he is an impostor. At last I have received my money from him. They have stolen all my property, consequently I cannot pay my debts. At present I cannot listen to you; afterwards I will pay you a visit, and you, then, may tell me your affair. Though he is my friend, I cannot help him; he has deserved this punishment. How far he is innocent I do not know. We approve of your liberality, as far as it is not disadvantageous to you, and your family. That she does not love me I am aware of. I do not know whether she loves you. He has neither the bread nor the meat. We had no sooner ordered him to be executed, than we repented of it. He has scarcely four dollars. First pay me, then I leave you alone. He has drunk but one glass of wine. I have been in the garden, and no-

where else. Indeed, I am satisfied with it. She is, indeed, honest, but she is very idle.

THIRD CLASS OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Mein Vater hat an ihn geschrieben, und ich habe an ihn geschrieben.	My father has written to him, and I have written to him.
Wir kauften und bezahlten es.	We bought it, and paid for it.
Wir kauften es und bezahlten es im Voraus.	We bought it, and paid for it in advance.
Soll er arbeiten, oder spielen?	Is he to work or to play?
Er wird Ihnen das Geld selbst bringen, oder wird es Ihnen schicken.	He will bring you the money himself, or he will send it to you.
Entweder muß er schweigen, oder er muß fortgehen.	He must either be silent, or he must go away.
Er hat es nicht gesehen, aber (or allein) er hat es gehört; or, er hat es nicht gesehen, er hat es aber gehört.	He has not seen it, but he has heard it.
Sie ist fleißig, allein (or aber) sie ist nicht ehrlich; or sie ist fleißig, sie ist aber nicht ehrlich.	She is industrious, but she is not honest.

Observation. Aber and allein, *but*, are often used one for another; but aber, which limits the first member of the sentence, (the antecedent,) in the most indefinite way, may be placed either at the beginning of a sentence (or member of a sentence), or after the object or verb, but this cannot be done with allein, which rather implies a negation of the antecedent.

Er hat es nicht bemerkt, sondern ich habe es bemerkt.	Not he, but I have observed it.
Ich traue ihm, denn er hat mich nie betrogen.	I trust him, for he has never deceived me.
Sowohl meine Schwester als ich haben ihn freundlich behandelt.	Both my sister and I have treated him kindly.
Meine Schwester sowohl, als ich haben ihn freundlich behandelt.	(My sister as well as I have treated him kindly).
Nicht nur mein Vater, sondern auch meine Mutter hat ihn auf der That ertappt.	Not only my father, but also my mother, has caught him in the act.
Ich habe nicht nur das Pferd gekauft, sondern ich habe es auch bezahlt.	I have not only bought the horse but I have also paid (for) it.
Sind Sie im Theater gewesen?	Have you been at the theatre?
Ich bin im Theater gewesen, auch meine Frau ist dort gewesen.	I have been at the theatre, my wife was there also.
Ich bin dort gewesen, auch ist meine Frau dort gewesen.	I have been there, my wife has also been there.

Observation. Let the learner not confound the English *also*, auch, with the German alſo, *consequently, therefore.*

RULE. The following conjunctions do not affect the order of the words of a sentence, viz.:

und, *and.*	denn, *for.*
oder, *or.*	ſowohl, als auch, *as well—as.*
aber, allein, *but.*	nicht nur — ſondern auch, *not only — but also.*
ſondern, *but.*	

This rule is applicable to auch, *also*, when it has a particular reference to the subject; in other cases it affects the structure of the sentence in the same manner as the conjunctions of the second class.

Exercise. He speaks both German and French. Do not converse with him, but with her. She has lost not only her purse, but also her gloves (der Handſchuh). If he is coming, we shall see him. That accident happened when I was yet very young. I have not only written the letter, but also carried it to my aunt. He has not informed me of it, but my uncle (has). I passed by your house, and also my friend's, but we saw nobody. I always speak the truth, therefore you may believe me that that is no lie. She is ugly; nevertheless, he loves her. Take care lest you lose your property. He is, indeed, not my enemy, but neither is he (he is also not) my friend. Call on me either at four o'clock or at a quarter past four. She knows neither how to read nor how to write. I shall write a few lines (die Zeile) to him. I know it, though he has not informed me of it. It appears to me as if you were wrong. Shall we not cease working until she has finished her work? As you are a learned man, I suppose you can give me good advice. We have informed her of the death of her husband, and therefore she is very much afflicted. What thou wishest for thyself, that do to others. The pride of men who are stupid, is the more contemptible. Do you think that such reproaches escape my notice? To what circumstance does he owe his success? All beginnings are difficult. Friends in need are friends indeed. That is the fate of every one whose heart is not the temple of the Lord.

INTERJECTIONS.

Pſt! Nachbar, ein Wort. (Goethe's Egmont.)	Pst! neighbor, one word.

Da kam ein Mann daher zu Pferde, der rief: Halt an! He! Holla! Bscht! dem Tollhaus sind zwei Narr'n entwischt. (Hans Sachs's Waldbruder und der Esel.)	A man came a long there on horse-back, who exclaimed: hold on! heigh! halloo! bsht! two fools have escaped from the madhouse!
Ja wohl! rief auch der Igel.	Ay, truly! exclaimed also the hedge-hog.
Vortrefflich! versetzte der beleidigte Löwe! (Lessing's Rangstreit der Thiere in vier Fabeln.)	Excellent! replied the offended lion.
Ach, versetzte das Schaf, die giftigen Schlangen werden ja so sehr gehaßt.	Ah, replied the sheep, the poisonous snakes are so very much hated!
O! so laß mich, gütiger Vater, wie ich bin! (Lessing's Zeus und das Schaf.)	O! leave me then, as I am (unchanged), kind father!
Geduld! Geduld! der Herr Küster ist so gut und lies't weiter. (Engel, der dankbare Sohn.)	Patience! patience! the sexton will be kind enough to continue reading.
Ei ja wohl! Allerdings! Um's Himmels willen! das versteht sich! (Engel's Tobias Witt.)	Yes, to be sure! Certainly! For heaven's sake! Of course!
Merkt auf! ich berichte die Wundergeschichte! (Uhland, die sieben Zechbrüder.)	Listen! I am going to report the miraculous story.

PECULIAR PHRASES AND PROVERBS.

Aller Anfang ist schwer.	All beginnings are difficult.
Alles zu seiner Zeit.	Every thing in its season.
Aus dem Regen in die Traufe kommen.	From the frying-pan into the fire.
Das läßt Nichts zu wünschen übrig.	This leaves us nothing to desire.
Das Glück ist ihm abhold.	He is no favorite of fortune.
Das Hasenpanier ergreifen.	To betake one's self to one's heels, *or*, To take to one's heels.
Das Wort lag mir auf der Zunge.	I had the word at my tongue's end.
Das übertrifft Alles.	That beats all.
Das versteht sich von selbst.	That is a matter of course.
Dieses Papier schlägt nicht durch.	This paper does not blot.
Er hat mir Etwas weiß gemacht.	He has told me a fib.
Er hat sich um's Leben gebracht.	He made away with himself.
Er hat Grillen und macht Kalender.	He is full of whims, and idle projects.
Er hat mir eine Nase gedreht.	He has duped me.
Er hat mir den Brodkorb höher gehängt.	He has put me on short allowance.
Er hat ihm den Pelz gewaschen.	He has given him a sound rating (*or* drubbing).
Er ist der Welt gram.	He is out of humor with the world.
Er ist in sie vernarrt.	He is fairly in love with her, *or*, He dotes on her.
Er bestand mit Schande.	He came off with disgrace.
Er griff es am unrechten Ende (or Flecke) an.	He commenced it at the wrong end.
Er scheert Alles über einen Kamm.	He treats every thing alike.
Er schneidet auf.	He draws a long bow.
Er schlug mir's rund ab.	He gave me a round denial.

Er schlug uns die Thür vor der Nase zu.	He slapped the door in our face.
Er sieht ihm auf die Finger.	He watches his motions.
Er steckt in Schulden bis über die Ohren.	He is over head and ears in debt.
Er wird es ohne Zweifel thun.	No question, but he will do it.
Es ist gar nicht nach meinem Sinn.	It is not at all to my mind.
Es ist mir übel.	I am sick at the stomach.
Es ist nicht der Mühe werth.	It is not worth while.
Es ist Etwas in die Quere gekommen.	Something has crossed his path.
Es ist besser haben als hätten, or Ein Sperling in der Hand ist besser, als zwei auf dem Dache.	A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
Es ist nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt.	All is not gold that glitters.
Es macht mir die Zähne stumpf.	It sets my teeth on edge.
Es stak etwas dahinter.	There was a snake in the grass.
Eig'ner Herd ist Goldes werth.	Home is home, be it ever so homely.
Ende gut, Alles gut.	All's well that end's well.
Er zieht den Kürzern.	He has the worst of it.
Fersengeld geben.	To take to one's heels.
Frisch gewagt, ist halb gewonnen.	Resolution is half the battle.
Ich bin dahinter gekommen.	I got into the secret.
Ich bin noch unmündig.	I am still under age.
Ich habe ihn in seiner Münze bezahlt, or Wurst wieder Wurst.	I have paid him in his own coin.
Ich rieche den Braten.	I smell a rat.
Ich habe ihm auf den Zahn gefühlt.	I have pumped him.
Ich will dir Beine machen.	I'll mend your speed.
Ich weiß, was die Glocke geschlagen hat.	I am completely up to the business.
Im Durchschnitt.	On an average.
In's Gras beißen.	To bite the dust.
Jeder ist sich selbst der Nächste.	Charity begins at home.

Ländlich, sittlich.	If you are at Rome, you must do as the Romans do.
Man muß das Eisen schmieden, weil es warm ist.	Strike the iron whilst it is hot.
Maulaffen fangen.	To stand gaping.
Meine Ehre steht auf dem Spiel.	My honor is at stake.
Mir standen die Haare zu Berge.	My hair stood on end.
Morgenstund hat Gold im Mund.	Early to bed, early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.
Neue Besen kehren gut.	New brooms sweep clean.
Packt euch fort.	Get you gone.
Rom ward nicht in einem Tag gebaut.	Rome was not built in a day.
Sich erkälten.	To catch cold.
Sich in Eine verlieben.	To fall in love with some one.
Sie ist im Whistspiel schlecht beschlagen.	She is a poor hand at whist.
Sie ist im vollen Staat.	She is in full dress.
Sie kann es nicht über's Herz bringen.	She can't find it in her heart to do it.
Sie schmeichelt.	She deals in fair words.
Sie stecken die Köpfe zusammen.	They lay their heads together
Schlagen Sie sich's aus dem Sinn.	Don't think of such a thing.
Und er auch nicht.	Nor he either.
Unter vier Augen.	Face to face.
Uns gingen die Lebensmittel aus.	We fell short of provisions.
Unschuld und ein gut Gewissen sind ein sanftes Ruhekissen.	A good conscience is a soft pillow.
Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen.	What is easily gotten is quickly gone, *or*, lightly come, lightly go.
Wer Nichts wagt, gewinnt Nichts.	Nothing venture, nothing win.

MATERIALS FOR EXERCISES.

1.

Have you the handsome purse? Have we not our long pencils? Some excellent authors have written on the proper use of human life. The days are short in winter. What sort of bird has your brother? What have you? I have put him to silence (zum Schweigen bringen). That is not to my taste (nach meinem Geschmack). Is this dinner to your taste? She sings to my liking. Charles V. was emperor of Germany. That bank-note looks like a counterfeit. Does this eagle look like a counterfeit? Is it always to the advantage of children, when their parents punish them? He is in good humor (die Laune), is she in bad humor? Have you any money left (übrig)? We have seventy dollars left. He looks like a merchant, but he is a watchmaker. I am the more pleased with him, as he is quite a stranger to me. Give me some paper, pens and ink. I want to write a letter. He is the more pleased, as he did not expect that present. He is of middling height (die Größe). I ask your pardon, sir. He has a good appetite. Are you hungry? I like beef better than veal. What do you like best? I am not permitted to eat any meat, my stomach is disordered. Do you dwell in the city? The source of true happiness is in the heart of man. It is not defective in anything. Few things are necessary to make the wise man happy. It is a great sin to oppress the poor. My brothers are not at home, they are gone a hunting with my cousin. I cannot quench (löschen) my thirst. We shall eat till our hunger is appeased (stillen). Who is not ready (bereit) to appease his hunger, and to quench his thirst? Every one to his liking. I had no sooner sat down than he told me the whole story. What you tell us may be true, but it is not probable. He is quite different from what he was. Is she near-sighted? Charles gave a useful book to a poor boy who had offended him. The ostrich is the largest bird. America is much richer than the other parts of the earth. His words are always treated with the utmost contempt. Have you flour as fine as this? Her eye is as black as a coal. He is not as honest as she. Her head is smaller than his. Her foot is the smallest. Is not this cloth less black than that? Have you sold the best horse? Your motives

are the noblest. A generous heart writes on sand the benefits which others have received from it; and it engraves on marble those which it has received from others.

2.

Is it expensive living in London? It is as dear living in Boston as in New-York. I am very well satisfied with my brothers. Others are not of his opinion. Charles XII. was a great king. Is Lewis XI. aware of that accident? Lewis XIV. had much power. The greatest of all the kings of the house of Bourbon was Henry IV., who reigned in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Alexander Pope was born in London, May 22, 1688. It wants a quarter of six. It is twenty minutes after nine. I wish you a good morning, sir. Do you begin to speak German? How many handkerchiefs are there in the drawer? There are a dozen red and a dozen white ones. How much may that cow be worth? It may be worth thirty-two dollars. How much will wine be worth a barrel? That ribbon is twenty feet long. There are ten of them. Neither of us has been there. Have you spoken to him to-day? She is acquainted with me, and I am acquainted with her. That offer is advantageous to us. Is it inconvenient to you? She mocks us. We do not laugh at them. Have you trod on his foot? Whatever she may say, she will not persuade him. We will do it ourselves. They find fault with it. Is it an eagle that you are holding? It is not. He has commended me. No, sir; on the contrary, he has censured you. Are you sure of that? He who is contented is happy. Is this book yours? It is my sister's. Whose glove is this? It is not mine. Who has saved him from death? My father has. We do not know what to do. Those who speak little are prudent. Are you under obligations to him? I am under many obligations to them. I shall not do it against my will. Will you do your work before I do mine? You may use a great many things in housekeeping, but only a few are really necessary. That is the fate of every one whose heart is not the temple of the Lord. That fellow comes to me every other day. It is nobody's wish to hurt himself. They have already learned many things. Many persons condemn what they do not know. Let them take care. What a fate! What country-woman is she? Do you think that such reproaches escape my notice? The friend of whose innocence I am convinced, is accused of theft. Charity, which

it is our duty to practise, is a noble virtue. These are the very impostors who have deceived me. You may do there what you like. He whose actions do not agree with his sentiments, is a hypocrite. I do not love all, but only one; and Ferdinand loves none. All's well that end's well.

3.

She has a desire to dance. He may have understood it. I was prevented from writing. The boy has not been able to say his lesson. She has something to tell you. I do not know what to do. Teach me what to say. I will teach him to be obedient. She believes everything she reads. Do you believe everything you read? May I ask? I have been obliged to take it with me. Children, you must not hate one another. There are men who cannot hear. She intends to leave out a page. It is time to begin. Do you not hear her sing? Have I done wrong in saving her? Will you walk a long distance (weit)? The babe is not quite four months old. Are there people credulous enough to believe everything that is said? (that one says?) Do you work for a living (Ihren Lebensunterhalt)? My son has had a new house built. Is she going to be bled? He wishes to get his hair cut. Has he heard me speak? What is that good for? It is good for nothing. Have you not heard me call the girl? Do not lose your presence of mind. Has he lost his presence of mind? I lead my horse down the hill. I have lost my arrows, lend me one of yours. The opinion of the learned ought to be preferred to that of the ignorant. We buy nothing bad. What do you buy that is good? Is your servant looking for my friend's hat? Does he stay at my house, or at the neighbor's? What are they ashamed of? Does the tailor mend my coat? Who takes care of my documents? What did he receive? We pity that poor woman. Are they translating their exercises? She casts down (niederschlagen) her eyes? When he lived in that house he was sick. We wrote you from America last spring; did we not? When the minister was praying last Sunday, did you not fold (falten) your hands? What were you drawing? I was drawing a landscape (die Landschaft). Why did he cease working so early? After having bought those books, did they not read them? Did she resolve (sich entschließen) to buy them also? What did your cousin do when he had breakfasted? After they had risen, did they not dress them-

selves? He was studying while we were sleeping. My brother played when I was working. Did you fall asleep as soon as you lay down? Do you stop to take (holen) breath? He is out of breath. On what did you subsist when you were in the forest? They never paid in cash, they always bought on credit. Did she keep (hüten) her bed when she was sick? Where did you pick up (auflesen) these apples? I picked them up in my father's garden. He got drunk (sich betrinken) during the absence of his master. That is nothing to me.

4.

How much does that business bring (einbringen) you a year? After we had warmed our feet, we fell asleep. Did he go to bed as soon as he had undressed (sich ausziehen)? They had no sooner received the money than they wasted it. Did I not pay you a visit as soon as I had arrived? They have shaved (themselves). After the nursery girl had put the child to sleep (einschläfern), she fell asleep herself. He had no sooner arranged his affairs than he departed. Did you get measured for a coat? The tailor had no sooner taken my measure for a waistcoat than he commenced the work. I permit him to sell his horse. Do you say that the mail has arrived? She desires us to remain here. Are you afraid that I have come too late? He was afraid that they would lose their keys. He wished that you should have much money. It would be unjust that you should pay all the debts. Did he doubt whether I would obtain that price? He doubted whether you would take it upon yourself to do that. I did not take it upon myself to do it. Did he think that we had translated his French letter? We thought that the girl had cleaned our clothes. He regretted that the sun had not risen at six o'clock this morning. Could I know that you had come for your money? Should we be respected if we punctually fulfilled our duty? I should be pleased if you could procure me a hundred dollars. Ought we not to be industrious? If you had a desire to learn, would you neglect your studies? Should we not feel better if we had taken a walk? Would you not have examined that book if I had given it to you? Would he have risen at six o'clock if the thrashers had not made a noise? Provided you will not transplant my flowers, I will assist you in transplanting yours. I heard that he had waited for me; is it true? Defying wind and storm, he worked in the open air.

Has he the courage to execute this order? He thinks I am keeping his cloak for him. Let them eat what they have. Call John. Do not beat my horse. Let us mend our clothes. Do not send him this beautiful flower, send it to her. Let him pick up those apples and pears. Change me a dollar, if you please, sir. She deals in fair words. Turn your thoughts from it. We fell short of provisions.

5.

Your uncle keeps (führen) a good table. Did you keep a good table when you were in better circumstances? I shall take an airing in a carriage, will you take a ride on horseback? No, sir, I will take a walk. Will they succeed in doing that? Will she give me notice of my father's arrival? When will your relations go away? I hope you will not hurt that cat. When I shall have finished my work, I will assist you. When you shall have learned German, will you go to Germany? I think it will rain to-day. We shall have (bekommen) a storm. When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you at my house? The ox is being killed. It was bought and sold in the same week. This loss will be severely felt. By whom has he been beaten? Are we censured by our enemies, or by our friends? Has the criminal been arrested? They have been separated from each other. Art thou hated by thy enemies? He is despised by every one. I was not forced to do it, I did it of my own accord. We shall not be interrupted (unterbrechen) in our conversation. My horse is being shod, is yours shod? Your coat will be finished (made) by nine o'clock. Had her bill been paid before I entered the house? Have you been offended at (by) him? These watches will be sold by one o'clock. It has not rained this fortnight. Will you have read the newspaper before I have? I shall not go away until you will have paid me. Do you keep your bed when you have a cold (den Schnupfen haben)? Will you pay me a visit in case you return? I shall not go out unless I learn my lesson by heart. It is sad that the officer has been shot. Though they are willing, they are not able to accomplish that work. Will it be necessary to make inquiries (Untersuchung anstellen) in regard to that? Although he is poor, he has many friends. Whether this gentleman be poor or rich, I respect him. I will call on you, lest I should not see your partner. In case you see my godfather, present my compliments to

him. However little you drink, you must drink something. Although they have much money, they do not pay their debts. This intelligence pleases me extremely. He sincerely regrets (bereuen) having committed that mischievous trick. We have heard it just now. That is, indeed, a bad fellow. Ah, replied the sheep, the poisonous snakes are so very much hated! We shall go up and down here until our father comes. We met him by chance. We dwelt a long time with your brother in the same country. All is not gold that glitters.

6. THE LAMB.

It is very cold. And how high the wind is! There is a tree blown down.

What has that man in his arms?

It is a young lamb.

Poor thing! how it bleats! It wants its mother. It is crying for her. I wish she could hear it: but she cannot hear; she is dead.

Pray, shepherd, take good care of the little lamb, and give it nice new milk to drink, and keep it warm; and when it can take care of itself, and the weather is pleasant, let it sport and frisk about in the fields, and be very merry.

We must not go any further now. The sky looks very black. I think there will be a heavy shower soon.

Das Lamm.

Es ———. Und — stark —— bläs't! Dort ——— umgeblasen (or vom Winde niedergerissen). Was ————————? Es —— Lämmchen. Armes Ding! wie — blökt! Es will —— haben. Es schreit nach —. Ich wollte ————; sie — es aber nicht —; sie ——.

Bitte, Schäfer, nimm das Lämmchen gut in Acht, und — ihm gute frische ——— und halte ——; und wann ————————kann und ——— ist, so laß es auf den Feldern umher hüpfen und springen und —— sein.

Wir — jetzt nicht weiter —. Der Himmel sieht —— aus. Ich —, wir werden bald einen starken Regenschauer bekommen.

7. THE PARROTS.

Two parrots were confined[1] together in a large cage. The cup which held[2] their food, was[3] put at the bottom of the cage. They commonly sat on the same perch,[4] and close[5] beside each other. Whenever one of them went down for food, the

other always followed: and when they had eaten enough, they hastened[6] together to[7] the highest perch of the cage.

They lived four years in[8] this state of confinement; and always showed a[9] strong affection for each other. At the end of this time, the female grew very weak, and had all[10] the marks of old age. Her legs swelled, and she was no longer able to go to the bottom of the cage to take her food: but her companion went and brought it to her. He carried it in his bill, and emptied it into hers.

This affectionate[11] bird continued[12] to feed his mate, in this manner, for four months. But her weakness increased every day. At last she was unable to sit on the perch; and[13] remained crouched at the bottom of the cage. Sometimes she tried to get up to the lower perch, but was not able.

Her companion did all he could to assist her. He often took hold of the upper part of her wing with his bill, and tried to draw her up to him. His looks[14] and his motions showed a great desire to help her, and to make[15] her sufferings less.

But the sight[16] was still more affecting,[17] when the female was dying. Her distressed companion went[18] round and round her a long time, without stopping. He tried at last to open her bill, that he might give her some food. His trouble increased every moment. He went to and from her, with the utmost appearance of distress. Sometimes he made[19] the most mournful cries: at other times, he[20] fixed his eyes on his mate, and was silent; but his looks showed the deepest sorrow. His companion at length died: and this affectionate and interesting[21] bird grew weaker and weaker from that time; and lived only a few months.

This is an affecting lesson,[22] to teach us to be kind, and loving,[23] and very helpful,[24] to one another; and to those persons in[25] particular, who are nearly connected with us, and who stand[26] in need of our assistance.

1. to confine, einsperren, *separ.;* 2. held, enthielt; 3. was put at the bottom, stand auf dem Boden; 4. the perch, die Vogelstange, or die Stange; 5. close, enge; 6. to hasten, eilen; 7. to the, auf das; 8. in this state of confinement, in diesem Zustande der Gefangenschaft; 9. a strong affection for, eine große Zuneigung zu; 10. all the marks of old age, alle Anzeichen eines hohen Alters; 11. zärtlich; 12. continued to feed — months, füttrte seine Gefährtin (der Gefährte or Genosse) — vier Monate lang; 13. and remained crouched, und kauerte sich; 14. (die) Blicke, *masc.;* 15. to make less, mildern; 16. der Anblick; 17 affecting, rührend; 18. went round — time, ging lange Zeit um sie herum; 19. to make, hervorbringen, *separ.;* 20. he fixed his eyes on, rich-

tete er seine Augen auf; 21. theilnehmend; 22. die Lehre; 23. liebreich; 24. hülfreich, behülflich; 25. in particular, in's Besondere; 26. to stand in need, nöthig haben.

8. BOOKS.

(FROM WILLIAM ELLERY CHANNING.)

It is chiefly through books that we enjoy intercourse with[1] superior minds, and these invaluable[2] means of communication are[3] in the reach of all. In the best books great men talk to us, give us their most precious thoughts, and pour their souls into ours. God be thanked for books! They are the voices of the distant and the dead, and make us heirs of[4] the spiritual life of past ages. Books are the true levellers. They give to all, who will faithfully use them, the society, the spiritual presence of the best and greatest of our race. No[5] matter how poor I am. No matter though the prosperous of my own time will not enter my obscure dwelling. If the Sacred Writers will enter and[6] take up their abode under my roof, if[7] Milton will cross my threshold to sing to me of Paradise, and Shakspeare to open to me the worlds of imagination and the workings of the human heart, and Franklin to enrich me with his practical wisdom, I[8] shall not pine for want of intellectual companionship, and I may become a cultivated man though excluded from what[9] is called the best society in the place where I live.

1. With superior minds, mit höhern Geistern; 2. unschätzbar; 3. are in — all, sind für Alle erreichbar; 4. of the — ages, des geistigen Lebens der vergangenen Zeiten; 5. no matter, es macht Nichts aus, or, es ist von keiner Bedeutung; 6. and take up — roof, und ihre Wohnung unter meinem Dache aufschlagen; 7. if Milton — threshold, wenn Milton meine Schwelle betritt; 8. I shall —, so werde ich nicht aus Mangel an geistreicher Gesellschaft leiden; 9. what is called, was man — nennt.

9. TRUE SOURCES OF HAPPINESS.

(FROM JOSEPH STEVENS BUCKMINSTER.)

We are very much in the habit of keeping ourselves in ignorance of the real sources of our happiness. The unexpected events of life, and,[1] much more, those on which we calculate,[2] are far[3] from being those which constitute its real enjoyment. Even events of public good-fortune, which call forth the most frequent and audible acknowledgments, are,

really, not those which contribute most to our personal well-being; and much[4] less do we depend, for our most valuable happiness, on what we call fortunate occurrences, or upon the multiplication of our public amusements, or the excitement, the novelty, the ecstasy, which we make so essential to our pleasures, and for which we are always looking out with impatience. It is not the number of the great, dazzling, affecting, and much[5] talked of pleasures, which makes[6] up the better part of our substantial happiness; but it is the delicate, unseen, quiet, and ordinary comforts of social and domestic life, for the loss of which, all that the world has dignified with the name of pleasure would not compensate us. Let any man inquire, for a single day, what it is which has employed and satisfied him, and which really makes him love life, and he will find that the sources of his happiness lie within[7] a very narrow compass. He will find that he depends almost entirely on the agreeable circumstances which[8] God has made to lie all around him, and which fill[9] no place in the record of public events. Indeed, we may say of human happiness what Paul quotes for a more sacred purpose: "It[10] is not hidden from thee; neither it is far off; it is not in heaven, that thou shouldst say, Who shall go up for us, and bring it unto us? neither is it beyond the sea, that thou shouldst say, Who shall go over the sea for us, and bring it unto us? but is very nigh unto thee in thy mouth, and in thy heart."

1. And much more, und noch mehr; 2. to calculate on, rechnen auf; 3. are far — those, sind weit davon entfernt, diejenigen zu sein, or, sind lange nicht die; 4. and much less, und noch viel weniger; 5. much talked of, vielbesprochenen; 6. to make up, ausmachen; 7. within — compass, innerhalb eines (einer) sehr engen Kreises (Sphäre); 8. which — — him, in welche Gott ihn versetzt hat; 9. to fill, ausfüllen, *separ.*; 10. It is not, &c., Deuteronomy 30. 11—14.

10. THE LOVE OF A MOTHER.

(FROM WASHINGTON IRVING.)

Who[1] that has languished, even[2] in advanced life, in sickness and despondency[3]; who that has pined on a weary bed in the neglect and loneliness of a foreign land; but[4] has thought on the mother "that[5] looked on his childhood," that smoothed his pillow and[6] administered to his helplessness? Oh! there is an enduring tenderness in the love of a mother to a son that transcends all other affections[7] of the heart. It[8] is

neither to be chilled by selfishness, nor daunted by danger, nor weakened by worthlessness, nor[9] stifled by ingratitude. She will sacrifice every comfort to his convenience; she will[10] surrender[11] every pleasure to his enjoyment; she will[10] glory[12] in his fame, and exult[13] in his prosperity: — and, if misfortune overtake[14] him, he will be the dearer to her from his misfortunes; and if disgrace settle[15] upon his name, she will still love and cherish him in spite of his disgrace; and if all the world beside cast[16] him off, she will be all the world to him.

1. Who that has, wer hat; 2. even — life, selbst in spätern Lebensjahren; 3. die Hoffnungslosigkeit; 4. but has, und hat nicht; 5. that — childhood, die über seine Kindheit wachte; 6. and administered to, und — leitete, *or* und sich — annahm; 7. affection, die Neigung, der Trieb; 8. it is neither to be chilled, sie kann weder — erkalten; 9. nor stifled, noch — erstickt (*or* gedämpft) werden; 10. present tense in Germ.; 11. surrender, sich versagen, Verzicht leisten auf; 12. to glory, sich rühmen, stolz sein auf; 13. to exult, frohlocken über, entzückt sein über; 14. to overtake, befallen, widerfahren; 15. to settle upon, sich niederlassen, umgeben; 16. to cast some one off, Einen von sich werfen.

11. SOCIETY[1] IN FRANCE AND AMERICA.

(FROM A LETTER OF THOMAS JEFFERSON TO MR. BELLINI.)

You are, perhaps, curious to know how[2] this new scene has struck a savage of the mountains of America. Not advantageously, I assure you. I find the general fate of humanity here most[3] deplorable. The truth of Voltaire's observation offers[4] itself perpetually, that every man here must be either the hammer or the anvil. . . . . While the great mass of the people are thus suffering under physical and moral oppression, I have endeavored to examine more nearly the condition of the great, to appreciate[5] the true value of the circumstances in their situation, which dazzle the bulk[6] of spectators, and especially, to compare it with that degree of happiness which[7] is enjoyed in America, by every class of people. Intrigues[8] of love occupy the younger, and[9] those of ambition, the elder part of the great. Conjugal love having no existence among them, domestic happiness, of which that is the basis, is utterly unknown. In lieu of this, are substituted[10] pursuits which nourish and invigorate all our bad passions, and which offer only moments of ecstasy, amidst days and months of restlessness and torment. Much,[11] very much inferior, this, to the

tranquil, permanent felicity with which domestic society in America blesses most of its inhabitants; leaving them to follow steadily those pursuits which health and reason approve, and rendering truly delicious the intervals of those pursuits.

12. THE SPIRIT OF LIBERTY.

(FROM DANIEL WEBSTER.)

The spirit of liberty is indeed a bold and fearless spirit; but it is also a sharp-sighted spirit; it is a cautious, sagacious, discriminating, far-seeing intelligence;[12] it is jealous of encroachment, jealous of power, jealous of man. It[13] demands checks; it seeks for guards; it insists on securities;[14] it entrenches[15] itself behind strong defences,[16] and fortifies with all possible care against the assaults of ambition and passion.

1. Das gesellschaftliche Leben; 2. how — America, welchen Eindruck — auf — gemacht hat; 3. most deplorable, äußerst beklagenswerth; 4. offers itself perpetually, bietet sich beständig dar (sich darbieten); 5. to appreciate, würdigen; 6. die Masse; 7. which — people, welches von allen Klassen des Volkes in Amerika genossen wird; 8. intrigues of love, Liebeshändel (*masc.*); 9. and those of ambition, und Intriguen des Ehrgeizes, ehrsüchtige Umtriebe; 10. to substitute, an eines Andern Stelle setzen (are substituted pursuits, findet man Bestrebungen (fem.); 11. much, very much inferior, this — inhabitants, sehr, sehr ist dieses — untergeordnet; 12. der Verstand; 13. it demands checks, er erfordert Einschränkungen; 14. (die) Sicherstellung; 15. to entrench, verschanzen; 16. Waffen (*fem.*).

A SYNOPSIS

OF

GERMAN GRAMMAR

A SYNOPSIS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

ARTICLES.

DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular.				*Plural.*	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		For all genders.	
Nom.	der,	die,	das,	the.	die,	the.
Gen.	des,	der,	des,	of the.	der,	of the.
Dat.	dem,	der,	dem,	to the.	den,	to the.
Acc.	den,	die,	das,	the.	die,	the.

The following pronouns are declined like the definite article, viz:

Dieser, diese, dieses, this.	Diese, these.
Jener, jene, jenes, that.	Jene, those.
Welcher, welche, welches, who, which.	Welche, who, which.
Einer, eine, eines, one;	— —.
Keiner, keine, keines, none.	Keine, none.
Mancher, manche, manches, many a one.	Manche, many.
Jeder, jede, jedes, every one.	— —.
Einiger, einige, einiges, some.	Einige, some.
Etlicher, etliche, etliches, some.	Etliche, several, a few.
Weniger, wenige, weniges, little.	Wenige, a few.
Aller, alle, alles, all.	Alle, all.
Vieler, viele, vieles, much,	Viele, many.
Verschiedener, verschiedene, verschiedenes, different.	Verschiedene, different.

DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	ein,	eine,	ein,	a	
Gen.	eines,	einer,	eines,	of a	No Plural.
Dat.	einem,	einer,	einem,	to a	
Acc.	einen,	eine,	ein,	a	

The possessive pronouns are declined in the singular like the indefinite article; but like the definite one in the plural.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Mein, meine, mein, my.	Meine, my.
Dein, deine, dein, thy.	Deine, thy.
Sein, seine, sein, his.	Seine, his.
Ihr, ihre, ihr, her.	Ihre, her.
Sein, seine, sein, its.	Seine, its.
Unser, unsere, unser, our.	Unsere, our.
Euer, eure, euer, your.	Eure, your.
Ihr, ihre, ihr, their.	Ihre, their.
Ihr, Ihre, Ihr, your (*sing.*).	Ihre, your.

NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Freund, the friend.	die Freunde, the friends.
Gen.	des Freundes, of the friend.	der Freunde, of the friends.
Dat.	dem Freunde, to the friend.	den Freunden, to the friends.
Acc.	den Freund, the friend.	die Freunde, the friends.

Nom.	das Mädchen, the girl.	die Mädchen, the girls.
Gen.	des Mädchens, of the girl.	der Mädchen, of the girls.
Dat.	dem Mädchen, to the girl.	den Mädchen, to the girls.
Acc.	das Mädchen, the girl.	die Mädchen, the girls.

SECOND DECLENSION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	der Hase, the hare.	die Hasen, the hares.
Gen.	des Hasen, of the hare.	der Hasen, of the hares.
Dat.	dem Hasen, to the hare.	den Hasen, to the hares.
Acc.	den Hasen, the hare.	die Hasen, the hares.

Nom.	der Elephant, the elephant.	die Elephanten, the elephants.
Gen.	des Elephanten, of the elephant.	der Elephanten, of the elephants.
Dat.	dem Elephanten, to the elephant.	den Elephanten, to the elephants.
Acc.	den Elephanten, the elephant.	die Elephanten, the elephants.

THIRD DECLENSION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	die Rose, the rose.	die Rosen, the roses.
Gen.	der Rose, of the rose.	der Rosen, of the roses.
Dat.	der Rose, to the rose.	den Rosen, to the roses.
Acc.	die Rose, the rose.	die Rosen, the roses.

ADJECTIVES.

FIRST DECLENSION.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	For all genders.
Nom.	der reiche,	die reiche,	das reiche,	die reichen, the rich.
Gen.	des reichen,	der reichen,	des reichen,	der reichen, of the rich.
Dat.	dem reichen,	der reichen,	dem reichen,	den reichen, to the rich.
Acc.	den reichen,	die reiche,	das reiche,	die reichen, the rich.

The following pronouns are declined like adjectives preceded by the definite article, viz:

der meinige, die meinige, das meinige, mine. die meinigen, mine.
der deinige, die deinige, das deinige, thine. die deinigen, thine.
der seinige, die seinige, das seinige, his. die seinigen, his.

der ihrige, die ihrige, das ihrige, hers. die ihrigen, hers.
der seinige, die seinige, das seinige, its. die seinigen, its.
der uns'rige, die uns'rige, das uns'rige, ours. die uns'rigen, ours.
der eurige, die eurige, das eurige, yours. die eurigen, yours.
der ihrige, die ihrige, das ihrige, theirs. die ihrigen, theirs.
derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same. dieselben, the same.
derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he (who). diejenigen, those.

Masculine. Singular.

Nom.	dieser / jener	reiche Kaufmann,	this / that	rich merchant.
Gen.	dieses / jenes	reichen Kaufmannes,	of this / of that	rich merchant.
Dat.	diesem / jenem	reichen Kaufmanne,	to this / to that	rich merchant.
Acc.	diesen / jenen	reichen Kaufmann,	this / that	rich merchant.

Plural.

Nom.	diese / jene	reichen Kaufleute,	these / those	rich merchants.
Gen.	dieser / jener	reichen Kaufleute,	of these / of those	rich merchants.
Dat.	diesen / jenen	reichen Kaufleuten,	to these / to those	rich merchants.
Acc.	diese / jene	reichen Kaufleute,	these / those	rich merchants.

Feminine. Singular.

Nom.	diese / jene	fette Gans,	this / that	fat goose.
Gen.	dieser / jener	fetten Gans,	of this / of that	fat goose.
Dat.	dieser / jener	fetten Gans,	to this / to that	fat goose.
Acc.	diese / jene	fette Gans,	this / that	fat goose.

Plural.

Nom.	diese / jene	fetten Gänse,	these / those	fat geese.
Gen.	dieser / jener	fetten Gänse,	of these / of those	fat geese.
Dat.	diesen / jenen	fetten Gänsen,	to these / to those	fat geese.
Acc.	diese / jene	fetten Gänse,	these / those	fat geese.

Neuter. Singular.

Nom.	dieses / jenes	gute Kind,	this / that	good child.
Gen.	dieses / jenes	guten Kindes,	of this / of that	good child.
Dat.	diesem / jenem	guten Kinde,	to this / to that	good child.
Acc.	dieses / jenes	gute Kind,	this / that	good child.

Plural.

Nom.	diese / jene	guten Kinder,	these / those	good children.
Gen.	dieser / jener	guten Kinder,	of these / of those	good children.
Dat.	diesen / jenen	guten Kindern,	to these / to those	good children.
Acc.	diese / jene	guten Kinder,	these / those	good children.

SECOND DECLENSION.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	ein fleißiger,	eine fleißige,	ein fleißiges,	an industrious —.
Gen.	eines fleißigen,	einer fleißigen,	eines fleißigen,	of an industrious —.
Dat.	einem fleißigen,	einer fleißigen,	einem fleißigen,	to an industrious —.
Acc.	einen fleißigen,	eine fleißige,	ein fleißiges,	an industrious —.

Masculine. Singular.

Nom. mein lieber Sohn, my dear son.
Gen. meines lieben Sohnes, of my dear son.
Dat. meinem lieben Sohne, to my dear son.
Acc. meinen lieben Sohn, my dear son.

Plural.

Nom. meine lieben Söhne, my dear sons.
Gen. meiner lieben Söhne, of my dear sons.
Dat. meinen lieben Söhnen, to my dear sons.
Acc. meine lieben Söhne, my dear sons.

Feminine. Singular.

Nom. seine alte Trommel, his old drum.
Gen. seiner alten Trommel, of his old drum.
Dat. seiner alten Trommel, to his old drum.
Acc. seine alte Trommel, his old drum.

Plural.

Nom. seine alten Trommeln, his old drums.
Gen. seiner alten Trommeln, of his old drums.
Dat. seinen alten Trommeln, to his old drums.
Acc. seine alten Trommeln, his old drums.

Neuter. Singular.

Nom. ihr altes Haus, their old house.
Gen. ihres alten Hauses, of their old house.
Dat. ihrem alten Hause, to their old house.
Acc. ihr altes Haus, their old house.

Plural.

Nom. ihre alten Häuser, their old houses.
Gen. ihrer alten Häuser, of their old houses.
Dat. ihren alten Häusern, to their old houses.
Acc. ihre alten Häuser, their old houses.

THIRD DECLENSION.

MASCULINE.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	alter Wein, old wine.	alte Weine, old wines.
Gen.	alten Weines, of old wine.	alter Weine, of old wines.
Dat.	altem Weine, to old wine.	alten Weinen, to old wines.
Acc.	alten Wein, old wine.	alte Weine, old wines.

FEMININE.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom	gute Butter, good butter.	gute Mütter, good mothers.
Gen.	guter Butter, of good butter.	guter Mütter, of good mothers.
Dat.	guter Butter, to good butter.	guten Müttern, to good mothers.
Acc.	gute Butter, good butter.	gute Mütter, good mothers.

NEUTER.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	rothes Blut, red blood.	rothe Tücher, red clothes.
Gen.	rothen Blutes, of red blood.	rother Tücher, of red clothes.
Dat.	rothem Blute, to red blood.	rothen Tüchern, to red clothes.
Acc.	rothes Blut, red blood.	rothe Tücher, red clothes.

Observation. The demonstrative pronoun „solcher, solche, solches, *such* (*a one*)," is declined like an adjective not preceded by any article or pronoun.

PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	ich, I.	wir, we.
Gen.	meiner, of me.	unser, of us.
Dat.	mir, to me.	uns, to us.
Acc.	mich, me.	uns, us.

SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	du, thou.	ihr, you (or ye).
Gen.	deiner, of thee.	euer, of you.
Dat.	dir, to thee.	euch, to you.
Acc.	dich, thee.	euch, you.

THIRD PERSON.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	er, he.	ſie, she.	es, it.
Gen.	ſeiner, of him.	ihrer, of her.	ſeiner, of it.
Dat.	ihm, to him.	ihr, to her.	ihm, to it.
Acc.	ihn (ſich), him.	ſie (ſich), her.	es (ſich), it.

Plural.

For all genders.

Nom.	ſie, they.
Gen.	ihrer, of them.
Dat.	ihnen, to them.
Acc.	ſie (ſich), them.

DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE,

(*used as a demonstrative pronoun and without a noun*).

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
	Masc	Fem.	Neut.		For all genders
Nom.	der,	die,	das,	this.	die, these.
Gen.	deſſen (deß),	deren (der),	deſſen (deß),	of this.	derer, of these.
Dat.	dem,	der,	dem,	to this.	denen, to these.
Acc.	den,	die,	das,	this.	die, these.

DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE,

(*used as a relative pronoun*).

Singular, like the above.

Plural.

For all genders.

Nom.	die, who, which.
Gen.	deren, of whom, of which.
Dat.	denen, to whom, to which.
Acc.	die, whom, which.

DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN:

Jemand, *Somebody.*

Nom.	Jemand, somebody.
Gen.	Jemandes, of somebody.
Dat.	Jemandem, to somebody.
Acc.	Jemanden, somebody.

Niemand, *nobody*, is declined like Jemand.

VERBS.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. Haben, *to have* (*infinitive*).

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. gehabt, had.
PRES. habend, having.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ich habe, I have,	ich habe, I may have.
du hast, thou hast,	du habest, thou mayst have.
er (sie, es, man) hat, he (she, it, one) has,	er (sie, es, man) habe, he (she, it one) may have.
wir haben, we have,	wir haben, we may have.
ihr habt, you have,	ihr habet, you may have.
sie haben, they have,	sie haben, they may have.
IMPERFECT.	
ich hatte, I had,	ich hätte, I might have.
du hattest, thou hadst,	du hättest, thou mightst have.
er hatte, he had,	er hätte, he might have.
wir hatten, we had,	wir hätten, we might have.
ihr hattet, you had,	ihr hättet, you might have.
sie hatten, they had,	sie hätten, they might have.
PERFECT.	
ich habe gehabt, I have had,	ich habe gehabt, I may have had.
du hast gehabt, thou hast had,	du habest gehabt, thou mayst have had.
er hat gehabt, he has had,	er habe gehabt, he may have had.
wir haben gehabt, we have had,	wir haben gehabt, we may have had.
ihr habt gehabt, you have had,	ihr habet gehabt, you may have had.
sie haben gehabt, they have had,	sie haben gehabt, they may have had.
PLUPERFECT.	
ich hatte gehabt, I had had,	ich hätte gehabt, I might have had.
du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had,	du hättest gehabt, thou mightst have had.
er hatte gehabt, he had had,	er hätte gehabt, he might have had.
wir hatten gehabt, we had had,	wir hätten gehabt, we might have had.
ihr hattet gehabt, you had had,	ihr hättet gehabt, you might have had.
sie hatten gehabt, they had had	sie hätten gehabt, they might have had.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde haben, I shall have,	ich werde haben, I shall have.
du wirst haben, thou wilt have,	du werdest haben, thou wilt have.
er wird haben, he will have,	er werde haben, he will have.
wir werden haben, we shall have,	wir werden haben, we shall have.
ihr werdet haben, you will have,	ihr werdet haben, you will have.
sie werden haben, they will have,	sie werden haben, they will have.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had,	ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.
du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt have had,	du werdest gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.
er wird gehabt haben, he will have had,	er werde gehabt haben, he will have had.
wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had,	wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.
ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had,	ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.
sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had	sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

CONDITIONALS.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.	SECOND CONDITIONAL.
ich würde haben, I would or should have,	ich würde gehabt haben, I would or should have had.
du würdest haben, thou wouldst have,	du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had.
er würde haben, he would have,	er würde gehabt haben, he would have had.
wir würden haben, we would or should have,	wir würden gehabt haben, we would or should have had.
ihr würdet haben, you would have,	ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would have had.
sie würden haben, they would have,	sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had.

IMPERATIVE.

habe, have (thou).	habt, have (*plur.*)
laßt ihn (sie, es) haben, let him (her, it) have.	haben Sie, have (*sing.*)
laßt uns haben, let us have.	laßt sie haben, let them have.

2. Sein, *to be (infinitive).*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. gewesen, been.
PRES. seiend, being.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ich bin, I am,	ich sei, I may be.
du bist, thou art,	du seiest, thou mayst be.
er ist, he is,	er sei, he may be.
wir sind, we are,	wir seien, we may be.
ihr seid, you are,	ihr seiet, you may be.
sie sind, they are,	sie seien, they may be.
IMPERFECT.	
ich war, I was,	ich wäre, I might be or (I were).
du warst, thou wast,	du wärest, thou mightst be.
er war, he was,	er wäre, he might be.
wir waren, we were,	wir wären, we might be.
ihr waret, you were,	ihr wäret, you might be.
sie waren, they were,	sie wären, they might be.
PERFECT.	
ich bin gewesen, I have been,	ich sei gewesen, I may have been.
du bist gewesen, thou hast been,	du seiest gewesen, thou mayst have been.
er ist gewesen, he has been,	er sei gewesen, he may have been.
wir sind gewesen, we have been,	wir seien gewesen, we may have been.
ihr seid gewesen, you have been,	ihr seiet gewesen, you may have been.
sie sind gewesen, they have been,	sie seien gewesen, they may have been.
PLUPERFECT.	
ich war gewesen, I had been,	ich wäre gewesen, I might have been.
du warst gewesen, thou hadst been,	du wärest gewesen, thou mightst have been.
er war gewesen, he had been,	er wäre gewesen, he might have been.
wir waren gewesen, we had been,	wir wären gewesen, we might have been.
ihr waret gewesen, you had been,	ihr wäret gewesen, you might have been.
sie waren gewesen, they had been,	sie wären gewesen, they might have been.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde sein, I shall be,
du wirst sein, thou wilt be,
er wird sein, he will be,
wir werden sein, we shall be,
ihr werdet sein, you will be,
sie werden sein, they will be,

ich werde sein, I shall be.
du werdest sein, thou wilt be.
er werde sein, he will be.
wir werden sein, we shall be.
ihr werdet sein, you will be.
sie werden sein, they will be.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been,
du wirst gewesen sein, thou wilt have been,
er wird gewesen sein, he will have been,
wir werden gewesen sein, we shall have been,
ihr werdet gewesen sein, you will have been,
sie werden gewesen sein, they will have been.

ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been.
du werdest gewesen sein, thou wilt have been.
er werde gewesen sein, he will have been.

(*like the indicative.*)

CONDITIONALS.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

ich würde sein, I would *or* should be,
du würdest sein, thou wouldst be,
er würde sein, he would be,
wir würden sein, we would or should be,
ihr würdet sein, you would be,
sie würden sein, they would be,

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gewesen sein, I would or should have been.
du würdest gewesen sein, thou wouldst have been.
er würde gewesen sein, he would have been.
wir würden gewesen sein, we would or should have been.
ihr würdet gewesen sein, you would have been.
sie würden gewesen sein, they would have been.

IMPERATIVE.

sei, be (thou).
laßt ihn (sie, es) sein, let him (her, it) be.
laßt uns sein, let us be.

seid, be (*plur.*).
seien Sie, be (*sing.*).
laßt sie sein, let them be.

3. Werden, *become* (*infinitive*).

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. geworden (worden), become.
PRES. werden, becoming.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ich werde, I become,	ich werde, I may become.
du wirst, thou becomest,	du werdest, thou mayst become
er wird, he becomes,	er werde, he may become.
wir werden, we become,	wir werden, we may become.
ihr werdet, you become,	ihr werdet, you may become.
sie werden, they become,	sie werden, they may become.
IMPERFECT.	
ich wurde, I became,	ich würde, I might become.
du wurdest, thou becamest,	du würdest, thou mightst become.
er wurde, he became,	er würde, he might become.
wir wurden, we became,	wir würden, we might become.
ihr wurdet, you became,	ihr würdet, you might become.
sie wurden, they became,	sie würden, they might become.
PERFECT.	
ich bin geworden, I have become,	ich sei geworden, I may have become.
du bist geworden, thou hast become,	du seiest geworden, thou mayst have become.
er ist geworden, he has become,	er sei geworden, he may have become.
wir sind geworden, we have become,	wir seien geworden, we may have become.
ihr seid geworden, you have become,	ihr seiet geworden, you may have become.
sie sind geworden, they have become,	sie seien geworden, they may have become.
PLUPERFECT.	
ich war geworden, I had become,	ich wäre geworden, I might have become.
du warst geworden, thou hadst become,	du wärest geworden, thou mightst have become.
er war geworden, he had become,	er wäre geworden, he might have become.
wir waren geworden, we had become,	wir wären geworden, we might have become.
ihr waret geworden, you had become,	ihr wäret geworden, you might have become.
sie waren geworden, they had become.	sie wären geworden, they might have become.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde werden, I shall become,
du wirst werden, thou wilt become,
er wird werden, he will become,
wir werden werden, we shall become,
ihr werdet werden, you will become,
sie werden werden, they will become,

ich werde werden, I shall become.
du werdest werden, thou wilt become,
er werde werden, he will become.

(*like the indicative.*)

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become,
du wirst geworden sein, thou wilt have become,
er wird geworden sein, he will have become,
wir werden geworden sein, we shall have become,
ihr werdet geworden sein, you will have become
sie werden geworden sein, they will have become,

ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become.
du werdest geworden sein, thou wilt have become.
er werde geworden sein, he will have become.

(*like the indicative*).

CONDITIONALS.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

ich würde werden, I would or should become,
du würdest werden, thou wouldst become,
er würde werden, he would become,
wir würden werden, we would or should become,
ihr würdet werden, you would become,
sie würden werden, they would become,

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde geworden sein, I would or should have become.
du würdest geworden sein, thou wouldst have become.
er würde geworden sein, he would have become.
wir würden geworden sein, we would or should have become.
ihr würdet geworden sein, you would have become.
sie würden geworden sein, they would have become.

IMPERATIVE.

werde, become (thou).
laßt ihn (sie, es) werden, let him (her, it) become.
laßt uns werden, let us become.

werdet, become (*plur.*).
werden Sie, become (*sing.*).
laßt sie werden, let them become.

CONJUGATION OF A REGULAR VERB.

Loben, *to praise* (*infinitive*).

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. gelobt, praised.
PRES. lobend (or indem man lobt), praising.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ich lobe, I praise,	ich lobe, I may praise.
du lobst, thou praisest,	du lobest, thou mayst praise.
er (sie, es) lobt, he (she, it) praises,	er lobet, he may praise.
wir loben, we praise,	wir loben, we may praise.
ihr lobt, you praise,	ihr lobet, you may praise.
sie loben, they praise,	sie loben, they may praise.
IMPERFECT.	
ich lobte, I praised,	
du lobtest, thou praisedst,	
er lobte, he praised,	(*like the indicative.*)
wir lobten, we praised,	
ihr lobtet, you praised,	
sie lobten, they praised,	
PERFECT.	
ich habe gelobt, I have praised,	ich habe gelobt, I may have praised.
du hast gelobt, thou hast praised,	du habest gelobt, thou mayst have praised.
er hat gelobt, he has praised,	er habe gelobt, he may have praised.
wir haben gelobt, we have praised,	wir haben gelobt, we may have praised.
ihr habt gelobt, you have praised,	ihr habet gelobt, you may have praised.
sie haben gelobt, they have praised,	sie haben gelobt, they may have praised.
PLUPERFECT.	
ich hatte gelobt, I had praised,	ich hätte gelobt, I might have praised.
du hattest gelobt, thou hadst praised,	du hättest gelobt, thou mightst have praised.
er hatte gelobt, he had praised,	er hätte gelobt, he might have praised.
wir hatten gelobt, we had praised,	wir hätten gelobt, we might have praised.
ihr hattet gelobt, you had praised,	ihr hättet gelobt, you might have praised.
sie hatten gelobt, they had praised,	sie hätten gelobt, they might have praised.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde loben, I shall praise,
du wirst loben, thou wilt praise,
er wird loben, he will praise,
wir werden loben, we shall praise,
ihr werdet loben, you will praise,
sie werden loben, they will praise,

ich werde loben, I shall praise.
du werdest loben, thou wilt praise.
er werde loben, he will praise.
wir werden loben, we shall praise.
ihr werdet loben, you will praise.
sie werden loben, they will praise.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised,
du wirst gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised,
er wird gelobt haben, he will have praised,
wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised,
ihr werdet gelobt haben, you will have praised,
sie werden gelobt haben, they will have praised,

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised.
du werdest gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised.
er werde gelobt haben, he will have praised.

(*like the Indicative.*)

CONDITIONALS.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

ich würde loben, I would *or* should praise,
du würdest loben, thou wouldst praise,
er würde loben, he would praise,
wir würden loben, we would *or* should praise,
ihr würdet loben, you would praise,
sie würden loben, they would praise,

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde gelobt haben, I would or should have praised.
du würdest gelobt haben, thou wouldst have praised.
er würde gelobt haben, he would have praised.
wir würden gelobt haben, we would *or* should have praised.
ihr würdet gelobt haben, you would have praised.
sie würden gelobt haben, they would have praised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

lobe, praise (thou).
laßt ihn (sie, es) loben, let him (her, it) praise.
laßt uns loben, } let us praise.
wir wollen loben, }

lobt, praise (*pl.*).
loben Sie, praise (*sing.*).
laßt Sie loben, let them praise.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ich werde gelobt, I am praised,	ich werde gelobt, I may be praised.
du wirst gelobt, thou art praised,	du werdest gelobt, thou mayest be praised.
er wird gelobt, he is praised,	er werde gelobt, he may be praised,
wir werden gelobt, we are praised,	wir werden gelobt, we may be praised.
ihr werdet gelobt, you are praised,	ihr werdet gelobt, you may be praised.
sie werden gelobt, they are praised,	sie werden gelobt, they may be praised.
IMPERFECT.	
ich wurde (or ward) gelobt, I was praised,	ich würde gelobt, I might be praised.
du wurdest (or wardst) gelobt, thou wast praised,	du würdest gelobt, thou mightst be praised.
er wurde (or ward) gelobt, he was praised,	er würde gelobt, he might be praised.
wir wurden gelobt, we were praised,	wir würden gelobt, we might be praised.
ihr wurdet gelobt, you were praised,	ihr würdet gelobt, you might be praised.
sie wurden gelobt, they were praised,	sie würden gelobt, they might be praised.
PERFECT.	
ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised,	ich sei gelobt worden, I may have been praised.
du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised,	du seiest gelobt worden, thou mayest have been praised.
er ist gelobt worden, he has been praised,	er sey gelobt worden, he may have been praised.
wir sind gelobt worden, we have been praised,	wir seien gelobt worden, we may have been praised.
ihr seid gelobt worden, you have been praised,	ihr seiet gelobt worden, you may have been praised.
sie sind gelobt worden, they have been praised,	sie seien gelobt worden, they may have been praised.
PLUPERFECT.	
ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised,	ich wäre gelobt worden, I might have been praised.
du warst gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised,	du wärest gelobt worden, thou mightst have been praised.
er war gelobt worden, he had been praised,	er wäre gelobt worden, he might have been praised.

wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised,
ihr waret gelobt werden, you had been praised,
sie waren gelobt worden, they had been praised,

wir wären gelobt worden, we might have been praised.
ihr wäret gelobt worden, you might have been praised.
sie wären gelobt worden, they might have been praised.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised,
du wirst gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised,
er wird gelobt werden, he will be praised,
wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised,
ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised,
sie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised,

ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.
du werdest gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised.
er werde gelobt werden, he will be praised.
wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised.
ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised.
sie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised,
du wirst gelobt worden sein, thou wilt have been praised,
er wird gelobt worden sein, he will have been praised,
wir werden gelobt worden sein, we shall have been praised,
ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, you will have been praised,
sie werden gelobt worden sein, they will have been praised,

ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised.
du werdest gelobt worden sein, thou will have been praised.
er werde gelobt worden sein, he will have been praised.
wir werden gelobt worden sein, we shall have been praised.
ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, you wilt have been praised.
sie werden gelobt worden sein, they will have been praised.

CONDITIONALS.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gelobt werden, I would *or* should be praised,
du würdest gelobt werden, thou wouldst be praised,
er würde gelobt werden, he would be praised,
wir würden gelobt werden, we would *or* should be praised,

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gelobt worden sein, I would *or* should have been praised.
du würdest gelobt worden sein, thou wouldst have been praised.
er würde gelobt worden sein, he would have been praised.
wir würden gelobt worden sein, we would *or* should have been praised.

ihr würdet gelobt werden, you would be praised,
sie würden gelobt werden, they would be praised,

ihr würdet gelobt worden sein, you would have been praised.
sie würden gelobt worden sein, they would have been praised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

werde gelobt, be (thou) praised.
werde er (sie, es) gelobt, let him (her, it) be praised.
laßt uns gelobt werden, let us be praised.

werdet gelobt, be praised (*plur.*).
werden Sie gelobt, be praised (*sing.*).
laßt sie gelobt werden, let them be praised.

LIST AND CONJUGATION

OF THE

FIRST CLASS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Infinitive.	Present of the indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.	Imperfect.		Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
I. a		i or ie		a	
blasen, to blow,	du bläsest, er bläs't.	ich blies.	ich bliese.	geblasen.	blase.
braten, to roast,	du brätst, er brät.	ich briet.	ich briete.	gebraten.	—
empfangen, to receive,	du empfängst, er empfängt.	ich empfing.	ich empfinge.	empfangen.	—
fallen, to fall,	du fällst, er fällt.	ich fiel.	ich fiele.	gefallen.	—
fangen, to catch,	du fängst, er fängt.	ich fing.	ich finge.	gefangen.	—
gerathen, to fall into, to turn out,	du geräthst, er geräth.	ich gerieth.	ich geriethe.	gerathen.	—
halten, to hold,	du hältst, er hält.	ich hielt.	ich hielte.	gehalten.	halt.
hangen, to hang, to be suspended,	du hängst, er hängt.	ich hing.	ich hinge.	gehangen.	—
lassen, to let,	du lässest, er läßt,	ich ließ.	ich ließe.	gelassen.	laß.
rathen, to advise,	du räthst, er räth.	ich rieth.	ich riethe.	gerathen.	rathe.
schlafen, to sleep,	du schläfst, er schläft.	ich schlief.	ich schliefe.	geschlafen.	—
verlassen, to forsake,	du verlässest, er verläßt.	ich verließ.	ich verließe.	verlassen.	verlaß.

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
a		u		a	
backen, to bake,	du bäckſt, er bäckt.	ich buk.	ich bücke.	gebacken.	backe.
fahren, to drive,	du fährſt, er fährt.	ich fuhr.	ich führe.	gefahren.	—
fragen, to ask,	du fragſt, er fragt.	ich frug.	ich früge.	gefragt.	—
graben, to dig,	du gräbſt, er gräbt.	ich grub.	ich grübe.	gegraben.	—
laden, to load,	du lädſt, er läd.	ich lud.	ich lüde.	geladen.	lade.
mahlen, to grind,	" "	ich muhl, or *reg.*	ich mühle, or *reg.*	gemahlen.	—
ſchaffen, to create,	" "	ich ſchuf.	ich ſchüfe.	geſchaffen.	—
ſchlagen, to beat,	du ſchlägſt, er ſchlägt.	ich ſchlug.	ich ſchlüge.	geſchlagen.	—
tragen, to carry,	du trägſt, er trägt.	ich trug.	ich trüge.	getragen.	—
wachſen, to grow,	du wächſeſt, er wächſt.	ich wuchs.	ich wüchſe.	gewachſen.	—
waſchen, to wash,	du wäſcheſt, er wäſcht.	ich wuſch.	ich wüſche.	gewaſchen.	—
a		o		o	
ſchallen, to sound,	" "	ich ſcholl, or *reg.*	ich ſchölle, or *reg.*	geſchollen, or *reg.*	—
erſchallen, to resound,	" "	ich erſcholl.	ich erſchölle.	erſchollen.	—
II. au		ie		au	
hauen, to hew,	" "	ich hieb.	ich hiebe.	gehauen.	—
laufen, to run,	du läufſt, er läuft.	ich lief.	ich liefe.	gelaufen.	—
au		o		o	
ſaufen, to drink to excess (*or in speaking of animals*),	du ſäufſt, er ſäuft.	ich ſoff.	ich ſöffe.	geſoffen.	—

saugen, to suck,	"	"	ich sog, or *reg.*	ich söge, or *reg.*	gesogen, or *reg.*	—
schnauben, to puff,	"	"	ich schnob, or *reg.*	ich schnöbe, or *reg.*	geschnoben, or *reg*	—
schrauben, to screw,	"	"	ich schrob, or *reg.*	ich schröbe, or *reg.*	geschroben, or *reg.*	—
III. ä			o		o	
erwägen, to consider,	"	"	ich erwog.	ich erwöge.	erwogen.	—
gähren, to ferment,	"	"	ich gohr.	ich göhre.	gegohren.	—
rächen, to avenge,	"	"	*reg*	*reg.*	gerochen, or *reg.*	—
schwären, to fester,	"	"	ich schwor.	ich schwöre.	geschworen.	—
wägen, to weigh,	"	"	ich wog.	ich wöge.	gewogen.	—
ä			a		o	—
gebären, to bring forth,	du gebierst, er gebiert.		ich gebar.	ich gebäre.	geboren.	gebiere.
IV. e			a		e	
essen, to eat,	du issest, er ißt.		ich aß.	ich äße.	gegessen.	iß.
fressen, to eat voraciously (or in speaking of animals),	du frissest, er frißt.		ich fraß.	ich fräße.	gefressen.	friß.
geben, to give,	du gibst, er gibt.		ich gab.	ich gäbe.	gegeben.	gib.
genesen, to recover,	"	"	ich genas.	ich genäse.	genesen.	—
geschehen, to happen, (*impersonal.*)	es geschieht.		es geschah.	es geschähe.	geschehen.	
lesen, to read,	du liest, er lies't.		ich las.	ich läse.	gelesen.	lies.
messen, to measure,	du misset, er mißt.		ich maß.	ich mäße.	gemessen.	miß.
sehen, to see,	du siehst, er sieht.		ich sah.	ich sähe.	gesehen.	sieh.
treten, to tread,	du trittst, er tritt.		ich trat.	ich träte.	getreten.	tritt.
vergessen, to forget,	du vergissest, er vergißt.		ich vergaß.	ich vergäße.	vergessen.	vergiß.

Infinitive.	Present of the indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
e		a		a	
stehen, to stand.	" "	ich stand.	ich stände.	gestanden.	—
e		a		o	
befehlen, to command.	du befiehlst, er befiehlt.	ich befahl.	ich befähle.	befohlen.	befiehl.
bergen, } to hide,	du birgst, er birgt.	ich barg.	ich bärge.	geborgen.	birg.
verbergen, } to conceal,	du verbirgst, er verbirgt.	ich verbarg.	ich verbärge.	verborgen.	verbirg.
brechen, to break,	du brichst, er bricht.	ich brach.	ich bräche.	gebrochen.	brich.
empfehlen, to recommend,	du empfiehlst, er empfiehlt.	ich empfahl.	ich empfähle.	empfohlen.	empfiehl.
erschrecken, to be frightened.	du erschrickst, er erschrickt.	ich erschrak.	ich erschräke.	erschrocken.	erschrick.
gelten, to be worth,	du giltst, er gilt.	ich galt.	ich gälte.	gegolten.	gilt.
helfen, to help, assist,	du hilfst, er hilft.	ich half.	ich hälfe.	geholfen.	hilf.
nehmen, to take,	du nimmst, er nimmt.	ich nahm.	ich nähme.	genommen.	nimm.
schelten, to chide,	du schiltst, er schilt.	ich schalt.	ich schälte.	gescholten.	schilt.
sprechen, to speak,	du sprichst, er spricht.	ich sprach.	ich spräche.	gesprochen.	sprich.
stechen, to sting,	du stichst, er sticht.	ich stach.	ich stäche.	gestochen.	stich.
stehlen, to steal,	du stiehlst, er stiehlt.	ich stahl.	ich stähle.	gestohlen.	stiehl.
sterben, to die,	du stirbst, er stirbt.	ich starb.	ich stärbe.	gestorben.	stirb.
treffen, to hit,	du trifft, er trifft.	ich traf.	ich träfe.	getroffen.	triff.
verderben, to spoil,	du verdirbst, er verdirbt.	ich verdarb.	ich verdärbe.	verdorben.	verdirb.
werben, to enlist,	du wirbst, er wirbst.	ich warb.	ich wärbe, *or* ich würbe.	geworben.	wirb.
werfen, to throw,	du wirfst, er wirft.	ich warf.	ich wärfe.	geworfen.	wirf.

e		i		a	
gehen, to go,	" "	ich ging.	ich ginge.	gegangen.	—
e		o		o	
bersten, to burst,	du birstest, er birst.	ich borst.	ich börste.	geborsten.	birst.
beklemmen, to harass with anxiety,	" "	ich beklomm.	ich beklömme.	beklommen.	—
bewegen, to move,	" "	ich bewog. or reg.	ich bewöge, or reg.	bewogen, or reg.	—
dreschen, to thrash,	du drischest, er dricht.	ich drosch.	ich dröschе.	gedroschen.	drisch.
fechten, to fight,	du ficht, er ficht.	ich focht.	ich föchte.	gefochten.	ficht.
heben, to heave,	" "	ich hob.	ich höbe.	gehoben.	—
melken, to milk,	du milkst, er milkt.	ich molk.	ich mölke.	gemolken.	milk.
pflegen, to nurse, to be wont, to cultivate.	" "	reg., or ich pflog.	reg., or ich pflöge.	reg., or gepflogen.	—
quellen, to well, to gush,	du quillst, er quillt.	ich quoll.	ich quölle.	gequollen.	quill.
scheren, to shear,	du schierst, er schiert.	ich schor.	ich schöre.	geschoren.	schier.
schmelzen, to melt,	du schmilzest, er schmilzt.	ich schmolz.	ich schmölze.	geschmolzen.	schmilz.
schwellen, to swell,	du schwillst, er schwillt.	ich schwoll.	ich schwölle.	geschwollen.	schwill.
weben, to weave,	" "	reg., or ich wob.	reg., or ich wöbe.	reg., or gewoben.	—
V. i		a		e	
besitzen, to possess,	" "	ich besaß.	ich besäße.	besessen.	—
bitten, to beg, entreat,	" "	ich bat.	ich bäte.	gebeten.	—
liegen, to lie,	" "	ich lag.	ich läge.	gelegen.	—
sitzen, to sit,	" "	ich saß.	ich säße.	gesessen.	—
i		a		o	
beginnen, to begin,	" "	ich begann.	ich begänne.	begonnen.	—
besinnen, to meditate,	" "	ich besann.	ich besänne, or besönne.	besonnen.	—
gewinnen, to win,	" "	ich gewann.	ich gewänne, or gewönne.	gewonnen.	—

Infinitive.	Present of the indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.		Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
gerinnen, to curdle,	"	"	ich gerann.	ich geränne, *or* gerönne.	geronnen.	—
schwimmen, to swim,	"	"	ich schwamm.	ich schwämme.	geschwommen.	—
spinnen, to spin,	"	"	ich spann.	ich spänne.	gesponnen.	—
i			a		u	—
binden, to bind,	"	"	ich band.	ich bände.	gebunden.	—
dringen, to urge,	"	"	ich drang.	ich dränge.	gedrungen.	—
entrinnen, to escape,	"	"	ich entrann.	ich entränne.	entrunnen.	—
empfinden, to feel,	"	"	ich empfand.	ich empfände.	empfunden.	—
finden, to find,	"	"	ich fand.	ich fände.	gefunden.	—
gelingen, (*impers.*) to succeed,	"	"	es gelang.	es gelänge.	gelungen.	—
klingen, to sound,	"	"	ich klang.	ich klänge.	geklungen.	—
ringen, to struggle,	"	"	ich rang.	ich ränge.	gerungen.	—
singen, to sing,	"	"	ich sang.	ich sänge.	gesungen.	—
sinken, to sink,	"	"	ich sank.	ich sänke.	gesunken.	—
schlingen, to sling, to devour.	"	"	ich schlang.	ich schlänge.	geschlungen.	—
(ver)schwinden, to vanish,	"	"	ich (ver)-schwand.	ich (ver)-schwände.	verschwunden.	—
schwingen, to swing,	"	"	ich schwang.	ich schwänge.	geschwungen.	—
springen, to spring,	"	"	ich sprang.	ich spränge.	gesprungen.	—
stinken, to stink,	"	"	ich stank.	ich stänke.	gestunken.	—
trinken, to drink,	"	"	ich trank.	ich tränke.	getrunken.	—
winden, to wind,	"	"	ich wand.	ich wände.	gewunden.	—

zwingen, to force,	"	"	ich zwang.	ich zwänge.	gezwungen.	—
i			u			
bedingen, to stipulate,	"	"	ich bedung.	ich bedünge.	bedungen.	—
dingen, to hire,	"	"	ich dung.	ich dünge.	gedungen.	—
schinden, to flag,	"	"	ich schund.	ich schünde.	geschunden.	—
ie			o		o	
bieten, to bid,	"	"	ich bot.	ich böte.	geboten.	—
anbieten, to offer,	"	"	ich bot an.	ich böte an.	angeboten.	—
fliegen, to fly,	"	"	ich flog.	ich flöge.	geflogen.	—
fliehen, to flee,	"	"	ich floh.	ich flöhe.	geflohen.	—
fließen, to flow,	"	"	ich floß.	ich flösse.	geflossen.	—
gebieten, to desire,	"	"	ich gebot.	ich geböte.	geboten.	—
gießen, to pour,	"	"	ich goß.	ich gösse.	gegossen.	—
glimmen, to burn faintly,	"	"	ich glomm.	ich glömme.	geglommen.	—
klimmen, to climb,	"	"	ich klomm.	ich klömme.	geklommen.	—
kriechen, to creep,	"	"	ich kroch.	ich kröche.	gekrochen.	—
riechen, to smell,	"	"	ich roch.	ich röche.	gerochen.	—
schieben, to shove,	"	"	ich schob.	ich schöbe.	geschoben.	—
schießen, to shoot,	"	"	ich schoß.	ich schösse.	geschossen.	—
schließen, to conclude,	"	"	ich schloß.	ich schlösse.	geschlossen.	—
sieden, to boil,	"	"	ich sott.	ich sötte.	gesotten.	—
triefen, to drip, drop,	"	"	ich troff.	ich tröffe.	getroffen.	—
verdrießen, (*impers.*) to vex,	"	"	es verdroß.	es verdrösse.	verdrossen.	—
verwirren, to confuse, entangle,	"	"	ich verworr.	ich verwörre.	verworren.	—
verlieren, to lose,	"	"	ich verlor.	ich verlöre.	verloren.	—
wiegen, to have weight,	"	"	ich wog.	ich wöge.	gewogen.	—
zerstieben, to scatter, disperse,	"	"	ich zerstob.	ich zerstöbe.	zerstoben.	—
ziehen, to draw,	"	"	ich zog.	ich zöge.	gezogen.	—
VI. ei			ie		ei	
heißen, to name, to order,	"	"	ich hieß.	ich hieße.	geheißen.	—

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.		Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative, 2d person of the singular.
ei			**i** (or **ie**)		**i** (or **ie**)	
(sich) befleißigen, to apply one's self,	"	"	ich befliß mich.	ich beflisse mich	beflissen.	—
beißen, to bite,	"	"	ich biß.	ich bisse.	gebissen.	—
bleiben, to remain,	"	"	ich blieb.	ich bliebe.	geblieben.	—
erbleichen, to grow pale,	"	"	ich erblich.	ich erbliche.	erblichen.	—
gedeihen, to prosper,	"	"	ich gedieh.	ich gediehe.	gediehen.	—
gleichen, to resemble,	"	"	ich glich.	ich gliche.	geglichen.	—
gleiten, to glide,	"	"	ich glitt.	ich glitte.	geglitten.	—
greifen, to take hold of,	"	"	ich griff.	ich griffe.	gegriffen.	—
kneifen, to pinch,	"	"	ich kniff.	ich kniffe.	gekniffen.	—
leiden, to suffer,	"	"	ich litt.	ich litte.	gelitten.	—
leihen, to lend,	"	"	ich lieh.	ich liehe.	geliehen.	—
meiden, to avoid,	"	"	ich mied.	ich miede.	gemieden.	—
pfeifen, to whistle,	"	"	ich pfiff.	ich pfiffe.	gepfiffen.	—
preisen, to praise,	"	"	ich pries.	ich priese.	gepriesen.	—
reiben, to rub,	"	"	ich rieb.	ich riebe.	gerieben.	—
reiten, to ride,	"	"	ich ritt.	ich ritte.	geritten.	—
reißen, to tear,	"	"	ich riß.	ich risse.	gerissen.	—
scheiden, to separate,	"	"	ich schied.	ich schiede.	geschieden.	—
scheinen, to shine,	"	"	ich schien.	ich schiene.	geschienen.	—
schleichen, to sneak,	"	"	ich schlich.	ich schliche.	geschlichen.	—
schleifen, to grind,	"	"	ich schliff.	ich schliffe.	geschliffen.	—

schleißen, to slit,	"	"	ich schliß.	ich schlisse.	geschlissen.	—
schmeißen, to strike,	"	"	ich schmiß.	ich schmisse.	geschmissen.	—
schneiden, to cut,	"	"	ich schnitt.	ich schnitte.	geschnitten.	—
schreiben, to write,	"	"	ich schrieb.	ich schriebe.	geschrieben.	—
schreien, to cry out,	"	"	ich schrie.	ich schriee.	geschrieen.	—
schreiten, to stride,	"	"	ich schritt.	ich schritte.	geschritten.	—
schweigen, to be silent.	"	"	ich schwieg.	ich schwiege.	geschwiegen.	—
speien, to spit,	"	"	ich spie.	ich spiee.	gespieen.	—
steigen, to ascend,	"	"	ich stieg.	ich stiege.	gestiegen.	—
streichen, to stroke,	"	"	ich strich.	ich striche.	gestrichen.	—
streiten, to dispute,	"	"	ich stritt.	ich stritte.	gestritten.	—
vergleichen, to compare,	"	"	ich verglich.	ich vergliche.	verglichen.	—
verzeihen, to pardon,	"	"	ich verzieh.	ich verziehe.	verziehen.	—
weichen, to yield,	"	"	ich wich.	ich wiche.	gewichen.	—
weisen, to show,	"	"	ich wies.	ich wiese.	gewiesen.	—
zeihen, to accuse,	"	"	ich zieh.	ich ziehe.	geziehen.	—
VII. o			a		o	
bekommen, to get,	"	"	ich bekam.	ich bekäme.	bekommen.	—
kommen, to come,	"	"	ich kam.	ich käme.	gekommen.	—
o			ie		o	
stoßen, to push,	du stößest, er stößt.		ich stieß.	ich stieße.	gestoßen.	stoß.
ö			o		o	
erlöschen, to become extinct, expire,	"	"	ich erlosch.	ich erlösche.	erloschen.	—
schwören, to swear,	"	"	ich schwor.	ich schwöre.	geschworen.	—
VIII. u			ie		u	
rufen, to call,	"	"	ich rief.	ich riefe.	gerufen.	—

Infinitive.	Present of the indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
u		a		a	
thun, to do,	ich thue, du thust, er thut.	ich that.	ich thäte.	gethan.	thue.
ü		o		o	
betrügen, to deceive,	" "	ich betrog.	ich betröge.	betrogen.	—
erküren, to elect,	" "	ich erkor.	ich erköre.	erkoren.	—
lügen, to lie,	" "	ich log.	ich löge.	gelogen.	—

LIST AND CONJUGATION

OF THE

SECOND CLASS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Infinitive.	Present of the Indicative, 2d and 3d persons of the singular.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Past-Participle.	Imperative. 2d person of the singular.
brennen, to burn,	" "	ich brannte.	ich brennte.	gebrannt.	brenne.
bringen, to bring,	" "	ich brachte.	ich brächte.	gebracht.	—
denken, to think,	" "	ich dachte.	ich dächte.	gedacht.	—
dürfen, to be permitted,	ich darf, du darfst, er darf.	ich durfte.	ich dürfte.	gedurft.	—
haben, to have,	ich habe, du hast, er hat.	ich hatte.	ich hätte.	gehabt.	habe.
kennen, to know,	" "	ich kannte.	ich kennte.	gekannt.	—
können, can,	ich kann, du kannst, er kann.	ich konnte.	ich könnte.	gekonnt.	kenne.
mögen, may, to be inclined,	ich mag, du magst, er mag.	ich mochte.	ich möchte.	gemocht.	möge.
müssen, must,	ich muß, du mußt, er muß.	ich mußte.	ich müßte.	gemußt.	—
nennen, to name, call,	" "	ich nannte.	ich nennte.	genannt.	—
rennen, to run,	" "	ich rannte.	ich rennte.	gerannt.	—
senden, to send,	" "	ich sandte.	ich sendete.	gesandt.	—
sollen, shall,	ich soll, du sollst, er soll.	ich sollte.	ich sollte.	gesollt.	—
wenden, to turn,	" "	ich wandte.	ich wendete.	gewandt.	—
wissen, to know,	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß.	ich wußte.	ich wüßte.	gewußt.	—
wollen, to be willing,	ich will, du willst, er will.	ich wollte.	ich wollte.	gewollt.	wolle.

PROSE AND POETIC SELECTIONS.

Die Schöpfung der Welt.[1] (Genesis, 1.)

Am Anfang schuf Gott Himmel und Erde. Und die Erde war wüste[2] und leer,[3] und es war finster auf der Tiefe,[4] und der Geist Gottes schwebte[5] auf dem Wasser. Und Gott sprach: Es werde Licht.[6] Und es ward Licht. Und Gott sahe, daß das Licht gut war. Da schied[7] Gott das Licht von der Finsterniß, und nannte das Licht Tag, und die Finsterniß Nacht. Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der erste Tag. Und Gott sprach: Es werde eine Veste[8] zwischen den Wassern; und die sei ein Unterschied zwischen den Wassern. Da machte Gott die Veste und schied das Wasser unter der Veste, von dem Wasser über der Veste. Und es geschahe[9] also. Und Gott nannte die Veste Himmel. Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der andere Tag. Und Gott sprach: Es sammle[10] sich das Wasser unter dem Himmel an besondere[11] Oerter, daß man das Trockene[12] sehe. Und es geschahe also. Und Gott nannte das Trockene Erde, und die Sammlung[13] der Wasser[13] nannte er Meer. Und Gott sahe, daß es gut war. Und Gott sprach: Es lasse die Erde aufgehen[14] Gras und Kraut,[15] das sich besame,[16] und fruchtbare Bäume, da ein jeglicher nach seiner Art Frucht trage, und habe seinen eigenen Samen[17] bei[17] sich selbst auf Erden. Und es geschahe also. Und die Erde ließ aufgehen Gras und Kraut, das sich besamete, ein jegliches nach seiner Art; und die Bäume, die da Frucht trugen,[18] und ihren eigenen Samen bei sich selbst hatten, ein jeglicher nach seiner Art. Und Gott sahe, daß es gut war. Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der dritte Tag. Und Gott sprach: Es werden Lichter an der Veste des Himmels, die da scheiden Tag und Nacht, und geben Zeichen,[19] Zeiten,[20] Tage und Jahre. Und seien[21] Lichter an der Veste des Himmels, daß sie scheinen[22] auf Erden. Und es geschahe also. Und Gott machte zwei große Lichter, ein großes Licht,[23] das den Tag regiere,[23] und ein kleines[24] Licht das die Nacht regiere, dazu[24] auch die Sterne. Und Gott setzte sie an die Veste des Himmels, daß sie scheinen auf die Erde, und den Tag und die Nacht regierten, und schieden Licht und Finsterniß. Und Gott sahe, daß es gut war. Da ward aus Abend und Mor-

gen der vierte Tag. Und Gott sprach: Es errege[26] sich das Wasser mit webenden[27] und lebendigen[27] Thieren,[27] und mit Gevögel,[28] das auf Erden unter der Veste des Himmels fliege. Und Gott schuf große Wallfische,[29] und allerlei[30] Thier [30], das da lebet und webet, und vom Wasser erreget ward, ein jegliches nach seiner Art; und allerlei gefiedertes[31] Gevögel, ein jegliches nach seiner Art. Und Gott sahe, daß es gut war. Und Gott segnete sie, und sprach: Seid fruchtbar und mehret[32] euch, und erfüllet das Wasser im Meer; und das Gevögel mehre sich auf Erden. Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der fünfte Tag. Und Gott sprach: die Erde bringe hervor lebendige Thiere,[33] ein jegliches nach seiner Art; Vieh,[34] Gewürm[35] und Thiere[36] auf Erden, ein jegliches nach seiner Art. Und es geschahe also. Und Gott machte die Thiere auf Erden, ein jegliches nach seiner Art, und das Vieh nach seiner Art, und allerlei Gewürm auf Erden nach seiner Art. Und Gott sahe, daß es gut war. Und Gott sprach: Lasset uns Menschen machen, ein Bild,[37] das uns gleich sei,[37] die da herrschen[38] über die Fische im Meer, und über die Vögel unter dem Himmel, und über das Vieh, und über die ganze Erde, und über alles Gewürm, das auf Erden kriechet. Und Gott schuf den Menschen ihm[39] zum Bilde,[39] zum Bilde Gottes schuf er ihn; und er schuf sie ein Männlein und ein Fräulein. Und Gott segnete sie, und sprach zu ihnen: Seid fruchtbar, und mehret euch, und füllet die Erde, und machet[40] sie euch unterthan,[40] und herrschet über Fische im Meere, und über Vögel unter dem Himmel, und über alles Thier, das auf Erden kriecht. Und Gott sprach: Sehet da,[41] ich habe euch gegeben allerlei Kraut, das sich besamet, auf der ganzen Erde, und allerlei fruchtbare Bäume, und Bäume, die sich besamen, zu eurer Speise; und allem Thier auf Erden, und allen Vögeln unter dem Himmel, und allem Gewürme, das da lebet auf Erden, daß sie allerlei grün Kraut essen. Und es geschahe also. Und Gott sahe an Alles, was er gemacht hatte, und siehe[41] da, es war sehr gut. Da ward aus Abend und Morgen der sechste Tag.

1. The creation of heaven and earth; 2. desert, without form; 3. empty void; 4. the face of the deep; 5. schweben, to move; 6. let there be light 7. scheiden, to divide; 8. firmament; 9. geschehen, to take place (it was so); 10. sich sammeln, to gather together; 11. particular (unto one place); 12. the dry land; 13. the gathering together of the waters; 14. aufgehen, to spring up, here, bring forth; 15. das Kraut, herb; 16. sich besamen, to yield (bear) seed; 17. whose seed is in itself; 18. Frucht tragen, to bear fruit; 19. let them be for signs; 20. seasons; 21. let them be for; 22. scheinen, to shine, to give light; 23. a great (the greater) light to rule the day; 24. small (lesser); 25. machte er, to be understood; 26. sich erregen,

to become alive with. to teem; 27. moving creatures that have life; 28. das Gevögel, fowl; 29. whale; 30. every variety of living creatures; 31. feathered, winged; 32. to multiply; 33. living creatures; 34. das Vieh, cattle; 35. das Gewürm, worms, creeping things; 36. beast; 37. in our image; 38. herrschen, to govern, to have dominion; 39. in his own image; 40. unterthan machen, to subdue, bring into subjection, exercise dominion 41. behold.

2. Das Gebet des Herrn. (Matt. 6, 9—13.)

THE LORD'S PRAYER.

Unser Vater in dem Himmel (or Vater unser, der du bist im Himmel). Dein Name werde geheiligt. Dein Reich komme! Dein Wille geschehe, auf Erden, wie im Himmel. Unser täglich Brod gib uns heute. Und vergib uns unsere Schulden, wie wir unseren Schuldigern vergeben. Und führe uns nicht in Versuchung, sondern erlöse uns von dem Uebel. Denn dein ist das Reich, und die Kraft, und die Herrlichkeit in Ewigkeit. Amen.

3. Französische Heiterkeit.[1]

Im Feldzuge von 1812 wurde ein sehr ausgezeichneter Stabsoffizier der französischen Armee schwer[2] am Beine verwundet. Bei[3] der Berathschlagung erklärten die Wundärzte, daß die Abnehmung[4] nöthig wäre. Der General empfing diese Nachricht mit Fassung. Er bemerkte unter den ihn umgebenden Personen einen Kammerdiener,[5] welcher durch seinen tiefen Kummer den Antheil zeigte, den er an diesem traurigen Vorfall nahm. „Warum weinst du, Heinrich?" sagte sein Herr lächelnd zu ihm: „es ist gut[6] für dich, du wirst in Zukunft nur einen Stiefel zu putzen[7] haben."

1. Die Heiterkeit, gayety; 2. severely; 3. Bei der Berathschlagung, on consulting; 4. amputation; 5. valet-de-chambre; 6. to be a good thing; 7. putzen, to clean.

4. Spenser's Feenkönigin.[1]

Als Spenser sein berühmtes Gedicht von der Feenkönigin beendigt hatte, brachte er es dem Grafen von Southampton, dem[2] großen Beschützer[3] der Dichter jener Zeit. Als das Manuscript dem Grafen hinaufgeschickt war, las er einige Seiten und befahl dann seinem Diener, dem Schriftsteller zwanzig Pfund zu geben. Als er weiter las, rief er in[4] Entzücken: „Bringe dem Manne

noch zwanzig Pfund!" Weiter lesend rief er aus: „Gieb ihm noch zwanzig Pfund!" Zuletzt aber verlor er alle Geduld und sagte: „Geh, wirf[5] den Kerl aus dem Hause, denn wenn ich weiter lese, werde ich zu Grunde gerichtet."[6]

1. Fairy Queen; 2. Nouns in apposition must always be in the same case as those which they explain or characterize. While in English, there is no way of exhibiting this by external forms, in German, it must be indicated by the article which precedes the noun in apposition, being properly declined; 3. patron; 4. in Entzücken, in a rapture; 5. werfen, to turn (to throw); 6. zu Grunde richten, to ruin.

5. Rich und der Miethkutscher.[1]

Als der verstorbene[2] Herr Rich, dessen Fähigkeiten als Harlequin allgemein bekannt sind, eines Abends, in einer Miethkutsche vom Schauspielhause[3] nach Hause zurückkehrte, befahl er dem Kutscher, ihn nach der Sonne, einem berühmten Gasthofe in L. zu fahren. Gerade als die Kutsche an einem der Fenster des Gasthauses vorbeifuhr, warf sich Rich, der es offen bemerkte, gewandt[4] aus dem Kutschenfenster in das Zimmer. Der Kutscher, welcher von dieser Handlung nichts sah, fuhr vor,[5] stieg[6] von seinem Sitze, öffnete den Kutschenschlag,[7] und ließ den Tritt[8] herab; dann seinen Hut ziehend,[9] wartete er einige Zeit, indem er vermuthete, daß sein Passagier aussteigen würde; als er aber zuletzt in die Kutsche sah,[10] und sie leer erblickte,[11] ertheilte[12] er dem Schurken, der ihn hintergangen hatte, einige herzliche Verwünschungen,[13] bestieg seinen Sitz wieder, wandte um, und kehrte nach seinem Standplatze[14] zurück, als Rich, welcher seine Gelegenheit erlauscht[15] hatte, sich in die Kutsche warf, herausblickte, den Kerl fragte, wohin er führe, und von ihm verlangte, daß er wendete. Der Kutscher, beinahe vor Furcht versteinert,[16] gehorchte augenblicklich und fuhr noch einmal vor die Thür des Gasthauses. Rich stieg nun aus; und nachdem er den Kerl Dummheit vorgeworfen[17] hatte, hielt er sein Geld hin. „Nein, Gott segne Euer Wohlgeborn",[18] sagte der Kutscher, „mein Herr hat mir befohlen, heute Nacht kein Geld zu nehmen." „Bah!"[19] sagte Rich, „dein Herr ist ein Narr; hier sind zwei Schillinge für dich selbst." „Nein, nein," sagte der Kutscher, welcher nun[20] wieder auf seinen Sitz gestiegen war, „das geht nicht.[21] Ich kenne Sie, ungeachtet Ihrer Schuhe[22] zu gut — und also, Herr Teufel, sind Sie überlistet".[23]

1. Hackney-coachman; 2. late; 3. play-house; 4. dexterously; 5. vorfahren, to draw up; 6. steigen von, to descend from; 7. coach-door; 8. step; 9. den Hut ziehen, to take off the hat; 10. to look; 11. to see; 12.

ertheilen, to bestow upon; 13. die Verwünschung, curse; 14. der Standplatz, stand; 15. erlauschen, to watch; 16. petrified (with fear); 17. vorwerfen, *separ.*, to reproach a person with; 18. your honor; 19. pshaw: 20. by this time; 21. that won't do; 22. ungeachtet Ihrer Schuhe, for all your shoes; 23. überlisten, to outwit.

6. Der Biedermann (the honest man, the man of integrity).

Von Andern sagt ein Biedermann
Das Böse,[1] wenn er muß, das Gute, wenn er kann.

Nicolay, born at Strassburg, 1737.

7. Erinnerung (Remembrance).

Willst du immer weiter schweifen?[2]
Sieh, das Gute liegt[3] so nah.
Lerne nur das Glück ergreifen,
Denn das Glück ist immer nah.

Goethe, born at Frankfort on the Main, 1749.

8. Selbsterkenntniß (Self-knowledge).

Willst du dich selber erkennen:[4] so sieh, wie die Andern es treiben;[5]
Willst du die Andern verstehen: blick in dein eigenes Herz.

Schiller, geboren zu Marbach, 1759.

9. Der Geizhals (Miser).

Ein Geizhals fiel in einem Fluß, der tief
Und reißend[6] war. Ein Fischer, der das Leben
Ihm retten[7] wollte, sprang hinein, und rief,
Er möchte nur die Hand ihm geben;
Allein der Geizhals sprach, indem er untersank:[8]
Ich kann nichts geben! und — ertrank.[9]

Blumauer, geboren zu Steyer in Oestreich, 1755

10. Die Thränen (Tears).

Wir haben alle schon geweint, jeder Glückliche einmal vor Weh,[10] jeder Unglückliche einmal vor Lust.

Jean Paul, born at Wunsiedel

11. Die Blumen auf dem Grabe der Jungfrau.[11]

Streuet[12] nur Blumen auf sie, ihr blühenden[13] Freundinnen! Ihr brachtet ja[14] sonst ihr Blumen bei den Wiegenfesten. Jetzo feiert[15] sie ihr größtes; denn die Bahre[16] ist die Wiege[17] des Himmels.

Jean Paul.

1. Das Böse, the evil; 2. weiter schweifen, to rove afar; 3. liegen, to lie (to be); 4. erkennen, to become acquainted with, to know; 5. treiben, to act, to conduct one's self; 6. rapid; 7. to save; 8. untersinken (*separ.*), to sink (down); 9. ertrinken, to be drowned; 10. das Weh, sorrow, grief; 11. die Jungfrau, maiden, virgin; 12. streuen, to strew, to scatter; 13. blooming; 14. once you were wont to bring — on her natal days; 15. feiern, to celebrate; 16. the bier; 17. the cradle.

12. Der Zeisig (Green-finch).

Ein Zeisig war's und eine Nachtigall,
Die einst zu gleicher Zeit vor Damons Fenster hingen.
Die Nachtigall fing[1] an, ihr göttlich Lied zu singen,
Und Damons kleinem Sohn gefiel[2] der süße Schall.[3]
Ach! welcher singt von beiden doch so schön?
Den Vogel möcht ich wirklich sehn!
Der Vater macht ihm diese Freude,
Und nimmt die Vögel gleich[4] herein.[5]
Hier, spricht er, sind sie alle beide;
Doch welcher wird der schöne Sänger[6] sein?
Getrau'st du dich, mir das zu sagen?
Der Sohn läßt sich nicht zweimal fragen;
Schnell weis't er auf den Zeisig hin.
„Der, spricht er, muß es sein, so wahr ich ehrlich bin!
„Wie schön und gelb ist sein Gefieder![7]
„Drum[8] singt er auch so schöne Lieder;
„Dem andern sieht[9] man's gleich an seinen Federn an,
„Daß er nichts Kluges singen kann."

Gellert, geboren zu Hainichen in Sachsen, 1715.

1. anfangen, to begin; 2. Einem Etwas gefallen, to be pleased with something; 3. the sound, song; 4. immediately; 5. in; 6. the songster, singer; 7. the plumage; 8. drum, *for* darum; 9. es Einem ansehen, to discover (see) by (*or* from) any one's appearance — (you may see from the other's feathers).

13. Der Affe[1] und der Fuchs.

„Nenne mir ein so geschicktes Thier, dem ich nicht nachahmen könnte!“ so prahlte[2] der Affe gegen[3] den Fuchs. Der Fuchs aber erwiederte: „Und du, nenne mir ein so geringschätziges[4] Thier, dem es einfallen[5] könnte, dir nachzuahmen.

Lessing, geboren zu Kamenz in Sachsen, 1729.

1. the ape; 2. prahlen, to vaunt, to boast; 3. gegen, to, in the presence of; 4. insignificant; 5. einfallen, to occur, *used impersonally with the dative of the person:* to take into one's head.

14. Der Löwe und der Fuchs.

Zum Löwen sprach der Fuchs: ich muß
Dir's endlich nur gestehen,[1] mein Verdruß[2]
Hat sonst kein Ende.[3] —
Der Esel spricht von dir nicht gut;[4]
Er sagt, was ich an[5] dir zu loben fände,
Das wiss'[6] er nicht; dein Heldenmuth
Sei zweifelhaft;[7] du gäbst ihm keine Proben[8]
Von Großmuth und Gerechtigkeit;
Du würgtest[9] die Unschuld,[10] suchtest Streit;
Er könnte dich nicht lieben und nicht loben. —
Ein Weilchen schwieg der Löwe still;
Dann sprach er: Fuchs! er spreche was er will:
Denn was von mir ein Esel spricht,
Das acht[11] ich nicht.

Gleim, born near Halberstadt, 1719.

1. gestehen, to confess; 2. der Verdruß, vexation, indignation; 3. ein Ende haben, to be at an end; 4. gut, well; 5. in; 6. wissen, to know; 7. doubtful; 8. Proben geben, to give proofs; 9. würgen, to murder, destroy; 10. substitute: unschuldige Geschöpfe; 11. substitute: beachten, to regard, heed.

15. Die Katzen und der Hausherr.

Thier und Menschen schliefen feste,[2]
  Selbst der Hausprophete[3] schwieg;
Als ein Schwarm geschwänzter[4] Gäste
  Von den nächsten Dächern stieg.
In dem Vorsaal[5] eines Reichen
  Stimmten[6] sie ihr Liedchen an,

So ein Lied, das Stein' erweichen,[7]
  Menschen rasend[8] machen kann.
Hinz, des Murners Schwiegervater,[9]
  Schlug den Takt[10] erbärmlich[11] schön,
Und zwei abgelebte[12] Kater,
  Quälten[13] sich, ihm beizustehn.
Endlich tanzen alle Katzen.
  Poltern,[14] lärmen,[15] daß es kracht,[16]
Zischen,[17] heulen,[18] sprudeln,[19] kratzen,[20]
  Bis der Herr im Hauf' erwacht.
Dieser springt mit einem Prügel[21]
  In dem finstern Saal herum;
Schlägt um sich, zerstößt[22] den Spiegel,
  Wirft[23] ein Dutzend Tassen um;
Stolpert[24] über ein'ge Späne,[25]
  Stürzt[26] im Fallen auf die Uhr,
Und zerbricht zwei Reihen Zähne.—
  Blinder Eifer schadet nur!

Lichtwer, born at Wurzen, Saxony, 1719.

1. The master of the house; 2. fest schlafen, to be fast asleep; 3. a figurative expression for cock; 4. tailed; 5. the antichamber; 6. anstimmen (*sep.*), to commence singing; 7. to soften; 8. crazy (das Menschen rasend machen kann, which can turn the heads of men); 9. der Schwiegervater, the father-in-law (Hinz and Murner are names for Kater, tom-cat); 10. den Takt schlagen, to beat the time; 11. erbärmlich, outrageously; 12. superannuated; 13. quälen, to torment; 14. to make a racket; 15. to make a noise; 16. krachen, to crack; 17. to hiss; 18. to howl, yell; 19. to sputter; 20. to scratch; 21. der Prügel, the club; 22. zerstoßen, to shatter; 23. umwerfen (*sep.*), to overturn; 24. stolpern, to stumble; 25. der Span, chip; 26. stürzen, to tumble.

15. Die Krone des Alters.[1]

Wen der Schöpfer ehret, warum sollten den nicht auch Menschen ehren? Auf des Verständigen[2] und Tugendhaften Haupte ist graues Haar eine schöne Krone.

Drei Greise[3] feierten zusammen ihr Jubelfest[4] und erzählten ihren Kindern, woher sie so alt geworden.[5]

Der Eine, ein Lehrer und Priester, sprach: „nie kümmerte[6] mich, wenn ich zu lehren ausging, die Länge[6] des Weges; nie schritt ich anmaßend[7] über die Häupter der Jugend hinweg, und hob die Hände nie auf zum Segnen,[8] ohne daß ich wirklich[9] segnete und Gott lobte; darum bin ich so alt geworden."

Der Andere, ein Kaufmann, sagte: „nie habe ich mich mit meines Nächsten Schaden bereichert;[10] nie ist sein Fluch[11] mit mir zu Bette gegangen und von meinem Vermögen gab ich gern den Armen; darum hat mir Gott die Jahre geschenkt."

Der Dritte, ein Richter des Volks, sagte: „nie nahm ich Geschenke, nie bestand ich starr[12] auf meinem Sinn, im Schwersten[13] suchte ich mich jederzeit zuerst zu überwinden;[14] darum hat mich Gott in meinem Alter gesegnet."

Da traten ihre Söhne und Enkel zu ihnen heran, küsseten ihre Hände, und kränzten[15] sie mit Blumen. Und die Väter segneten sie und sprachen: „wie eure Jugend, sei auch euer Alter! Eure Kinder seien[16] euch was ihr uns seid, auf unserm greisen[17] Haare eine blühende Rosenkrone."

Das Alter ist eine schöne Krone; man findet[18] sie nur auf dem Wege der Mäßigkeit, der Gerechtigkeit und Wahrheit.

Herder, geboren zu Moringen in Preußen, 1741.

1. The crown of old age; 2. der Verständige, the wise man; 3. der Greis, the old man; 4. das Jubelfest, jubilee; 5. supply, waren; 6. nie kümmerte mich die Länge des Weges, the distance never gave me any concern; 7. arrogantly, haughtily; 8. zum Segnen, to bless, *lit.* for a blessing; 9. actually; 10. bereichern, to enrich; 11. der Fluch, curse; 12. obstinately; 13. im Schwersten, in the most difficult things; 14. to overcome, to conquer, to rule one's own spirit; 15. kränzen or bekränzen, to crown; 16. Eure Kinder seien, may your children be; 17. gray; 18. man findet sie nur auf dem Wege ꝛc., but it is only found in, &c.

17. Die seltsamen[1] Menschen.

Ein Mann, der in der Welt sich trefflich umgeseh'n,[2]
Kam endlich heim[3] von seiner Reise.
Die Freunde liefen schaarenweise,[4]
Und grüßten[5] ihren Freund. So pflegt es zu gescheh'n.[6]
Da hieß[7] es allemal: Uns freut von ganzer Seele,
Dich hier zu sehn, und nun erzähle. —
Was ward da nicht erzählt![8] — Hört! sprach er einst, ihr wißt,
Wie weit es bis zum Lande der Huronen ist.
Elf hundert Meilen hinter[9] ihnen
Sind Menschen, die mir seltsam schienen.
Sie sitzen oft am Tisch bis in die späte Nacht;[10]
Der Tisch wird nicht gedeckt,[11] der Mund nicht naß gemacht.[12]
Es könnten um sie her die Donnerkeile[13] blitzen;[14]
Zwei Heer' im Kampfe[15] stehn; sollt' auch der Himmel schon
Mit Krachen seinen Einfall drohn:[16]

Sie blieben ungestöret[17] sitzen,
Denn[18] sie sind taub und stumm. Doch läßt sich dann und wann[19]
Ein halb gebrochner Laut[20] aus ihrem Munde hören,
Der nicht zusammenhängt, und wenig sagen kann,[21]
Ob[22] sie die Augen schon darüber arg[23] verkehren.
Man sah' mich oft erstaunt[24] an ihrer Seite stehen,
Denn, wenn dergleichen Ding geschieht,
So pflegt man häufig hinzugehen,
Daß man die Leute sitzen sieht.
Glaubt, Brüder! daß mir nie die gräßlichen[25] Geberden
Aus dem Gemüthe kommen werden,[25]
Die ich an ihnen sah. Verzweiflung,[26] Raserei,[27]
Boshafte[28] Freud' und Angst dabei,
Die wechselten in den Gesichtern.
Sie[29] schienen mir, das schwör' ich euch!
An Wuth den Furien, an Ernst den Höllenrichtern,
An Angst den Missethätern gleich.[29] —
Allein was ist ihr Zweck?[30] So fragten hier die Freunde.
Vielleicht besorgen[31] sie die Wohlfahrt[32] der Gemeinde? —
Ach nein! — So suchen sie der Weisen[33] Stein? — Ihr irrt! —
So wollen sie vielleicht des Zirkels[34] Viereck finden?
Nein! — So bereu'n sie alte Sünden? —
Das ist es alles nicht![35] — So sind sie gar verwirrt?[36]
Wenn sie nicht hören, reden, fühlen,
Noch sehn; was thun sie denn?[37] — Sie spielen!

Lichtwer.

1. Odd; 2. umsehen (*sep.*), to look about, (excellently); (ein Mann, der — umgeseh'n, a man who had seen a great deal of the world, *or*, had travelled a great deal; 3. home; 4. in great numbers; 5. grüßen, to greet; 6. so pflegt es zu gescheh'n, thus we are accustomed to do; such is usually the case; 7. da hieß — zu seh'n, then, as with one voice, they said, we heartily rejoice to see thee; 8. what did he not relate, how much was not related then; 9. beyond; 10. till late at night; 11. den Tisch decken, to lay the cloth; 12. naß machen, to moisten (der Mund wird nicht naß gemacht, no moisture reaches the mouth, *i. e.* they drink nothing); 13. Donnerkeil, the thunderbolt; 14. blitzen, to lighten (es könnten — blitzen, the thunderbolts might flash around them); 15. im Kampfe stehen, to engage in battle; 16. sollte auch — drohn, and though the sky should threaten to fall with a crash; 17. unmoved; 18. for; 19. dann und wann, now and then; 20. a half-uttered, a muttered sound; 21. which is unconnected and conveys but little meaning; 22. obschon, or obgleich; 23. badly (ob sie — verkehren, although they painfully roll their eyes); 24. amazed; 25. the horrible motions, gestures, contortions, will never be erased from my memory; 26. despair; 27. rage; 28. malignant; 29. Sie schienen — gleich, I aver to you, they resembled the furies in madness, in their

sternness the infernal judges, and criminals in their anxiety; 30. der Zweck, object; 31. besorgen, to provide for; 32. the commonwealth; 33 the philosopher's stone; 34. des Zirkel's Viereck, the quadrature of the circle; 35. nothing of all this; 36. deranged; 37. pray, what do they do?

18. Der Tod und seine Kandidaten.

Der Erde mächtigster Despot, —
Nicht Hindostans, nicht Stambuls Kaiser —
Der Fürst der Mitternacht,[1] der Tod,
Versammelte[2] die beiden Häuser
Von seinem schwarzen Parlament.
Nach einem kurzen[3] Kompliment
Sprach er: Es fehlet unsern Staaten
Jetzt ein Vesir.[5] Wer unser Reich
Am meisten mehrt,[6] dem will ich gleich
Das Amt verleih'n.[7] Ihr[8] Kandidaten!
Wer[9] ihr auch seid, herbei![9] — Er schwieg.
Die Gicht,[10] das Fieber und der Krieg
Verrannten[11] sich den Weg, und traten
Mit des Verdienstes edlem Stolz
Vor seinen Thron aus Ebenholz.
Ich bin, sprach jeder, unter allen
Der treu'ste[12] deiner Kronvasallen.[13]
Der Erdball[14] und das Schattenland[15]
Bezeugen[16] es! Der Sultan blickte
Sie huldreich[17] an. Der Reichstag[18] fand
Die Auswahl[20] schwer. Nach ihnen rückte[21]
Die bleiche[22] Pest[22] aus ihrem Sitz.[21]
Monarch! rief sie mit bitterm[23] Witz,[23]
Ich will mir selbst nicht Weihrauch[24] streuen,
Mein Lob[25] steht[25] in den Litaneien!
Der König sprach: dieß hebt[26] den Streit!
Und wollte, voll Zufriedenheit,
Das Ehrenamt[27] der Pest verleihen,
Als sich ein fremder Postulant,
Ein Doktor[28] in der Heilkunst[28], nahte.
Sir! sprach er, dir und deinem Rathe[29]
Ist mein Verdienst schon längst bekannt,
Von meinem glücklichen[30] Talente[30]
Enthält der Kirchhof[31] und dein Staat
Schon manches Hundert Monumente.

Indem der Fürst mit dem Senat
Den Antrag[32] reiflich[33] überdachte,[32]
Erschien ein neuer Kandidat,
Der allem Zwist' ein Ende machte.
Er sah[34] bisher nur an der Thür
Den seltnen Rangstreit[34] an, und lachte.
Nun trat er vor, und sagte: Sir!
Bist du gerecht, so wirst du mir
Gewiß das Erzamt[35] zuerkennen:
Denn alle diese Prahler[36] hier
Sind Pfuscher[37] gegen[38] mich zu nennen.
Dir lodert[39] stets mein Brandaltar,[40]
Dir weih'[41] ich jeden Tag zum Feste;[42]
Du bist es, dem ich jedes Jahr
Ein Dutzend Hekatomben mäste.[43]
Ei! rief der Schach,[44] so sage doch,[45]
Wer bist du, Fremdling?[46] — Sir — ein Koch!

Pfeffel, born at Colmar, in Alsace, 1736.

1. The prince of midnight; 2. versammeln, to assemble; 3. kurz, brief; 4. unsere Staaten, our dominions; 5. der Vezir, vizier; 6. mehren, to increase; 7. verleihen, to confer upon; 8. now; 9. whoever you may be, come forward; 10. the gout; 11. sich den Weg verrennen, to strive to get the start of each other; 12. treu, faithful; 13. der Kronvasall, the crown-vassal; 14. the terraqueous globe; 15. the lower world; 16. to attest, to certify; 17. graciously; 18. assembly, congress; 20. the choice; 21. rückte aus ihrem Sitz, advanced from her seat; 22. pale pestilence; 23. mit bitterm Witz, with biting wit, sarcasm; 24. der Weihrauch, frankincense, (Weihrauch streuen, to sound some one's own praise); 25. my worth is recorded; 26. den Streit heben, to decide the dispute; 27. the honorable office; 28. a practitioner of the healing art; 29. der Rath, the council; 30. talent, superior ability, skill; 31. the burying ground; 32. den Antrag überdenken, to deliberate upon the proposal; 33. maturely; 34. dem seltsamen Rangstreit zusehen, to watch the strange dispute about preeminence; 35. das Erzamt zuerkennen, to confer the highest office, the precedency, upon; 36. der Prahler, the boaster; 37. der Pfuscher, the bungler; 38. gegen mich, in comparison with me; 39. lodern, to blaze; 40. der Brandaltar, the altar of burnt offerings; 41. weihen, to dedicate; 42. das Fest, the festival; 43. mästen, to fatten; Hekatombe, hecatomb (a sacrifice of a hundred animals); 44. the king; 45. pray; 46. Fremdling, stranger.

19. Der Sänger.

„Was hör' ich draußen vor dem Thor,
Was auf der Brücke[1] schallen?

Laß den Gesang vor unserm Ohr
Im Saale wiederhallen!"
Der König sprach's, der Page[2] lief;
Der Knabe kam, der König rief:
„Laß mir herein den Alten!"

„Gegrüßet[3] seid mir, edle Herrn,
Gegrüßt ihr, schöne Damen!
Welch' reicher Himmel! Stern bei Stern!
Wer kennet ihre Namen?
Im Saal voll Pracht[4] und Herrlichkeit
Schließt,[5] Augen, euch, hier ist nicht Zeit,
Sich staunend zu ergötzen."[6]

Der Sänger drückt[6] die Augen ein
Und schlug[7] in vollen Tönen;
Die Ritter[8] schauten[9] muthig drein,
Und in den Schooß[10] die Schönen.
Der König, dem das Lied gefiel,
Ließ, ihn zu ehren für das Spiel,
Eine gold'ne Kette reichen.

Die goldne Kette gib mir nicht,
Die Kette gib den Rittern,
Vor deren kühnem[11] Angesicht[11]
Der Feinde Lanzen splittern;[12]
Gib sie dem Kanzler, den du hast,
Und laß ihn noch die gold'ne Last[13]
Zu andern Lasten tragen.

Ich singe, wie der Vogel singt,
Der in den Zweigen[14] wohnet;
Das Lied, das aus der Kehle[15] dringt,[16]
Ist Lohn, der reichlich lohnet.
Doch darf ich bitten,[17] bitt' ich eins:
Laßt mir den besten Becher[18] Weins
In purem Golde reichen.

Er setzt'[19] ihn an, er trank[20] ihn aus;
O Trank[21] voll süßer Labe[22]!

O wohl dem hochbeglückten Haus,
Wo das ist kleine Gabe!
Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich,
Und danket Gott so warm, als ich
Für diesen Trunk[21] euch danke."

Göthe.

1. Die Brücke, the bridge; 2. the page; 3. Gegrüßet seid mir, I salute you; 4. die Pracht, pomp, splendor; 5. schließen, eindrücken, to close; 6. ergötzen, to gratify, to feast; 7. schlagen, to strike (ein Instrument anschlagen, to touch an instrument); 8. der Ritter, knight; 9. schauen, to look; 10. der Schooß, the lap; 11. das kühne Angesicht, the bold countenance; 12. to shiver; 13. burden; 14. der Zweig, the bough, branch; 15. die Kehle, the throat; 16. aus der Kehle dringen, to flow, *or* burst forth from the breast; 17. supply, um einen Gefallen, a boon; 18. der Becher, the goblet; 19. ansetzen (*sep.*), to put to one's lips; 20. austrinken, to drain, to empty; 21. der Trank, der Trunk, the drink; 22. die Labe, refreshment.

20. Die Worte des Glaubens.[1]

Drei Worte nenn' ich euch, inhaltschwer,[2]
  Sie gehen von Munde zu Munde,
Doch stammen[11] sie nicht von außen her;
  Das Herz nur gibt[3] davon Kunde.[3]
Dem Menschen ist aller Werth geraubt,
Wenn er nicht mehr an die drei Worte glaubt.

Der Mensch ist frei geschaffen, ist frei,
  Und würd' er in Ketten geboren.
Laßt euch nicht irren des Pöbels Geschrei,
  Nicht den Mißbrauch rasender Thoren!
Vor dem Sklaven, wenn er die Kette bricht,
Vor dem freien Menschen erzittert[4] nicht!

Und die Tugend, sie ist kein leerer Schall,
  Der Mensch kann sie üben[5] im Leben;
Und sollt' er auch straucheln[6] überall,
  Er kann nach der göttlichen streben;
Und was kein Verstand der Verständigen sieht,
Das übet in Einfalt[7] ein kindlich Gemüth.

Und ein Gott ist, ein heiliger Wille lebt,
Wie auch der menschliche wanke,[8]
Hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume[9] webt
Lebendig der höchste Gedanke;
Und ob Alles in ewigem Wechsel kreist,[10]
Es beharret im Wechsel ein ruhiger Geist.

Die drei Worte bewahret euch, inhaltschwer,
Sie pflanzet von Munde zu Munde;
Und stammen[11] sie gleich nicht von außen her,
Euer Innres gibt davon Kunde.
Dem Menschen ist nimmer sein Werth geraubt
So lang er noch an die drei Worte glaubt.

Schiller.

1. Der Glaube, faith; 2. inhaltschwer, deeply significant; 3. Kunde geben, to bear witness of; 4. erzittern, to tremble; 5. üben, to practise; 6. straucheln, to stumble; 7. die Einfalt, simplicity; 8. wanken, to waver, fluctuate; 9. der Raum, space; 10. kreisen, to whirl around (And though all things whirl around in perpetual change); 11. herstammen (*sep.*), to originate, to arise, *or* proceed from.

21. Der Handschuh.[1]

Erzählung.

Vor seinem Löwengarten,
Das Kampfspiel[2] zu erwarten,
Saß König Franz,
Und um ihn die Großen[3] der Krone,
Und rings auf hohem Balcone[4]
Die Damen in schönem Kranz.[5]

Und wie er winkt mit dem Finger
Auf thut sich der weite Zwinger,[6]
Und hinein mit bedächtigem[7] Schritt
Ein Löwe tritt
Und sieht sich stumm
Rings um
Mit langem Gähnen[8]
Und schüttelt[9] die Mähnen
Und streckt die Glieder
Und legt sich nieder.

Und der König winkt wieder —
Da öffnet sich behend
Ein zweites Thor,
Daraus rennt
Mit wildem Sprunge[10]
Ein Tiger hervor.
Wie der den Löwen erschaut,
Brüllt er laut,
Schlägt mit dem Schweif
Einen furchtbaren Reif[11]
Und recket[12] die Zunge
Und im Kreise scheu
Umgeht er den Leu,
Grimmig[13] schnurrend[14];
Drauf streckt er sich murrend[15]
Zur Seite nieder.

Und der König winkt wieder —
Da speit[16] das doppelt geöffnete Haus
Zwei Leoparden auf Einmal aus.
Die stürzen[17] mit muthiger Kampfbegier
Auf das Tigerthier;
Das packt[18] sie mit seinen grimmigen[19] Tatzen,[20]
Und der Leu mit Gebrüll[21]
Richtet sich auf, da wird's still;
Und herum im Kreis,
Von Mordsucht[22] heiß,
Lagern sich die gräulichen Katzen.

Da fällt von des Altans Rand
Ein Handschuh von schöner Hand
Zwischen den Tiger und den Leun
Mitten hinein.

Und zu Ritter Delorges, spottender Weis',[23]
Wendet sich Fräulein Kunigund:
„Herr Ritter, ist Eure Lieb' so heiß,
Wie Ihr mir's schwört zu jeder Stund',
Ei, so hebt mir den Handschuh auf!"

Und der Ritter, in schnellem Lauf,
Steigt hinab in den furchtbar'n Zwinger
Mit festem[24] Schritte,
Und aus der Ungeheuer[25] Mitte
Nimmt er den Handschuh mit keckem[26] Finger.

Und mit Erstaunen und mit Grauen[27]
Sehen's die Ritter und Edelfrauen,
Und gelassen[28] bringt er den Handschuh zurück
Da schallt ihm sein Lob aus jedem Munde,
Aber mit zärtlichem Liebesblick[29] —
Er verheißt[30] ihm sein nahes Glück —
Empfängt ihn Fräulein Kunigunde.
Und er wirft ihr den Handschuh ins Gesicht:
„Den Dank,[31] Dame, begehr'[31] ich nicht!"
Und verläßt sie zur selben Stunde.

Schiller.

1. The glove; 2. the combat; 3. the nobles; 4. der Balcon, balcony; 5. der Kranz, circle; 6. the cage; 7. bedächtig, measured, stately; 8. das Gähnen, yawning; 9. schütteln, to shake; 10. der Sprung, spring, leap; 11. der Reif, the hoop (mit dem Schweif einen Reif schlagen, to sweep a ring with his tail); 12. recken, to protrude; 13. fiercely; 14. growling; 15. grumbling; 16. ausspeien (*sep.*), to emit, send forth; 17. to rush; 18. packen, to seize; 19. grimmig, rough, cruel; 20. die Tatze, the paw; 21. das Gebrüll, (a) roar; 22. die Mordsucht, thirst for blood; 23. spottender Weise, in a tone of derision; 24. fest, firm; 25. das Ungeheuer, monster 26. keck, bold; 27. das Grauen, horror; 28. calmly, with composure; 29 mit zärtlichem Liebesblick, with tender looks of love; 30. verheißen, to betoken; 31. den Dank — nicht, spare your thanks, madam.

22. Schiller's Wilhelm Tell.

Third Act, first and third Scene.

Dritter Aufzug.

Erste Scene.

Hof vor Tells Hause.

Tell ist mit der Zimmeraxt, Hedwig mit einer häuslichen Arbeit beschäftigt. Walther und Wilhelm in der Tiefe spielen mit einer kleinen Armbrust.

Walther (singt).

Mit dem Pfeil, dem Bogen,
Durch Gebirg' und Thal

Kommt der Schütz gezogen
Früh' am Morgenstrahl.

Wie im Reich der Lüfte
König ist der Weih —
Durch Gebirg' und Klüfte
Herrscht der Schütze frei.

Ihm gehört des Weite:
Was sein Pfeil erreicht,
Das ist seine Beute,
Was da kreucht und fleugt.

(Kommt gesprungen.)

Der Strang ist mir entzwei. Mach mir ihn, Vater

Tell.

Ich nicht. Ein rechter Schütze hilft sich selbst.

(Knaben entfernen sich.)

Hedwig.

Die Knaben fangen zeitig an zu schießen.

Tell.

Früh' übt sich, was ein Meister werden will.

Hedwig.

Ach, wollte Gott, sie lernten's nie!

Tell.

Sie sollen Alles lernen. Wer durchs Leben
Sich frisch will schlagen, muß zu Schutz und Trutz
Gerüstet sein.

Hedwig.

Ach, es wird keiner seine Ruh
Zu Hause finden.

Tell.

Mutter, ich kann's auch nicht!
Zum Hirten hat Natur mich nicht gebildet;
Rastlos muß ich ein flüchtig Ziel verfolgen.
Dann erst genieß' ich meines Lebens recht,
Wenn ich mir's jeden Tag aufs Neu' erbeute.

Hedwig.

Und an die Angst der Hausfrau denkst du nicht,

Die sich indessen, deiner wartend, härmt.
Denn mich erfüllt's mit Grausen, was die Knechte
Von euren Wagefahrten sich erzählen.
Bei jedem Abschied zittert mir das Herz,
Daß du mir nimmer werdest wiederkehren.
Ich sehe dich, im wilden Eisgebirg
Verirrt, von einer Klippe zu der andern
Den Fehlsprung thun, seh, wie die Gemse dich
Rückspringend mit sich in den Abgrund reißt,
Wie eine Windlawine dich verschüttet,
Wie unter dir der trügerische Firn
Einbricht, und du hinabsinkst, ein lebendig
Begrabner, in die schauerliche Gruft —
Ach, den verwegnen Alpenjäger hascht
Der Tod in hundert wechselnden Gestalten!
Das ist ein unglückseliges Gewerb,
Das halsgefährlich führt am Abgrund' hin!

Tell.

Wer frisch umherspäht mit gesunden Sinnen,
Auf Gott vertraut und die gelenke Kraft,
Der ringt sich leicht aus jeder Fahr und Noth:
Den schreckt der Berg nicht, wer darauf geboren.

(Er hat seine Arbeit vollendet, legt das Geräth hinweg.)

Jetzt, mein' ich, hält das Thor auf Jahr und Tag.
Die Axt im Haus' erspart den Zimmermann.

(Nimmt den Hut.)

Hedwig.

Wo gehst du hin?

Tell.

Nach Altorf, zu dem Vater.

Hedwig.

Sinnst du auch nichts Gefährliches? Gesteh mir's!

Tell.

Wie kommst du darauf, Frau?

Hedwig.

Es spinnt sich etwas
Gegen die Vögte — Auf dem Rütli ward
Getagt, ich weiß, und du bist auch im Bunde.

Tell.

Ich war nicht mit dabei — doch werd' ich mich
Dem Lande nicht entziehen, wenn es ruft.

Hedwig.

Sie werden dich hinstellen, wo Gefahr ist;
Das Schwerste wird dein Antheil sein, wie immer.

Tell.

Ein Jeder wird besteuert nach Vermögen.

Hedwig.

Den Unterwaldner hast du auch im Sturme
Ueber den See geschafft — Ein Wunder war's,
Daß ihr entkommen — Dachtest du denn gar nicht
An Kind und Weib?

Tell.

Lieb Weib, ich dacht' an euch:
Drum rettet' ich den Vater seinen Kindern.

Hedwig.

Zu schiffen in dem wüth'gen See! Das heißt
Nicht Gott vertrauen; Das heißt Gott versuchen!

Tell.

Wer gar zu viel bedenkt, wird wenig leisten.

Hedwig.

Ja, du bist gut und hülfreich, dienest Allen,
Und, wenn du selbst in Noth kommst, hilft dir Keiner.

Tell.

Verhüt' es Gott, daß ich nicht Hülfe brauche!

(Er nimmt die Armbrust und Pfeile.)

Hedwig.

Was willst du mit der Armbrust? Laß sie hier!

Tell.

Mir fehlt der Arm, wenn mir die Waffe fehlt.

(Die Knaben kommen zurück.)

Walther.

Vater, wo gehst du hin?

Tell.

Nach Altorf, Knabe,
Zum Ehni — Willst du mit?

Walther.

Ja, freilich will ich.

Hedwig.

Der Landvogt ist jetzt dort. Bleib weg von Altorf.

Tell.

Er geht, noch heute.

Hedwig.

Drum lass' ihn erst fort sein.
Gemahn' ihn nicht an dich, du weißt, er grollt uns.

Tell.

Mir soll sein böser Wille nicht viel schaden.
Ich thue recht und scheue keinen Feind.

Hedwig.

Die recht thun, eben Die haßt er am Meisten.

Tell.

Weil er nicht an sie kommen kann — Mich wird
Der Ritter wohl in Frieden lassen, mein' ich.

Hedwig.

So, weißt du Das?

Tell.

Es ist nicht lange her,
Da ging ich jagen durch die wilden Gründe
Des Schächenthals auf menschenleerer Spur,
Und, da ich einsam einen Felsensteig
Verfolgte, wo nicht auszuweichen war, —
Denn über mir hing schroff die Felswand her,
Und unten rauschte fürchterlich der Schächen, —

(Die Knaben drängen sich rechts und links an ihn und sehen mit gespannter Neugier an ihm hinauf.)

Da kam der Landvogt gegen mich daher,
Er ganz allein mit mir, der auch allein war,
Bloß Mensch zu Mensch, und neben uns der Abgrund.
Und, als der Herre mein ansichtig ward
Und mich erkannte, den er kurz zuvor
Um kleiner Ursach willen schwer gebüßt,
Und sah mich mit dem stattlichen Gewehr
Dahergeschritten kommen, da verblaßt' er,
Die Kniee versagten ihm, ich sah es kommen,
Daß er jetzt an die Felswand würde sinken.

— Da jammerte mich sein, ich trat zu ihm
Bescheidentlich und sprach: Ich bin's, Herr Landvogt.
Er aber konnte keinen andern Laut
Aus seinem Munde geben — Mit der Hand nur
Winkt' er mir schweigend, meines Wegs zu gehn:
Da ging ich fort und sandt' ihm sein Gefolge.

Hedwig.

Er hat vor dir gezittert — Wehe dir!
Daß du ihn schwach gesehn, vergibt er nie.

Tell.

Drum meid ich ihn, und er wird mich nicht suchen.

Hedwig.

Bleib' heute nur dort weg! Geh lieber jagen!

Tell.

Was fällt dir ein?

Hedwig.

Mich ängstigt's. Bleibe weg.

Tell.

Wie kannst du dich so ohne Ursach quälen?

Hedwig.

Weil's keine Ursach hat — Tell, bleibe hier!

Tell.

Ich hab's versprochen, liebes Weib, zu kommen.

Hedwig.

Mußt du, so geh — nur lasse mir den Knaben!

Walther.

Nein, Mütterchen. Ich gehe mit dem Vater.

Hedwig.

Wälty, verlassen willst du deine Mutter?

Walther.

Ich bring dir auch was Hübsches mit vom Ehnt.

(Geht mit dem Vater.)

Wilhelm.

Mutter, ich bleibe bei dir!

Hedwig (umarmt ihn).

Ja, du bist
Mein liebes Kind: du bleibst mir noch allein!

(Sie geht an das Hofthor und folgt den Abgehenden lange mit den Augen.)

Dritte Scene.

Wiese bei Altorf.

Im Vordergrund Bäume, in der Tiefe der Hut auf einer Stange. Der Prospect wird begränzt durch den Bannberg, über welchem ein Schneegebirge emporragt.

Frießhardt und Leuthold halten Wache.

Frießhardt.

Wir passen auf umsonst. Es will sich Niemand
Heran begeben und dem Hut sein Reverenz
Erzeigen. 's war doch sonst wie Jahrmarkt hier;
Jetzt ist der ganze Anger wie verödet,
Seitdem der Popanz auf der Stange hängt.

Leuthold.

Nur schlecht Gesindel läßt sich sehn und schwingt
Uns zum Verdrieße die zerlumpten Mützen.
Was rechte Leute sind, die machen lieber
Den langen Umweg um den halben Flecken,
Eh' sie den Rücken beugten vor dem Hut.

Frießhardt.

Sie müssen über diesen Platz, wenn sie
Vom Rathhaus kommen um die Mittagsstunde.
Da meint' ich schon, 'nen guten Fang zu thun,
Denn Keiner dachte dran, den Hut zu grüßen.
Da sieht's der Pfaff, der Rösselmann — kam just
Von einem Kranken her — und stellt sich hin
Mit dem Hochwürdigen, grad vor die Stange —
Der Sigrist mußte mit dem Glöcklein schellen:
Da fielen All' aufs Knie, ich selber mit,
Und grüßten die Monstranz, doch nicht den Hut. —

Leuthold.

Höre, Gesell, es fängt mir an zu däuchten,
Wir stehen hier am Pranger vor dem Hut;
's ist doch ein Schimpf für einen Reitersmann,
Schildwach zu stehen vor einem leeren Hut' —
Und jeder rechte Kerl muß uns verachten.
— Die Reverenz zu machen einem Hut',
Es ist doch, traun, ein närrischer Befehl!

Frießhardt.

Warum nicht einem leeren, hohlen Hut?
Bückst du dich doch vor manchen hohlen Schädel.

Hildegard, Mechthild und Elsbeth treten auf mit Kindern und stellen sich um die Stange.

Leuthold.

Und du bist auch so ein dienstfert'ger Schurke
Und brächtest wackre Leute gern ins Unglück.
Mag, wer da will, am Hut vorübergehn;
Ich drück die Augen zu und seh nicht hin.

Mechthild.

Da hängt der Landvogt — habt Respect, ihr Buben!

Elsbeth.

Wollt's Gott, er ging' und ließ' uns seinen Hut:
Es sollte drum nicht schlechter stehn ums Land!

Frießhardt (verscheucht sie).

Wollt ihr vom Platz! Verwünschtes Volk der Weiber!
Wer fragt nach euch! Schickt eure Männer her,
Wenn sie der Muth sticht, dem Befehl zu trotzen.

(Weiber gehen.)

Tell mit der Armbrust tritt auf, den Knaben an der Hand führend; sie gehen an dem Hut vorbei gegen die vordere Scene, ohne darauf zu achten.

Walther (zeigt nach dem Bannberg).

Vater, ist's wahr, daß auf dem Berge dort
Die Bäume bluten, wenn man einen Streich
Drauf führte mit der Axt?

Tell.

Wer sagt Das, Knabe?

Walther.

Der Meister Hirt' erzählt's. — Die Bäume seien

Gebannt, sagt er, und, wer sie schädige,
Dem wachse seine Hand heraus zum Grabe.

Tell.

Die Bäume sind gebannt, Das ist die Wahrheit.
— Siehst du die Firnen dort, die weißen Hörner,
Die hoch bis in den Himmel sich verlieren?

Walther.

Das sind die Gletscher, die des Nachts so donnern
Und uns die Schlaglawinen niedersenden.

Tell.

So ist's, und die Lawinen hätten längst
Den Flecken Altorf unter ihrer Last
Verschüttet, wenn der Wald dort oben nicht
Als eine Landwehr sich dagegen stellte.

Walther (nach einigem Besinnen).

Gibt's Länder, Vater, wo nicht Berge sind?

Tell.

Wenn man hinunter steigt von unsern Höhen
Und immer tiefer steigt, den Strömen nach,
Gelangt man in ein großes, ebnes Land,
Wo die Waldwasser nicht mehr brausend schäumen,
Die Flüsse ruhig und gemächlich ziehn;
Da sieht man frei nach allen Himmelsräumen.
Das Korn wächst dort in langen schönen Auen,
Und wie ein Garten ist das Land zu schauen.

Walther.

Ei, Vater, warum steigen wir denn nicht
Geschwind hinab in dieses schöne Land,
Statt daß wir uns hier ängstigen und plagen?

Tell.

Das Land ist schön und gütig, wie der Himmel;
Doch, die's bebauen, sie genießen nicht
Den Segen, den sie pflanzen.

Walther

Wohnen sie
Nicht frei, wie du, auf ihrem eignen Erbe?

Tell.

Das Feld gehört dem Bischof und dem König.

Walther.

So dürfen sie doch frei in Wäldern jagen?

Tell.

Dem Herrn gehört das Wild und das Gefieder.

Walther.

Sie dürfen doch frei fischen in dem Strom?

Tell.

Der Strom, das Meer, das Salz gehört dem König.

Walther.

Wer ist der König denn, den Alle fürchten?

Tell.

Es ist der Eine, der sie schützt und nährt.

Walther.

Sie können sich nicht muthig selbst beschützen?

Tell.

Dort darf der Nachbar nicht dem Nachbar trauen.

Walther.

Vater, es wird mir eng' im weiten Land:
Da wohn' ich lieber unter den Lawinen.

Tell.

Ja, wohl ist's besser Kind, die Gletscherberge
Im Rücken haben, als die bösen Menschen.

(Sie wollen vorüber gehen.)

Walther.

Ei, Vater, sieh' den Hut dort auf der Stange!

Tell.

Was kümmert uns der Hut! Komm, lass' uns gehen.

(Indem er abgehen will, tritt ihm Frießhardt mit vorgehaltener Pike entgegen.)

Frießhardt.

In des Kaisers Namen! Haltet an und steht!

Tell (greift in die Pike).

Was wollt Ihr? Warum haltet Ihr mich auf?

Frießhardt.

Ihr habt's Mandat verletzt: Ihr müßt uns folgen.

Leuthold.

Ihr habt dem Hut nicht Reverenz bewiesen.

Tell.

Freund, laßt mich gehen!

Frießhardt.

Fort, fort ins Gefängniß!

Walther.

Den Vater ins Gefängniß! Hülfe! Hülfe!

(In die Scene rufend.)

Herbei, ihr Männer, gute Leute, helft!
Gewalt! Gewalt! Sie führen ihn gefangen.

Rösselmann, der Pfarrer, und Petermann, der Sigrist, kommen herbei mit drei andern Männern.

Sigrist.

Was gibt's?

Rösselmann.

Was legst du Hand an diesen Mann?

Frießhardt.

Er ist ein Feind des Kaisers, ein Verräther!

Tell (faßt ihn heftig).

Ein Verräther, ich!

Rösselmann.

Du irrst dich, Freund. Das ist
Der Tell, ein Ehrenmann und guter Bürger.

Walther

(erblickt Walther Fürsten und eilt ihm entgegen).

Großvater, hilf! Gewalt geschieht dem Vater.

Frießhardt.

Ins Gefängniß, fort!

Walther Fürst (herbeieilend).

Ich leiste Bürgschaft, haltet!
— Um Gottes willen, Tell, was ist geschehen?

Melchthal und Stauffacher kommen.

Frießhardt.

Des Landvogts oberherrliche Gewalt
Verachtet er und will sie nicht erkennen.

Stauffacher.

Das hätt' der Tell gethan?

Melchthal.

Das lügst du, Bube!

Leuthold.

Er hat dem Hut nicht Reverenz bewiesen.

Walther Fürst.

Und darum soll er ins Gefängniß? Freund,
Nimm meine Bürgschaft an und lass' ihn ledig.

Frießhardt.

Bürg' du für dich und deinen eignen Leib!
Wir thun, was unsers Amtes — Fort mit ihm!

Melchthal (zu den Landleuten).

Nein, das ist schreiende Gewalt! Ertragen wir's,
Das man ihn wegführt, frech, vor unsern Augen?

Sigrist.

Wir sind die Stärkern. Freunde, duldet's nicht!
Wir haben einen Rücken an den Andern.

Frießhardt.

Wer widersetzt sich dem Befehl des Vogts?

Noch drei Landleute (herbeieilend).

Wir helfen euch. Was gibt's? Schlagt sie zu Boden.

(Hildegard, Mechthild und Elsbeth kommen zurück.)

Tell.

Ich helfe mir schon selbst. Geht, gute Leute!
Meint ihr, wenn ich die Kraft gebrauchen wollte,
Ich würde mich vor ihren Spießen fürchten?

Melchthal (zu Frießhardt).

Wag's, ihn aus unsrer Mitte wegzuführen!

Walther Fürst und Stauffacher.

Gelassen! ruhig!

Frießhardt (schreit).

Aufruhr und Empörung?

(Man hört Jagdhörner.)

Weiber.

Da kommt der Landvogt!

Frießhardt (erhebt die Stimme).

Meuterei! Empörung!

Stauffacher.

Schrei, daß du bersteſt, Schurke!

Rösselmann und Melchthal.

Willſt du ſchweigen?

Frießhardt (ruft noch lauter).

Zu Hülf', zu Hülf' den Dienern des Geſetzes!

Walther Fürſt.

Da iſt der Vogt! Weh' uns, was wird das werden!

Geßler zu Pferd, den Falken auf der Fauſt, Rudolph der Harras, Bertha und Rudenz, ein großes Gefolge von bewaffneten Knechten, welche einen Kreis von Piken um die ganze Scene ſchließen.

Rudolph der Harras.

Platz, Platz dem Landvogt!

Geßler.

Treibt ſie aus einander!
Was läuft das Volk zuſammen? Wer ruft Hülfe?

(Allgemeine Stille.)

Wer war's? Ich will es wiſſen.

(Zu Frießhardt.)

Du trittſt vor!
Wer biſt du, und was hältſt du dieſen Mann?

(Er gibt den Falken einem Diener.)

Frießhardt.

Geſtrenger Herr, ich bin dein Waffenknecht
Und wohlbeſtellter Wächter bei dem Hut.
Dieſen Mann ergriff ich über friſcher That,
Wie er dem Hut den Ehrengruß verſagte.
Verhaften wollt' ich ihn, wie du befahlſt,
Und mit Gewalt will ihn das Volk entreißen.

Geßler (nach einer Pause).

Verachtest du so deinen Kaiser, Tell,
Und mich, der hier an seiner Statt gebietet,
Daß du die Ehr' versagst dem Hut, den ich
Zur Prüfung des Gehorsams aufgehangen?
Dein böses Trachten hast du mir verrathen.

Tell.

Verzeiht mir, lieber Herr! Aus Unbedacht,
Nicht aus Verachtung Euer ist's geschehn.
Wär' ich besonnen, hieß' ich nicht der Tell.
Ich bitt' um Gnad', es soll nicht mehr begegnen.

Geßler (nach einigem Stillschweigen).

Du bist ein Meister auf der Armbrust, Tell:
Man sagt, du nehmst es auf mit jedem Schützen?

Walther.

Und Das muß wahr sein, Herr: 'nen Apfel schießt
Der Vater dir vom Baum auf hundert Schritte.

Geßler.

Ist Das dein Knabe, Tell?

Tell.

Ja, lieber Herr.

Geßler.

Hast du der Kinder mehr?

Tell.

Zwei Knaben, Herr.

Geßler.

Und welcher ist's, den du am meisten liebst?

Tell.

Herr, beide sind mir gleich liebe Kinder.

Geßler.

Nun, Tell! weil du den Apfel triffst vom Baume
Auf hundert Schritt, so wirst du deine Kunst
Vor mir bewähren müssen — Nimm die Armbrust —
Du hast sie gleich zur Hand — und mach dich fertig,
Einen Apfel von des Knaben Kopf zu schießen —
Doch will ich rathen, ziele gut, daß du
Den Apfel treffest auf den ersten Schuß:
Denn, fehlst du ihn, so ist dein Kopf verloren.

(Alle geben Zeichen des Schreckens.)

Tell.

Herr — welches Ungeheure sinnet ihr
Mir an? — Ich soll vom Haupte meines Kindes —
— Nein, nein doch, lieber Herr, Das kommt Euch nicht
Zu Sinn — Verhüt's der gnäd'ge Gott — Das könnt Ihr
Im Ernst von einem Vater nicht begehren!

Geßler.

Du wirst den Apfel schießen von dem Kopf
Des Knaben — ich begehr's und will's.

Tell.

Ich soll
Mit meiner Armbrust auf das liebe Haupt
Des eignen Kindes zielen? — Eher sterb' ich!

Geßler.

Du schießest oder stirbst mit deinem Knaben.

Tell.

Ich soll der Mörder werden meines Kinds!
Herr, Ihr habt keine Kinder — wisset nicht,
Was sich bewegt in eines Vaters Herzen.

Geßler.

Ei, Tell, du bist ja plötzlich so besonnen!
Man sagte mir, daß du ein Träumer seist
Und dich entfernst von andrer Menschen Weise.
Du liebst das Seltsame — drum hab' ich jetzt
Ein eigen Wagstück für dich ausgesucht.
Ein Andrer wohl bedächte sich — du drückst
Die Augen zu und greifst es herzhaft an.

Bertha.

Scherzt nicht, o Herr, mit diesen armen Leuten!
Ihr seht sie bleich und zitternd stehn — So wenig
Sind sie Kurzweils gewohnt aus Eurem Munde.

Geßler

Wer sagt Euch, daß ich scherze?

(Greift nach einem Baumzweige, der über ihn herhängt.)

Hier ist der Apfel.
Man mache Raum — er nehme seine Weite,
Wie's Brauch ist — achtzig Schritte geb' ich ihm —
Nicht weniger, noch mehr — Er rühmte sich,

Auf ihrer hundert seinen Mann zu treffen —
Jetzt, Schütze, triff und fehle nicht das Ziel!

Rudolph der Harras.

Gott, Das wird ernsthaft — Falle nieder, Knabe,
Es gilt — und fleh' den Landvogt um dein Leben!

Walther Fürst

(bei Seite zu Melchthal, der kaum seine Ungeduld bezwingt.)

Haltet an Euch! ich fleh' Euch drum, bleibt ruhig!

Bertha (zum Landvogt)

Laßt es genug sein, Herr! Unmenschlich ist's,
Mit eines Vaters Angst also zu spielen.
Wenn dieser arme Mann auch Leib und Leben
Verwirkt durch seine leichte Schuld, bei Gott.
Er hätte jetzt zehnfachen Tod empfunden.
Entlaßt ihn ungekränkt in seine Hütte:
Er hat Euch kennen lernen; dieser Stunde
Wird er und seine Kindeskinder denken.

Geßler.

Oeffnet die Gasse — Frisch! was zauderst du?
Dein Leben ist verwirkt: ich kann dich tödten,
Und, sieh', ich lege gnädig dein Geschick
In deine eigne kunstgeübte Hand.
Der kann nicht klagen über harten Spruch,
Den man zum Meister seines Schicksals macht.
Du rühmst dich deines sichern Blicks. Wohlan!
Hier gilt es, Schütze, deine Kunst zu zeigen:
Das Ziel ist würdig, und der Preis ist groß!
Das Schwarze treffen in der Scheibe, Das
Kann auch ein Andrer; Der ist mir der Meister,
Der seiner Kunst gewiß ist überall,
Dem's Herz nicht in die Hand tritt, noch ins Auge.

Walther Fürst (wirft sich vor ihm nieder)

Herr Landvogt, wir erkennen Eure Hoheit;
Doch lasset Gnad' für Recht ergehn, nehmt
Die Hälfte meiner Habe, nehmt sie ganz!
Nur dieses Gräßliche erlasset einem Vater!

Walther Tell.

Großvater, knie nicht vor dem falschen Mann!
Sagt, wo ich hinstehn soll. Ich fürcht mich nicht.

Der Vater trifft den Vogel im Flug':
Er wird nicht fehlen auf das Herz des Kindes.

Stauffacher.

Herr Landvogt, rührt Euch nicht des Kindes Unschuld?

Rösselmann.

O, denket, daß ein Gott im Himmel ist,
Dem Ihr müßt Rede stehn für Eure Thaten.

Geßler (zeigt auf den Knaben).

Man bind' ihn an die Linde dort!

Walther Tell.

Mich binden!
Nein, ich will nicht gebunden sein. Ich will
Still halten, wie ein Lamm, auch nicht athmen.
Wenn ihr mich bindet, nein, so kann ich's nicht,
So werd' ich toben gegen meine Bande.

Rudolph der Harras.

Die Augen nur laß dir verbinden, Knabe!

Walther Tell.

Warum die Augen? Denket Ihr, ich fürchte
Den Pfeil von Vaters Hand? Ich will ihn fest
Erwarten und nicht zucken mit den Wimpern.
— Frisch, Vater, zeig's, daß du ein Schütze bist!
Er glaubt dir's nicht, er denkt uns zu verderben —
Dem Wüthrich zum Verdrusse schieß' und triff!

(Er geht an die Linde, man legt ihm den Apfel auf.)

Melchthal (zu den Landleuten).

Was? Soll der Frevel sich vor unsern Augen
Vollenden? Wozu haben wir geschworen?

Stauffacher.

Es ist umsonst. Wir haben keine Waffen;
Ihr seht den Wald von Lanzen um uns her.

Melchthal.

O, hätten wir's mit frischer That vollendet!
Verzeih's Gott Denen, die zum Aufschub riethen!

Geßler (zu Tell).

Ans Werk! Man führt die Waffen nicht vergebens.

Gefährlich ist's, ein Mordgewehr zu tragen,
Und auf den Schützen springt der Pfeil zurück.
Dies stolze Recht, das sich der Bauer nimmt,
Beleidiget den höchsten Herrn des Landes.
Gewaffnet sei Niemand, als wer gebietet.
Freut' Euch, den Pfeil zu führen und den Bogen,
Wohl, so will ich das Ziel Euch dazu geben.

Tell

(spannt die Armbrust und legt den Pfeil auf).

Oeffnet die Gasse! Platz!

Stauffacher.

Was, Tell? Ihr wolltet — Nimmermehr — Ihr zittert,
Die Hand erbebt Euch, Eure Kniee wanken —

Tell (läßt die Armbrust sinken).

Mir schwimmt es vor den Augen!

Weiber.

Gott im Himmel!

Tell (zum Landvogt).

Erlasset mir den Schuß. Hier ist mein Herz!

(Er reißt die Brust auf.)

Ruft Eure Reisigen und stoßt mich nieder!

Geßler.

Ich will dein Leben nicht, ich will den Schuß.
— Du kannst ja Alles, Tell! An nichts verzagst du;
Das Steuerruder führst du wie den Bogen;
Dich schreckt kein Sturm, wenn es zu retten gilt:
Jetzt, Retter, hilf dir selbst — du rettest Alle!

(Tell steht in fürchterlichem Kampf, mit den Händen zuckend und die rollenden Augen bald auf den Landvogt, bald zum Himmel gerichtet. — Plötzlich greift er in seinen Köcher, nimmt einen zweiten Pfeil heraus und steckt ihn in seinen Koller. Der Landvogt bemerkt alle diese Bewegungen.)

Walther Tell (unter der Linde).

Vater, schieß zu! Ich fürcht' mich nicht.

Tell.

Es muß!

(Er rafft sich zusammen und legt an.)

Rudenz

(der die ganze Zeit über in der heftigsten Spannung gestanden und mit Gewalt an sich gehalten, tritt hervor).

Herr Landvogt, weiter werdet Ihr's nicht treiben,
Ihr werdet nicht — Es war nur eine Prüfung —
Den Zweck habt Ihr erreicht — Zu weit getrieben,
Verfehlt die Strenge ihres weisen Zwecks,
Und, allzustraff gespannt, zerspringt der Bogen.

Geßler.

Ihr schweigt, bis man Euch aufruft.

Rudenz.

Ich will reden!
Ich darf's! Des Königs Ehre ist mir heilig;
Doch solches Regiment muß Haß erwerben.
Das ist des Königs Wille nicht — ich darf's
Behaupten — Solche Grausamkeit verdient
Mein Volk nicht; dazu habt Ihr keine Vollmacht.

Geßler.

Ha, Ihr erkühnt Euch!

Rudenz.

Ich hab still geschwiegen
Zu allen schweren Thaten, die ich sah;
Mein sehend Auge hab' ich zugeschlossen,
Mein überschwellend und empörtes Herz
Hab' ich hinabgedrückt in meinen Busen.
Doch länger schweigen wär' Verrath zugleich
An meinem Vaterland' und an dem Kaiser.

Bertha

(wirft sich zwischen ihn und den Landvogt).

O Gott, Ihr reizt den Wüthenden noch mehr.

Rudenz.

Mein Volk verließ ich, meinen Blutsverwandten
Entsagt' ich, alle Bande der Natur
Zerriß ich, um an Euch mich anzuschließen —
Das Beste Aller glaubt' ich zu befördern,
Da ich des Kaisers Macht befestigte —
Die Binde fällt von meinen Augen — Schaudernd
Seh' ich an einen Abgrund mich geführt —
Mein freies Urtheil habt Ihr irr' geleitet,

Mein redlich Herz verführt — Ich war daran,
Mein Volk in bester Meinung zu verderben.

Geßler.

Verwegner, diese Sprache deinem Herrn?

Rudenz.

Der Kaiser ist mein Herr, nicht Ihr — Frei bin ich
Wie Ihr geboren, und ich messe mich
Mit Euch in jeder ritterlichen Tugend.
Und ständet Ihr nicht hier in Kaisers Namen,
Den ich verehre, selbst, wo man ihn schändet,
Den Handschuh wärf' ich vor Euch hin, Ihr solltet
Nach ritterlichem Brauch mir Antwort geben.
— Ja, winkt nur Euren Reisigen — Ich stehe
Nicht wehrlos da, wie Die —

(Auf das Volk zeigend.)

Ich hab' ein Schwert,
Und, wer mir naht —

Stauffacher (ruft).

Der Apfel ist gefallen!

(Indem sich Alle nach dieser Seite gewendet, und Bertha zwischen Rudenz und den Landvogt sich geworfen, hat Tell den Pfeil abgedrückt.)

Rösselmann.

Der Knabe lebt!

Viele Stimmen.

Der Apfel ist getroffen!

(Walther Fürst schwankt und droht zu sinken, Bertha hält ihn.)

Geßler (erstaunt).

Er hat geschossen? Wie? Der Rasende!

Bertha.

Der Knabe lebt! Kommt zu Euch, guter Vater!

Walther Tell

(kommt mit dem Apfel gesprungen).

Vater, hier ist der Apfel — Wußt' ich's ja,
Du würdest deinen Knaben nicht verletzen.

Tell

(stand mit vorgebogenem Leib, als wollt' er dem Pfeil folgen — die Armbrust entsinkt seiner Hand — wie er den Knaben kommen sieht,

eilt er ihm mit ausgebreiteten Armen entgegen und hebt ihn mit heftiger Inbrunst zu seinem Herzen hinauf; in dieser Stellung sinkt er kraftlos zusammen. Alle stehen gerührt).

Bertha.

O güt'ger Himmel!

Walther Fürst (zu Vater und Sohn).

Kinder! meine Kinder!

Stauffacher.

Gott sei gelobt!

Leuthold.

Das war ein Schuß! Davon
Wird man noch reden in den spät'sten Zeiten.

Rudolph der Harras.

Erzählen wird man von dem Schützen Tell,
Solang die Berge stehn auf ihrem Grunde.

(Reicht dem Landvogt den Apfel.)

Geßler.

Bei Gott, der Apfel mitten durch geschossen!
Es war ein Meisterschuß, ich muß ihn loben.

Rösselmann.

Der Schuß war gut; doch wehe Dem, der ihn
Dazu getrieben, daß er Gott versuchte.

Stauffacher.

Kommt zu Euch, Tell, steht auf, Ihr habt Euch männlich
Gelöst, und frei könnt Ihr nach Hause gehen.

Rösselmann.

Kommt, kommt und bringt der Mutter ihren Sohn!

(Sie wollen ihn wegführen.)

Geßler.

Tell, höre!

Tell (kommt zurück).

Was befehlt Ihr, Herr!

Geßler.

Du stecktest
Noch einen zweiten Pfeil zu dir — Ja, ja,
Ich sah es wohl — Was meintest du damit?

Tell (verlegen).

Herr, Das ist also bräuchlich bei den Schützen.

Geßler.

Nein, Tell, die Antwort lass' ich dir nicht gelten:
Es wird was Anders wohl bedeutet haben.
Sag mir die Wahrheit frisch und fröhlich, Tell!
Was es auch sei, dein Leben sichr' ich dir.
Wozu der zweite Pfeil?

Tell.

Wohlan, o Herr,
Weil Ihr mich meines Lebens habt gesichert,
So will ich Euch die Wahrheit gründlich sagen.

(Er zieht den Pfeil aus dem Koller und sieht den Landvogt mit einem furchtbaren Blick an.)

Mit diesem zweiten Pfeil durchschoß ich — Euch,
Wenn ich mein liebes Kind getroffen hätte.
Und Euer — wahrlich hätt' ich nicht gefehlt.

Geßler.

Wohl, Tell! Des Lebens hab' ich dich gesichert —
Ich gab mein Ritterwort, das will ich halten —
Doch, weil ich deinen bösen Sinn erkannt,
Will ich dich führen lassen und verwahren
Wo weder Mond noch Sonne dich bescheint,
Damit ich sicher sei vor deinen Pfeilen.
Ergreift ihn, Knechte! bindet ihn!

(Tell wird gebunden.)

Stauffacher.

Wie, Herr!
So könntet Ihr an einem Manne handeln,
An dem sich Gottes Hand sichtbar verkündigt?

Geßler.

Laß sehn, ob sie ihn zweimal retten wird.
— Man bring' ihn auf mein Schiff! Ich folge nach
Sogleich, ich selbst will ihn nach Küßnacht führen.

Rösselmann.

Das dürft Ihr nicht, Das darf der Kaiser nicht,
Das widerstreitet unsern Freiheitsbriefen!

Geßler.

Wo sind sie? Hat der Kaiser sie bestätigt?
Er hat sie nicht bestätigt — Diese Gunst
Muß erst erworben werden durch Gehorsam.
Rebellen seid ihr Alle gegen Kaisers
Gericht und nährt verwegne Empörung.
Ich kenn' euch Alle — ich durchschau' euch ganz —
Den nehm' ich jetzt heraus aus eurer Mitte;
Doch Alle seid ihr theilhaft seiner Schuld.
Wer klug ist, lerne schweigen und gehorchen!

(Er entfernt sich, Bertha, Rudenz, Harras und Knechte folgen, Frießhardt und Leuthold bleiben zurück.)

Walther Fürst (in heftigem Schmerz).

Es ist vorbei: er hat's beschlossen, mich
Mit meinem ganzen Hause zu verderben!

Stauffacher (zu Tell).

O, warum mußtet Ihr den Wüthrich reizen!

Tell.

Bezwinge sich, wer meinen Schmerz gefühlt!

Stauffacher.

O, nun ist Alles, Alles hin! Mit Euch
Sind wir gefesselt Alle und gebunden!

Landleute (umringen den Tell).

Mit Euch geht unser letzter Trost dahin!

Leuthold (nähert sich).

Tell, es erbarmt mich — Doch ich muß gehorchen.

Tell.

Lebt wohl!

Walther Tell

(sich mit heftigem Schmerz an ihn schmiegend).

O Vater! Vater! lieber Vater!

Tell

(hebt die Arme zum Himmel).

Dort droben ist dein Vater! Den ruf' an!

Stauffacher.

Tell, sag' ich Eurem Weibe nichts von Euch?

Tell

(hebt den Knaben mit Inbrunst an seine Brust).

Der Knab' ist unverletzt; mir wird Gott helfen.

(Reißt sich schnell los und folgt den Waffenknechten.)

---

23. Schiller, Die Jungfrau von Orleans.

Prologue — third and fourth scene.

Dritter Auftritt.

Bertrand tritt auf, einen Helm in der Hand. Thibaut. Raimond. Johanna.

Raimond.

Still! Da kommt Bertrand aus der Stadt zurück.
Sieh', was er trägt!

Bertrand.

Ihr staunt mich an, ihr seid
Verwundert ob des seltsamen Geräthes
In meiner Hand.

Thibaut.

Das sind wir. Saget an,
Wie kamt Ihr zu dem Helm, was bringt Ihr uns
Das böse Zeichen in die Friedensgegend?

(Johanna, welche in beiden vorigen Scenen still und ohne Antheil auf der Seite gestanden, wird aufmerksam und tritt näher.)

Bertrand.

Kaum weiß ich selbst zu sagen, wie das Ding
Mir in die Hand gerieth. Ich hatte eisernes
Geräth mir eingekauft zu Vaucouleurs;
Ein großes Drängen fand ich auf dem Markt,
Denn flücht'ges Volk war eben angelangt
Von Orleans mit böser Kriegespost.
Im Aufruhr lief die ganze Stadt zusammen,
Und als ich Bahn mir mache durchs Gewühl,
Da tritt ein braun Bohemerweib mich an
Mit diesem Helm, faßt mich ins Auge scharf
Und spricht: Gesell' Ihr suchet einen Helm,

Ich weiß, Ihr suchet einen. Da! Nehmt hin!
Um ein Geringes steht er Euch zu Kaufe.
— Geht zu den Lanzenknechten, sagt' ich ihr,
Ich bin ein Landmann, brauche nicht des Helmes.
Sie aber ließ nicht ab und sagte ferner:
Kein Mensch vermag zu sagen, ob er nicht
Des Helmes braucht. Ein stählern Dach fürs Haupt
Ist jetzo mehr werth, als ein steinern Haus.
So trieb sie mich durch alle Gassen, mir
Den Helm aufnöthigend, den ich nicht wollte.
Ich sah den Helm, daß er so blank und schön
Und würdig eines ritterlichen Haupts,
Und da ich zweifelnd in der Hand ihn wog,
Des Abenteuers Seltsamkeit bedenkend,
Da war das Weib mir aus den Augen, schnell
Hinweggerissen hatte sie der Strom
Des Volkes, und der Helm blieb mir in Händen.

Johanna (rasch und begierig darnach greifend).

Gebt mir den Helm!

Bertrand.

Was frommt euch dies Geräthe?
Das ist kein Schmuck für ein jungfräulich Haupt.

Johanna (entreißt ihm den Helm).

Mein ist der Helm, und mir gehört er zu.

Thibaut.

Was fällt dem Mädchen ein?

Raimond.

Laßt ihr den Willen!
Wohl ziemt ihr dieser kriegerische Schmuck,
Denn ihre Brust verschließt ein männlich Herz.
Denkt nach, wie sie den Tigerwolf bezwang,
Das grimmig wilde Thier, das unsre Heerden
Verwüstete, den Schrecken aller Hirten.
Sie ganz allein, die löwenherz'ge Jungfrau,
Stritt mit dem Wolf und rang das Lamm ihm ab,
Das er im blut'gen Rachen schon davon trug.
Welch tapfres Haupt auch dieser Helm bedeckt,
Er kann kein würdigeres zieren!

Thibaut (zu Bertrand).

Sprecht!
Welch neues Kriegesunglück ist geschehen?
Was brachten jene Flüchtigen?

Bertrand.

Gott helf'
Dem König und erbarme sich des Landes!
Geschlagen sind wir in zwei großen Schlachten,
Mitten in Frankreich steht der Feind, verloren
Sind alle Länder bis an die Loire —
Jetzt hat er seine ganze Macht zusammen
Geführt, womit er Orleans belagert.

Thibaut.

Gott schütze den König!

Bertrand.

Unermeßliches
Geschütz ist aufgebracht von allen Enden,
Und wie der Bienen dunkelnde Geschwader
Den Korb umschwärmen in des Sommers Tagen,
Wie aus geschwärzter Luft die Heuschreckwolke
Herunterfällt und meilenlang die Felder
Bedeckt in unabsehbarem Gewimmel:
So goß sich eine Kriegeswolke aus
Von Völkern über Orleans Gefilde,
Und von der Sprachen unverständlichem
Gemisch verworren, dumpf erbraust das Lager.
Denn auch der mächtige Burgund, der Länder-
Gewaltige, hat seine Mannen alle
Herbeigeführt, die Lütticher, Luxemburger,
Die Hennnegauer, die vom Lande Namur
Und die das glückliche Brabant bewohnen,
Die üpp'gen Genter, die in Sammt und Seide
Stolziren, die von Seeland, deren Städte
Sich reinlich aus dem Meereswasser heben,
Die heerdenmelkenden Holländer, die
Von Utrecht, ja vom äußersten Westfriesland,
Die nach dem Eispol schaun — sie folgen Alle
Dem Heerbann des gewaltig herrschenden
Burgund und wollen Orleans bezwingen.

Thibaut.

O des unselig jammervollen Zwists,
Der Frankreichs Waffen wider Frankreich wendet!

Bertrand.

Auch sie, die alte Königin, sieht man,
Die stolze Isabeau, die Baierfürstin,
In Stahl gekleidet, durch das Lager reiten,
Mit gift'gen Stachelworten alle Völker
Zur Wuth aufregen wider ihren Sohn,
Den sie in ihrem Mutterschoß getragen!

Thibaut.

Fluch treffe sie, und möge Gott sie einst,
Wie jene stolze Jesabel, verderben!

Bertrand.

Der fürchterliche Sal'sbury, der Mauern-
Zertrümmerer, führt die Belagerung an,
Mit ihm des Löwen Bruder Lionel
Und Talbot, der mit mörderischem Schwert
Die Völker niedermähet in den Schlachten.
In frechem Muthe haben sie geschworen,
Der Schmach zu weihen alle Jungfrauen
Und, was das Schwert geführt, dem Schwert zu opfern.
Vier hohe Warten haben sie erbaut,
Die Stadt zu überragen; oben späht
Graf Sal'sbury mit mordbegier'gem Blick
Und zählt die schnellen Wandrer auf den Gassen;
Viel tausend Kugeln schon von Centners Last
Sind in die Stadt geschleudert, Kirchen liegen
Zertrümmert, und der königliche Thurm
Von Notre Dame beugt sein erhabnes Haupt.
Auch Pulvergänge haben sie gegraben,
Und über einem Höllenreiche steht
Die bange Stadt, gewärtig jede Stunde,
Daß es mit Donners Krachen sich entzünde.

(Johanna horcht mit gespannter Aufmerksamkeit und setzt sich den Helm auf.)

Thibaut.

Wo aber waren denn die tapfern Degen
Saintrailles, La Hire und Frankreichs Brustwehr,
Der heldenmüth'ge Bastard, daß der Feind

So allgewaltig reißend vorwärts drang?
Wo ist der König selbst? und sieht er müßig
Des Reiches Noth und seiner Städte Fall?

Bertrand.

Zu Chinon hält der König seinen Hof:
Es fehlt an Volk, er kann das Feld nicht halten.
Was nützt der Führer Muth, der Helden Arm,
Wenn bleiche Furcht die Heere lähmt?
Ein Schrecken, wie von Gott herabgesandt,
Hat auch die Brust der Tapfersten ergriffen.
Umsonst erschallt der Fürsten Aufgebot.
Wie sich die Schafe bang zusammendrängen,
Wenn sich des Wolfes Heulen hören läßt,
So sucht der Franke, seines alten Ruhms
Vergessend, nur die Sicherheit der Burgen.
Ein einz'ger Ritter nur, hört' ich erzählen,
Hab' eine schwache Mannschaft aufgebracht
Und zieh' dem König zu mit sechzehn Fahnen.

Johanna (schnell).

Wie heißt der Ritter?

Bertrand.

Baudricour. Doch schwerlich
Möcht' er des Feindes Kundschaft hintergehn,
Der mit zwei Heeren seinen Fersen folgt.

Johanna.

Wo hält der Ritter? Sagt mir's, wenn Ihr's wisset.

Bertrand.

Er steht kaum eine Tagereise weit
Von Vaucouleurs.

Thibaut (zu Johanna).

Was kümmert's dich? Du fragst
Nach Dingen, Mädchen, die dir nicht geziemen.

Bertrand.

Weil nun der Feind so mächtig, und kein Schutz
Vom König mehr zu hoffen, haben sie
Zu Vaucouleurs einmüthig den Beschluß
Gefaßt, sich dem Burgund zu übergeben.
So tragen wir nicht fremdes Joch und bleiben
Beim alten Königsstamme — ja, vielleicht

Zur alten Krone fallen wir zurück,
Wenn einst Burgund und Frankreich sich versöhnen.

Johanna (in Begeisterung).

Nichts von Verträgen! Nichts von Uebergabe!
Der Retter naht, er rüstet sich zum Kampf.
Vor Orleans soll das Glück des Feindes scheitern!
Sein Maß ist voll, er ist zur Ernte reif:
Mit ihrer Sichel wird die Jungfrau kommen
Und seines Stolzes Saaten niedermähn;
Herab vom Himmel reißt sie seinen Ruhm,
Den er hoch an den Sternen aufgehangen.
Verzagt nicht! Fliehet nicht! Denn, eh' der Roggen
Gelb wird, eh' sich die Mondesscheibe füllt,
Wird kein engländisch Roß mehr aus den Wellen
Der prächtigströmenden Loire trinken.

Bertrand.

Ach, es geschehen keine Wunder mehr!

Johanna.

Es geschehn noch Wunder — Eine weiße Taube
Wird fliegen und mit Adlerskühnheit diese Geier
Anfallen, die das Vaterland zerreißen.
Darniederkämpfen wird sie diesen stolzen
Burgund, den Reichsverräther, diesen Talbot,
Den himmelstürmend hunderthändigen,
Und diesen Sal'sbury, den Tempelschänder,
Und diese frechen Inselwohner alle
Wie eine Heerde Lämmer vor sich jagen.
Der Herr wird mit ihr sein, der Schlachten Gott.
Sein zitterndes Geschöpf wird er erwählen,
Durch eine zarte Jungfrau wird er sich
Verherrlichen, denn er ist der Allmächt'ge!

Thibaut.

Was für ein Geist ergreift die Dirn'?

Raimond.

Es ist
Der Helm, der sie so kriegerisch beseelt.
Seht Eure Tochter an. Ihr Auge blitzt,
Und glühend Feuer sprühen ihre Wangen!

Johanna.

Dies Reich soll fallen? dieses Land des Ruhms,

Das schönste, das die ew'ge Sonne sieht
In ihrem Lauf, das Paradies der Länder,
Das Gott liebt, wie den Apfel seines Auges,
Die Fesseln tragen eines fremden Volks?
— Hier scheiterte der Heiden Macht. Hier war
Das erste Kreuz, das Gnadenbild erhöht;
Hier ruht der Staub des heil'gen Ludewig!
Von hier aus ward Jerusalem erobert.

Bertrand (erstaunt).

Hört ihre Rede! Woher schöpfte sie
Die hohe Offenbarung? — Vater Arc!
Euch gab Gott eine wundervolle Tochter!

Johanna.

Wir sollen keine eigne Könige
Mehr haben, keinen eingebornen Herrn —
Der König, der nie stirbt, soll aus der Welt
Verschwinden — der den heil'gen Pflug beschützt,
Der die Trift beschützt und fruchtbar macht die Erde —
Der die Leibeignen in die Freiheit führt,
Der die Städte freudig stellt um seinen Thron —
Der dem Schwachen beisteht und den Bösen schreckt,
Der den Neid nicht kennet — denn er ist der Größte —
Der ein Mensch ist und ein Engel der Erbarmung
Auf der feindsel'gen Erde. — Denn der Thron
Der Könige, der von Golde schimmert, ist
Das Obdach der Verlassenen — hier steht
Die Macht und die Barmherzigkeit — es zittert
Der Schuldige, vertrauend naht sich der Gerechte
Und scherzet mit dem Löwen um dem Thron!
Der fremde König, der von Außen kommt,
Dem keines Ahnherrn heilige Gebeine
In diesem Lande ruhn, kann er es lieben?
Der nicht jung war mit unsern Jünglingen,
Dem unsre Worte nicht zum Herzen tönen,
Kann er ein Vater sein zu seinen Söhnen?

Thibaut.

Gott schütze Frankreich und den König! Wir
Sind friedliche Landleute, wissen nicht
Das Schwert zu führen, noch das kriegerische Roß
Zu tummeln. — Laßt uns still gehorchend harren,
Wen uns der Sieg zum König geben wird.

Das Glück der Schlachten ist das Urtheil Gottes,
Und unser Herr ist, wer die heil'ge Oelung
Empfängt und sich die Kron' aufsetzt zu Rheims.
— Kommt an die Arbeit! Kommt! Und denke Jeder
Nur an das Nächste! Lassen wir die Großen,
Der Erde Fürsten, um die Erde losen;
Wir können ruhig die Zerstörung schauen,
Denn sturmfest steht der Boden, den wir bauen
Die Flamme brenne unsre Dörfer nieder,
Die Saat zerstampfe ihrer Rosse Tritt:
Der neue Lenz bringt neue Saaten mit,
Und schnell erstehn die leichten Hütten wieder!

(Alle außer der Jungfrau gehen ab.)

Vierter Auftritt.

Johanna (allein).

Lebt wohl, ihr Berge, ihr geliebte Triften,
Ihr traulich stille Thäler, lebet wohl!
Johanna wird nun nicht mehr auf euch wandeln!
Johanna sagt euch ewig Lebewohl!
Ihr Wiesen, die ich wässerte, ihr Bäume,
Die ich gepflanzet, grünet fröhlich fort!
Lebt wohl, ihr Grotten und ihr kühle Brunnen
Du Echo, holde Stimme dieses Thals,
Die oft mir Antwort gab auf meine Lieder,
Johanna geht, und nimmer kehrt sie wieder!

Ihr Plätze alle meiner stillen Freuden,
Euch lass' ich hinter mir auf immerdar!
Zerstreuet euch, ihr Lämmer, auf der Haiden!
Ihr seid jetzt eine hirtenlose Schaar!
Denn eine andre Heerde muß ich weiden
Dort auf dem blut'gen Felde der Gefahr.
So ist des Geistes Ruf an mich ergangen;
Mich treibt nicht eitles, irdisches Verlangen.

Denn, der zu Mosen auf des Horebs Höhen
Im feur'gen Busch sich flammend niederließ
Und ihm befahl, vor Pharao zu stehen,
Der einst den frommen Knaben Isais,

Den Hirten, sich zum Streiter ausersehen,
Der stets den Hirten gnädig sich bewies,
Er sprach zu mir aus dieses Baumes Zweigen:
„Geh' hin! Du sollst auf Erden für mich zeugen."

„In rauhes Erz sollst du die Glieder schnüren,
Mit Stahl bedecken deine zarte Brust!
Nicht Männerliebe darf dein Herz berühren
Mit sünd'gen Flammen eitler Erdenlust.
Nie wird der Brautkranz deine Locke zieren
Dir blüht kein lieblich Kind an deiner Brust;
Doch werd' ich dich mit kriegerischen Ehren,
Vor allen Erdenfrauen dich verklären."

„Denn, wenn im Kampf die Muthigsten verzagen,
Wenn Frankreichs letztes Schicksal nun sich naht,
Dann wirst du meine Oriflamme tragen
Und, wie die rasche Schnitterin die Saat,
Den stolzen Ueberwinder niederschlagen;
Umwälzen wirst du seines Glückes Rad,
Errettung bringen Frankreichs Heldensöhnen,
Und Rheims befrein und deinen König krönen!"

Ein Zeichen hat der Himmel mir verheißen:
Er sendet mir den Helm, er kommt von ihm,
Mit Götterkraft berühret mich sein Eisen,
Und mich durchflammt der Muth der Cherubim;
Ins Kriegsgewühl hinein will es mich reißen,
Es treibt mich fort mit Sturmes Ungestüm:
Den Feldruf hör' ich mächtig zu mir dringen,
Das Schlachtroß steigt, und die Trompeten klingen.

(Sie geht ab.)

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

PROPER GRAMMAR.

Page

PROSE AND POETIC SELECTIONS.

SERIES OF READING BOOKS.

BY HENRY MANDEVILLE, D. D.

COMPRISING

PRIMARY READING BOOK. 1 vol. 16mo. . .	Price,	$0 10
SECOND READER. 1 vol. 16mo.		17
THIRD READER. 1 vol. 16mo.	"	25
FOURTH READER. 1 vol. 12mo. . . .	"	38
COURSE OF READING, OR FIFTH READER. 12mo.	"	75
ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. 1 vol. large 12mo.	"	1 00

Great pains have been taken to make these books superior to any other reading-books in use, by reducing them to a complete practical system, founded on the nature of the language, by which the proper delivery of all sentences may be determined, and Reading elevated to the rank of a science. The proper and thorough use of these books places it in the power of every pupil to become an accomplished reader. The selections will be found to contain some of the finest gems in the language, which cannot fail of interesting the pupil, and cultivate a literary taste.

THE FIRST AND SECOND READERS introduce successively the different parts of speech, and are designed to combine a knowledge of their grammatical functions with the meaning and pronunciation of words.

THE THIRD AND FOURTH READERS commence with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions.

THE COURSE OF READING comprises three parts: the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and of the parts of speech grammatically considered, than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or in any other language; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading-books.

The ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it, the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice

RECOMMENDATIONS OF MANDEVILLE'S SERIES OF READERS

That the series is eminently practical and highly approved is shown by the following testimonials, selected from the thousands that have been received from public educators, who have tested them by thorough examination or actual use.

From WALTER BAILEY, *Supt. Public Schools, Fourth District, New Orleans, May 24th*, 1852.

"I have examined, with much care and interest, Professor Mandeville's series of Readers, and am much gratified to observe that he has reduced the subject of punctuation and delivery to a complete system; and they possess such superior advantages over any others that I have ever examined, that I have adopted them as text-books in the public schools under my supervision."

*** In July, 1852, Mandeville's Reading books were adopted and introduced in all the Public Schools of New Orleans.

The following Resolution was unanimously adopted by the Board of Education of St. Louis, October, 12*th*, 1852.

Resolved, That Professor Mandeville's Series of Readers be substituted as text-books for Swan's Readers in the Public Schools of this city."

From the late S. L. HOLMES, *City Superintendent of Schools, Brooklyn.*

"Mandeville's Reading Books are used in all of the Public Schools of Brooklyn, and with great satisfaction and profit, both to teacher and pupil. As mere reading books they are probably unsurpassed either in matter or system; but as a means of disclosing the true structure of our language, and pointing out the proper mode of parsing it, this series is believed to be altogether unequalled."

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S LECTURES.—"The Committee to whom was intrusted the preparation of an expression of the sentiments of the Teachers of the Public, Ward, Corporate and Private Schools of the City of New York, who have attended Prof. Mandeville's Lectures on his course on Elocution, respectfully report the following resolutions:

"*Resolved*, That the course of Lectures on Elocution, by Prof. Mandeville, which we have attended, has been to us a source of much gratification and profit.

"*Resolved*, That his system, based upon sound Philosophical principles, is an easy, progressive, natural, and eminently original method of attaining a knowledge of the classification and structure of every kind of sentence in the English language, with it appropriate punctuation and delivery; and we are happy to say unhesitatingly, that our opinion, his course, if faithfully carried out by teachers as he recommends, is better calculated to make good readers than any other with which we have been acquainted."

The following is signed by all the Principles of the Syracuse Public Schools, except one.

"We, the undersigned, Principals of Public Schools in the City of Syracuse, having formed some acquaintance with Mandeville's System of Reading and Oratory, take occasion cheerfully to express our unfeigned approval and admiration of the same, as the only truly Scientific System known to us, and our belief that its universal introduction into the Public Schools of our country, would prove a very valuable accession to our present educational facilities."

THE SHAKSPEARIAN READER

BY J. W. S. HOWS.

12mo. 447 pages. Price $1 25.

This work is prepared expressly for the use of Classes in schools and the reading circle, and contains a Collection of the most approved Plays of Shakspeare, carefully revised, with introductory and explanatory notes.

"This is a very handsome volume, and it will prove, we believe, a very popular one. Probably no man living is better qualified for the task of preparing a work of this kind than Prof. Hows, who has long been a teacher of elocution, and from his lectures on Shakspeare, has acquired a high reputation for his masterly analysis of the great dramatist. The only fault that we find with his book is that he has left out the comic parts, and has given nothing of Falstaff. But his reasons for the omission are sound and discriminating."—*New York Mirror.*

PRIMARY SPELLER AND READER.

BY ALBERT D. WRIGHT.

Price 12½ Cents.

This little volume of 144 pages combines a Primary Spelling-book and Reader, happily illustrated with numerous cuts, intended to attract the attention of the young, and to suggest thought for oral instruction and conversation.

It is confidently believed, that the proper use of this little book will obviate most of the difficulties experienced at the commencement of a child's education.

As fast as the letters are learned, an application is immediately made of them.

No word is given in which a letter occurs that has not been previously learned.

The capital letters are taught one at a time, and by review in reading lessons.

The words are systematically presented, being classified by their vowel sounds and terminating consonants; and generally, at the end of each class, they are arranged into little spelling lessons.

The learner is immediately initiated into reading lessons, composed of words of two or three letters, and is then led progressively into more difficult words.

"This is an excellent little book for children, and an improvement on all other Primary Lessons."—*N. Y. Observer.*

"We most heartily commend it to the favorable regard of teachers and parents."—*Teachers' Advocate.*

CLASS-BOOK OF POETRY.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

Containing a judicious, beautiful, and interesting Collection of Poetry for the Use of Children in Schools, and private reading. 12mo. 16mo. 252 pages. Price 75 cents.

Extract from the Author's Preface.

"In no way is a graceful and refined style of speech so naturally formed as by poetic language made thoroughly familiar to the young. 'I do not like poetry; I cannot understand it,' often say half-taught children. Give them the poetry of good writers, with a little necessary comment, and you will remove all obscurity from the most instructive and effective poetry, and all distaste to it. I have endeavored to do this in the following collection, and I trust that while it exhibits 'only things pure,' 'lovely, and of good report,' it may also give much pleasure, and be serviceable accordingly."

GUIDE TO KNOWLEDGE.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS. 16mo. 400 pages. Price 63 cents.

This contains a large amount of useful information, communicated in an entertaining and easy style of familiar questions and answers on every-day subjects, such as children are constantly asking questions about.

"The basis of this work is the 'Child's Guide to Knowledge—an elementary book which has been much used in England for many years, and is particularly adapted to our own country and nation. It commences with questions and answers on those elementary topics which occupy the attention of the young mind, and ranges over the complete circle of useful knowledge. It is a storehouse of various information for the young. We know of no elementary book, that with the necessary aid of judicious instructors, and suitable illustrative helps, can be made more useful to youth. Accompanying, is a dictionary of technical terms. We cordially recommend it to the notice of teachers."—*Journal and Messenger.*

CLASS-BOOK OF ZOOLOGY.

BY PROF. B. JAEGER. 18mo. Price 42 cents.

This work is designed to afford to pupils in common schools and academies a knowledge of the Animal Kingdom, not by making it a tiresome study, overloaded with incomprehensible technical terms taken from Latin and Greek, but as a scientific, amusing, instructive, and useful occupation for the juvenile mind, imparting a taste for collecting and preserving zoological specimens, and furnishing subjects for interesting and elevated observation.

A DIGEST OF THE LAWS, CUSTOMS, MANNERS AND INSTITUTIONS OF THE ANCIENT AND MODERN NATIONS.

BY THOMAS DEW.

Late President of the College of William and Mary.

1 Vol. 8vo. 662 pages. Price $2 00.

On examination, it will be found that more than ordinary labor has been expended upon this work, and that the author has proceeded upon higher principles, and has had higher aims in view than historical compilers ordinarily propose to themselves. Instead of being a mere catalogue of events, chronologically arranged, it is a careful, laborious, and instructive digest of the laws, customs, manners, institutions, and civilization of the ancient and modern nations.

The department of modern history in particular has been prepared with unusual care and industry.

From JOHN J. OWEN, *Professor in New York Free Academy.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Dew's 'Digest of the Laws, Manners, Customs, &c., of Ancient and Modern Nations.' It furnishes a desideratum in the study of history which I have long desired to see. The manner in which history is generally studied in our institutions of learning, is, in my judgment, very defective. The great central points or epochs of history are not made to stand out with sufficient prominence. Events of minor importance are made to embarrass the memory by the confused method of their presentation to the mind; history is studied by pages and not by subjects. In the wilderness of events through which the student is groping his way, he soon becomes lost and perplexed. The past is as obscure as the future. His lesson soon becomes an irksome task. The memory is wearied with the monotonous task of striving to retain the multitudinous events of each daily lesson.

"This evil appears to be remedied in a great degree by Prof. Dew's admirable arrangement. Around the great points of history he has grouped those of subordinate importance. Each section is introduced by a caption, in which the subject is briefly stated, and so as to be easily remembered. Thus the student having mastered the leading events, will find little or no difficulty in treasuring up the minor points in their order and connection. I trust the book will be adopted in our higher institutions of learning. I greatly prefer it to any history for the use of schools which I have seen."

HISTORY OF GERMANY.

BY FREDERICH KOHLRAUSCH.

1 Vol. 500 pages. 8vo. Price $1 50.

This history extends from the earliest period to the present time and has been translated from the latest German edition by James D Haas.

"We recommend it strongly to those of our readers who desire a lucid, comprehensive, and impartial history of the rise, progress, and condition of the Germanic Empire —*Evening Gazette.*

MANUAL OF GRECIAN AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN.

WITH NOTES AND QUESTIONS BY REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD.

1 Vol. 12mo. 209 pages. Price $1 00.

The present Manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual: 'Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement on all preceding works of the kind. We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader readily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Neibuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our manuals."

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

BY MRS. MARKHAM. REVISED BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

12mo. 387 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This work covers a period from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Victoria, containing questions adapted to the use of schools in this country.

"Mrs. Markham's History was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

"The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended itself to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars."—*Extract from the American Editor's Preface.*

MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

12mo. 396 pages. Price $1 00.

This work was originally prepared by Wilhelm Pütz, an eminent German scholar, and translated and edited in England by Rev. T. K. Arnold, and is now revised and introduced to the American public in a well-written preface, by Mr. George W. Greene, teacher of modern languages in Brown University.

As a text-book on Ancient History for Colleges and advanced Academies, this volume is believed to be one of the best compends published.

HAND-BOOK OF MEDIÆVAL GEOGRAPHY & HISTORY

BY WILHELM PUTZ.

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A

1 Vol. 211 pages. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

The characteristics of this volume are: precision, condensation, and luminous arrangement. It is precisely what it pretends to be—a manual, a sure and conscientious guide for the student through the crooks and tangles of Mediæval History. All the great principles of this extensive period are carefully laid down, and the most important facts skilfully grouped around them.

MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PUTZ.

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.

12mo. 336 pages. Price $1 00.

This volume completes the series of the author's works on geography and history. Every important fact of the period, comprehensive as it is both in geography and history, is presented in a concise yet clear and connected manner, so as to be of value, not only as a text-book for students, but to the general reader for reference. Although the facts are greatly condensed, as of necessity they must be, yet they are presented with so much distinctness as to produce a fixed impression on the mind. It is also reliable as the work of an indefatigable German scholar, for correct information relating to the progress and changes of states and nations—literature, the sciences and the arts—and all that combines in modern civilization.

THE CHILD'S FIRST HISTORY OF ROME.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 255 pages. Price 50 Cents.

In the preparation of this work for the use of children, the authoress has drawn her materials from the most reliable sources, and incorporated them into a narrative at once unostentatious, perspicuous, and graphic, aiming to be understood by those for whom she wrote, and to impress deeply and permanently on their minds the historical facts contained in the book. The entire work is clothed in a style at once pleasing and comprehensible to the juvenile mind.

"The author of this work has been very successful in her style of narration, as well as gone to the best sources accessible for her facts. While there is nothing light and trivial in her manner, there is all the vivacity of the most lively fireside story-teller; and those things, "of which it is a shame to speak," she gets over with great judgment, delicacy and tact. While it is eminently a child's book, we greatly misjudge if it should not prove a favorite with adults, especially that class who cannot command time to read protracted histories."—*Christian Mirror.*

A FIRST HISTORY OF GREECE.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 355 pages. Price 63 Cents.

This work is designed to impart to young people a more clear and understandable knowledge of Grecian history than is attainable through any of the numerous works on that subject that have been accumulating during the last century. By selecting and presenting clearly and concisely only prominent characters and events, and not overloading and rendering their perusal irksome by a mass of minor details, the authoress has rendered an essential service to the youth of our country.

"Miss Sewell is eminently successful in this attempt to set forth the history of Greece in a manner suited to the instruction of the young. The chronology is lucid, the events are well selected, and the narrative is perspicuous and simple. The facts and the method of presenting them are taken mainly from the work of Bishop Thirlwall, an excellent authority, and the work as a whole is the best with which we are acquainted for the use of children in their lessons of Grecian History, whether in the school-room or the family circle."—*Providence Journal.*

"She has faithfully condensed her subject, from the Siege of Troy, B. C. 1184, to the destruction of Corinth, and the annexation of Greece, as a province to the Roman Empire, B. C. 141; forming a most excellent outline, to be filled up by the future acquisitions of the reader. The chronological table of cotemporary events attached is valuable addition.—*Cincinnati Daily Times.*

HISTORICAL AND MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

BY RICHARD MAGNALL. REVISED BY MRS. LAURENCE.

12mo. 396 pages. Price $1 00.

The American authoress of this excellent book has made it peculiarly well adapted to the schools of this country by adding to it a chapter on the history and constitution of the United States, and by large additions on the elements of mythology, astronomy, architecture, heraldry, &c., &c. This edition is embellished by numerous cuts, a large portion of the work is devoted to judicious questions and answers on ancient and modern history, which must be very serviceable to teachers and pupils.

"This is an admirable work to aid both teachers and parents in instructing children and youth, and there is no work of the kind that we have seen that is so well calculated to 'awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds,' and to satisfy that curiosity when awakened."—*Commercial Advertiser.*

HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

BY GEO. W. GREENE.

1 Vol. 12mo. 450 pages. Price $1 00.

This work will be found to contain a clear and satisfactory exposition of the revolutions of the middle ages, with such general views of literature, society, and manners, as are required to explain the passages from ancient to modern history.

Instead of a single list of sovereigns, the author has given full genealogical tables, which are much clearer and infinitely more satisfactory.

GENERAL HISTORY OF CIVILIZATION IN EUROPE.

BY M. GUIZOT

1 Vol. 316 pages. 12mo. Price $1 00.

This work embraces a period from the fall of the Roman empire to the French revolution, and has been edited from the second English edition, by Prof. C. S. Henry, who has added a few notes. The whole work is made attractive by the clear and lively style of the author.

HISTORY OF ROME.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Three Volumes in One. 8vo. 670 pages. $5 00

Arnold's History of Rome is a well-known standard work, as full and accurate as Niebuhr, but much more readable and attractive; more copious and exact than Keightley or Schmitz, and more reliable than Michelet, it has assumed a rank second to none in value and importance. Its style is admirable, and it is every where imbued with the truth-loving spirit for which Dr. Arnold was pre-eminent. For Colleges and Schools this history is invaluable; and for private, as well as public libraries, it is indispensable.

LECTURES ON MODERN HISTORY.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Large 12mo. 428 pages. Price $1 25.

Edited from the second London edition, with a preface and notes of Henry Reed, M. A., Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

"These lectures, eight in number, furnish the best possible introduction to a philosophical study of modern history. Prof. Reed has added greatly to the worth and interest of the volume, by appending to each lecture such extracts from Dr. Arnold's other writings as would more fully illustrate its prominent points. The notes and appendix which he has thus furnished are exceedingly valuable."—*Evening Post.*

MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY.

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., M. R. A. S.

Part I.—Containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers.

Part II.—Containing the Rise and Progress of the Principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition; with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans. Revised by C. S. Taylor, D. D. 8vo. $2 50.

PHILOSOPHY OF SIR WM. HAMILTON.

EDITED BY O. W. WIGHT.

1 vol. 8vo. 530 pages. Price $1 50.

This handsome octavo volume is issued in a beautiful style, and is designed to be used as a text-book in schools and colleges. It embraces all the metaphysical writings of Sir Wm. Hamilton, one of the most noted philosophers and logicians of the day, whose writings deserve the attention and consideration of those who have charge of our seminaries of learning.

"With the severest logic, and a power of analysis that is well nigh matchless, he unites the most perspicuous and exact style, expressing the nicest shades of thought, with undeviating accuracy. And his writings display remarkable erudition as well as discrimination; he shows himself perfectly familiar with the theories and arguments of all who have gone before him, whether in earlier or later days; and while he renders due honor to each, he knows no such thing as being in bondage to a great name."—*Puritan Recorder.*

HISTORY OF MODERN PHILOSOPHY.

BY M. VICTOR COUSIN.

TRANSLATED BY O. W. WIGHT.

2 vols. 8vo. 891 pages. Price $3 00.

This is the ablest and most popular of all Cousin's works. It contains a full exposition of Eclecticism, by its founder and ablest supporter; gives a collected account of the history of philosophy from the earliest times; makes a distinct classification of systems; affords brief yet intelligible glimpses into the interior of almost every school, whether ancient or modern; and a detailed analysis of Locke, which unanswerably refutes a sensualistic theory that has borne so many bitter fruits of irreligion and atheism.

"M. Cousin is the greatest philosopher of France."—*Sir William Hamilton.*

"A writer, whose pointed periods have touched the chords of modern society, and thrilled through the minds of thousands in almost every quarter of the civilized world."—*Edinburgh Review.*

"As regards that part of this work—its translation—which has fallen to Mr. Wight, we must say that it has the air of being well performed. We have not the original at hand to compare the two, but the flowing style of the English version demonstrates the translator's familiarity with the foreign language."—*Western Lit. Gazette.*

BOOK OF ORATORY.

BY EDWARD C. MARSHALL, A.M.

One Volume. 12mo., of 500 pages. Price $1 00.

FIRST BOOK OF ORATORY,

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

One Volume. 12mo., of 237 pages. Price 62 Cents.

These works contain a larger number of elegant extracts than any similar ones, from the first American and English authors, among whom are Webster, Clay, Everett, Calhoun, Wirt, Randolph, Prentiss, Channing, Dewey, Burke, Brougham, Shakspeare, Byron, Scott, Hood, Bryant, and Longfellow, together with a complete digest of specimens of the oratory and poetry of all parts of the Union.

"A large and admirable selection of pieces for declamation, copious and varied, and well chosen with reference to speaking. The range of selection is almost universal, at least among modern writers in prose, verse and drama. They make a spirited collection of thought and rhetoric. The editor is a practical teacher of elocution, and evidently has a wide acquaintance with literature. It is as good a work of the kind as we ever saw."—*Evangelist.*

"It is an admirable collection of pieces for declamation, taken principally from eminent American orators."—*Tribune.*

THE MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY.

BY THOMAS KEIGHTLEY.

18mo. 232 pages. Price 42 Cents.

As mythology is closely connected with History and Philosophy, it is believed that its elements can be advantageously taught in our primary schools.

The present work is an abridgment of the author's larger treatise, and will be found well adapted to young persons.

The well-known reputation of the author is sufficient guaranty that the pupil who gets his first ideas of mythology from this book will not have any thing to *unlearn.*

"This is precisely the volume which has long been wanted in schools. As an introductory manual, it contains information relative to the gods and heroes of antiquity; and not an expression occurs which could offend the delicacy of the most scrupulous female."—*Christian Remembrancer.*

FIRST LESSONS IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION.

BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, A. M.

12mo. Price 45 Cents

These "First Lessons" are intended for beginners in Grammar and Composition, and should be placed in their hands at whatever age it may be deemed best for them to commence these branches—say from nine to twelve years. In the first fifty pages, by means of lessons on the inductive system, and copious exercises under each, the pupil is made familiar with the nature and *use* of the different parts of speech, so as to be able to recognize them at once. He is then led to consider the different kinds of clauses and sentences, and is thus prepared for Punctuation, on which subject he is furnished with well considered rules, arranged on a new and simple plan. Directions for the use of capital letters follow. Next come rules, explanations and examples, for the purpose of enabling the pupil to form and spell correctly such derivative words as *having, debarring, pinning,* and the like, which are not to be found in ordinary dictionaries, and regarding which the pupil is apt to be led astray by the fact that a change is made in the primitive word before the addition of the suffix. This done, the scholar is prepared to express thoughts in his own language, and is now required to write sentences of every kind, a word being given to suggest an idea for each; he is taught to vary them by means of different arrangements and modes of expression; to analyze compound sentences into simple ones, and to combine simple ones into compound. Several lessons are then devoted to Style. The essential properties, purity, propriety, precision, clearness, strength, harmony, and unity, are next treated, examples for correction being presented under each. The different kinds of composition follow; and, specimens having been first given, the pupil is required to compose successively letters, descriptions, narrations, biographical sketches, essays, and argumentative discourses. After this, the principal figures receive attention; and the work closes with a list of subjects carefully selected, arranged under their proper heads, and in such a way that the increase in difficulty is very gradual. The work has received the universal approval of Teachers and the Press throughout the Union.

QUACKENBOS'

ADVANCED LESSONS IN COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC

A DIGEST OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

BY L. T. COVELL.

12mo. Price 50 Cents

This work, which is just published, is designed as a Text-Book for the use of Schools and Academies; it is the result of long experience, of an eminently successful Teacher, and will be found to possess many peculiar merits.

At a regular meeting of the Board of Education of Rochester, held June 13, 1858, the following resolution was unanimously adopted:

"***Resolved***, That Covell's Digest of English Grammar be substituted for Wells' Grammar, as a Text-Book in the public schools of this city, to take effect at the commencement of the next school year."

Extract from the Minutes of a Regular Meeting of the Board of Education of Troy, May 31st, 1858.

"Mr. Jones, from Committee on text-books, and school librarias, moved, that Bullion's English Grammar be stricken from the list of text-books, and Covell's be substituted.—Passed."

From forty-four Teachers of Public Schools, Pittsburg, Pa.

"The undersigned have examined 'Covell's Digest of English Grammar,' and are of opinion that in the justness of its general views, the excellence of its style, the brevity, accuracy, and perspicuity of its definitions and rules, the numerous examples and illustrations, the adaption of its synthetical exercises, the simplicity of its method of analysis, and in the plan of its arrangement, this work surpasses any other grammar now before the public; and that in all respects it is most admirably adapted to the use of schools and academies."

From all the Teachers of Public Schools of the City of Alleghany, Pa.

We, the undersigned, Teachers of Alleghany city, having carefully examined Mr. Covell's Digest of English Grammar,' and impartially compared it with other grammars now in use, are fully satisfied that, while it is in no respect inferior to others, it is in very many respects much superior. While it possesses all that is necessary for the advanced student, and much that is not found in other grammars, it is so simplified as to adapt it to the capacity of the youngest learner. We are confident that much time and labor will be saved, and greater improvement secured to our pupils in the study of this science, by its introduction into our schools; hence we earnestly recommend to the Boards of Directors of this city, its adoption as a uniform text-book upon this science in the schools under their direction."

From* JOHN J. WOLCOTT, A. M., *Pr. and Supt. 9th Ward School, Pittsburg, Pa.

"'Covell's Digest of English Grammar' not only evinces the most unceasing labor, the most extensive research, the most unrelaxing effort, and the most devoted self-sacrificing study of its author, but it is the most complete, the most perfect, and, to me, the most satisfactory exposition of English Grammar that has come to my notice. It appears to me that every youth aspiring to become master of the English language, from the rudimental principles to the full, round, beautiful, faultless, perfect period, will make this volume his 'vade mecum.'"

EXPOSITION OF THE GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

BY JOHN MULLIGAN, A M.

Large 12mo. 574 pages. $1 50

This work is a comprehensive and complete system o English Grammar, embracing not only all that has been developed by the later philologists, but also the results of years of study and research on the part of its author. One great advantage of this book is its admirable arrangement. Instead of proceeding at once to the dry details which are distasteful and discouraging to the pupil, Mr. M. commences by viewing the sentence as a whole, analyzing it into its proper parts, and exhibiting their connection; and, after having thus parsed the sentence logically, proceeds to consider the individual words that compose it, in all their grammatical relations. This is the natural order; and expe rience proves that the arrangement here followed not only imparts additional interest to the subject, but gives the pupil a much clearer insight into it, and greatly facilitates his progress.

From DR. JAMES W. ALEXANDER.

"I thank you for the opportunity of perusing your work on the structure of the English language. It strikes me as being one of the most valuable contributions to this important branch of literature. The mode of investigation is so unlike what appears in our ordinary compilations, the reasoning is so sound, and the results are so satisfactory and so conformable to the genius and great authorities of our mother tongue, that I propose to recur to it again and again."

Extract from a letter from E. C. BENEDICT, Esq., *President of the Board of Education of the City of New York.*

"I have often thought our language needed some work in which the principles of grammatical science and of the structure of the language, philosophically considered, were developed and applied to influence and control the *usus* and *consuedo* of Horace and Quintilian, which seem to me to have been too often the principal source of solecisms, irregularity and corruption. In this point of view, I consider your work a valuable and appropriate addition to the works on the language."

From WM. HORACE WEBSTER, *President of the Free Academy, New York.*

"The exposition of the grammatical structure of the English language by Professor Mulligan, of this city, is a work, in my opinion, of great merit, and well calculated to impart a thorough and critical knowledge of the grammar of the English language.

"No earnest English student can fail to profit by the study of this treatise, yet it is designed more particularly for minds somewhat maturer, and for pupils who are capable and have a desire, to comprehend the principles and learn the philosophy of their own tongue."

DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

BY ALEXANDER REID, A. M.

12mo. 572 pages. Price $1 00.

This work, which is designed for schools, contains the PRONUNCIATION and Explanation of all English words authorized by eminent writers.

A Vocabulary of the roots of English words.

An Accented List of GREEK, LATIN, and SCRIPTURE proper names.

An Appendix, showing the pronunciation of nearly 3,000 of the most important GEOGRAPHICAL names.

It is printed on fine paper, in clear type, strongly bound.

And is unquestionably one of the best dictionaries for the school-room extant.

From C. S. HENRY, *Professor of Philosophy, History, and Belles-Lettres, in the University of the City of New York.*

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is an admirable book for the use of schools. Its plan combines a greater number of desirable conditions for such a work, than any with which I am acquainted; and it seems to me to be executed in general with great judgment, fidelity, and accuracy."

From HENRY REED, *Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.*

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language appears to have been compiled upon sound principles, and with judgment and accuracy. It has the merit, too, of combining much more than is usually looked for in dictionaries of small size, and will, I believe, be found excellent as a convenient manual for general reference, and also for various purposes of education."

GRAHAM'S ENGLISH SYNONYMS,

CLASSIFIED AND EXPLAINED;

WITH PRACTICAL EXERCISES. DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TUITION WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND ILLUSTRATIVE AUTHORITIES.

BY HENRY REED, LL. D.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price $1 00.

This is one of the best books published in the department of language, and will do much to arrest the evil of making too common use of inappropriate words. The work is well arranged for classes, and can be made a branch of common school study.

It is admirably arranged. The Synonyms are treated with reference to their character, as generic and specific; as active and passive; as positive and negative; and as miscellaneous synonyms.

Educational Text-Books.

GREEK AND LATIN—Continued.

BEZA'S Latin Testament. 12mo..... 75
CÆSAR'S Commentaries. Notes by Spencer. 12mo..... 1 00
CHAMPLIN'S Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. 12mo..... 75
CICERO De Officiis. Notes by Thatcher. 12mo..... 90
——— **Select Orations.** Notes by Johnson. 12mo..... 1 00
HERODOTUS. with Notes, by Prof. Johnson. 12mo..... 75
HORACE. With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. 12mo..... 1 25
KENDRICK'S Greek Ollendorff. 12mo..... 1 00
TACITUS' Histories. Notes by Tyler. 12mo..... 1 25
——— **Germania and Agricola.** Notes by do 12mo..... 62
XENOPHON'S Memorabilia. Notes by Robbins. New rev. edit. 12mo..... 1 00
SALLUST, with Notes by Prof. Butler. 12mo.....
KUHNER'S Elementary Greek Grammar. By Edwards and Taylor..... New improved edition. 12mo..... 1 50
LIVY. With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. 12mo. Map..... 1 00
QUINTUS CURTIUS RUFUS' Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated, with English Notes, by Professor Crosby. 12mo..... 1 00
SOPHOCLES' Oedipus Tyrannus. With English Notes, by Howard Crosby. 12mo..... 75

FRENCH.

BADOIS'S Grammar for Frenchmen to learn English 1 vol. 12mo..... 1 00
KEY to do..... 50
CHOUQUET'S French Conversations and Dialogues. 18mo..... 50
——— **Young Ladies' Guide to French Composition.** 12mo..... 75
COLLOT'S Dramatic French Reader. 12mo..... 1 00
COUTAN, A., Choix de Poesies. 12mo..... 1 00
DE FIVA'S Elementary French Reader. 16mo..... 50
——— Classic do 12mo..... 1 00
FENELON'S TELEMAQUE. Edited by Surenne. 1 vol. 18mo..... 50
——— or bound in 2 vols. 18mo..... 62
Le Nouveau Testament. Par J. F. Ostervald. 32mo..... 38
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning French. Edited by J. L. Jewett. 12mo..... 1 00
——— **Method of Learning French.** By V. Value. 12mo..... 1 00
KEY to each vol..... 75
——— **First Lessons in French.** By G. W. Greene. 18mo..... 50
COMPANION to Ollendorff's French Grammar. By G. W. Greene. 12mo..... 75
OLLENDORFF'S Grammar for Spaniards to Learn French. By Simonne. 12mo. 2 00
ROEMER'S First French Reader. 12mo..... 1 00
——— Second do. 12mo..... 1 25
ROWAN'S Modern French Reader. 12mo..... 75
SIMONNE'S Treatise on French Verbs. 1 vol..... 50
SPIERS' and Surenne's Complete French and English, and English and French Dictionary. With Pronunciation, &c., &c. One large 8vo. volume, of 1490 pp.....Sheep, 3 00
SPIERS AND SURENNE'S Standard Pronouncing Dictionary of the French and English Languages. (School Edition.) Containing 973 pp. 12mo. new and large type..... 1 50
SURENNE'S French and English and English and French Dictionary. 16mo 568 pp..... 90
——— **French Manual and Traveller's Companion.** 16mo..... 62
VOLTAIRE'S Histoire de Charles XII. Par Surenne. 18mo..... 50

GERMAN.

ADLER'S Progressive German Reader. 12mo..... 1
——— German and English and English and German Dictionary. Compiled from the best authorities. 1 vol., large 8vo. Half Russia..... 5
——— Abridged German and English and English and German Dictionary. 12mo. 840 pp.....Half Russia, 1
ADLER'S Hand-Book of German Literature. 12mo..... 1
BRYAN'S Grammar for Germans to Learn English. 12mo.....
EICHHORN'S Practical German Grammar. 12mo..... 1 00
OEHLSCHLAGER, J. C. A Pronouncing German Reader..... 1 00
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning German. Edited by G. J. Adler. 12mo. 1 00
KEY to do..... 75
OLLENDORFF'S New Grammar for Germans to learn the English Language. By P. Gands. 12mo..... 1 00
KEY to do. 12mo..... 75

ITALIAN.

BARETTI'S Italian and English and English and Italian Dictionary. 2 vols. 8mo. cloth..... 7 50
FORESTI'S Italian Reader. 12mo..... 1 00
MEADOWS' New Italian and English Dictionary. 1 vol. 16mo..... 1 50
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning Italian. Edited by F. Foresti. 12mo. 1 50
KEY to do..... 75
OLLENDORFF'S Primary Lessons in Italian. 18mo..... 50

SPANISH.

BUTLER'S Spanish Teacher and Colloquial Phrase Book. 18mo..... 50
DON QUIXOTTE, (in Spanish.) 12mo..... 1 25
DE VERE'S Grammar of the Spanish Language. 12mo..... 1 00
MANDEVIL'S Spanish Reader. 12mo..... 25
MANDEVIL'S Second Reader, in Spanish. 12mo..... 50
MARSH'S Book-keeping in Spanish. 8vo..... 1 50
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning Spanish. By M. Velazquez and T. Simonné. 12mo..... 1 00
KEY to do..... 75
OLLENDORFFS New Method of Learning English applied to the Spanish. By Professors Palenzuela and Carenno. 12mo..... 2 00
Key to do..... 75
OLLENDORFF'S Grammar for Spanis
KEY to do.....
SIMONNE'S Grammar for Spaniards
KEY to do.....
SEOANE'S Neuman and Baretti's Spanish Dictionary. By VELAZQ
large 8vo. vol. of 1400 pp.....
——— Abridged
TOLON'S Elementary Spanish Read
VELAZQUEZ' New Spanish Reader
——— Spanish Phrase Book
FIRST BOOK in Orthography, (in S

GESENIUS'S Hebrew Grammar.
German edition, by Conant. 8vo..

UHLEMANN'S Syriac Grammar.
Hutchinson. 1 vol. 8vo.